INCEPTION OF DISCIPLINE
and
VINAYA-NIDĀNA
THE INCEPTION OF DISCIPLINE AND THE VINAYA NIDĀNA

Being a Translation and Edition of the Bāhiranidāna of Buddhaghosa's Samantapāsādikā, the Vinaya Commentary

by

N. A. JAYAWICKRAMA

B.A., Ph.D.(Lond.), Professor of Pali and Buddhist Civilization in the University of Ceylon

LUZAC & COMPANY LTD.
46 GREAT RUSSELL STREET, LONDON, W.C. 1
1962
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preface</strong></td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translator’s Introduction</strong></td>
<td>xi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## The Inception of Discipline

### I. The Preamble

1. The Proem                                                           | 1    |
2. The Tabulation                                                     | 2    |

### II. The First Great Convocation

3. Mahākassapa kindles the Enthusiasm of the Monks                    | 3    |
4. The Selection of Monks for the Convocation                        | 4    |
5. Ānanda                                                              | 5    |
6. Rājagaha, the Venue of the Convocation                            | 6    |
7. The Monks journey to Rājagaha                                      | 6    |
8. Ānanda’s Visit to Savatthi                                         | 7    |
9. The Repairs to the Eighteen Great Monasteries                      | 8    |
10. Ajātasattu builds a Pavilion                                      | 8    |
11. Ānanda attains Arahhatship                                        | 9    |
12. Ānanda enters the Convocation Hall                               | 10   |
13. Upāli elected to recite the Vinaya                                | 11   |
14. Upāli recites the Vinaya                                          | 11   |
15. Ānanda recites the Dhamma                                         | 13   |
16. The Classification of the Teaching : the Tabulation                | 14   |
17. The Uniformity in Sentiment                                       | 14   |
18. The Division into Dhamma and Vinaya                               | 14   |
19. The Division into the First, Intermediate and Last Words          | 14   |
20. The Division into Piṭakas                                         | 15   |
21. The Definition of Vinaya                                          | 16   |
22. The Definition of Dhamma                                          | 16   |
23. The Definition of Abhidhamma                                      | 17   |
24. The Significance of the Term Piṭaka                                | 18   |
25. The Content of the Three Piṭakas—I                                | 19   |
26. The Content of the Three Piṭakas—II : Training, Avoidance, Profundity | 20   |
27. The Fourfold Profundity                                            | 20   |
28. The Three Modes of Learning                                       | 21   |
29. Success or Failure in the Learning                                | 22   |
30. The Division into Nikāyas                                         | 24   |
Inception of Discipline

III. THE SECOND GREAT CONVOCATION

34. The Meaning of the Tabulation 27
35. The Succession of Teachers in Jambudīpa 28
36. Upāli, Dāsaka, Soṇaka 28
37. Siggava to Moggaliputta 29
38. The Second Convocation 29
39. The Great Brahma Tissa 31
40. Siggava and Candaśavatī 32

IV. THE THIRD GREAT CONVOCATION

41. The Brahmin Moggali 33
42. The Buddha-manta 34
43. Moggaliputta Tissa learns the Dhammavinaya 36
44. Asoka’s Supernatural Powers 37
45. The Offering of the Gaze 38
46. The Feeding of the Mendicants 39
47. The Novice Nigrodha 39
48. Asoka wins Faith in the Dhamma 40
49. Asoka builds 84,000 Monasteries 43
50. The Festival of Dedication 44
51. An Heir of the Dispensation 44
52. Mahinda and Saṅghamittā ordained 45
53. The Elder Kontiputta Tissa 46
54. The Entry of Heretics into the Order 46
55. The Interruption of the Uposatha 47
56. The Viceroy Tissa enters the Order 48
57. The Minister’s misguided Act 50
58. The King seeks Moggaliputta Tissa’s Aid 50
59. The Arrival of the Elder at Pāṭaliputta 51
60. Moggaliputta Tissa’s Miracle 52
61. The Elder clears the King’s Doubt 53
62. The Restoration of the Purity of the Dispensation 54

V. THE SUCCESSION OF TEACHERS

63. The Succession of Teachers in Tambapanni 55
64. The Despatch of the Missions 56
65. Majjhantika in Kasmirā-Gandhāra 57
66. Mahādeva in Mahipsaka Maṇḍala 59
67. Rakkhita in Vanavāsi 59
68. Dhammarakkhita in Aparanta 59
69. Mahādhammarakkhita in Mahāraṭṭha 59
70. Mahārakkhita in the Yona Kingdom 60
Contents

71. Majjhima in the Himalayan Region .......................... 60
72. Sona and Uttara in Suvannabhūmi ......................... 60
73. Mahinda visits his Kinsmen .................................. 61
74. Mahinda awaits his Departure to Tambapāṇṇi ............... 62
75. Mahinda arrives at the Cetiya-pabbata ....................... 63
76. The Succession of Rulers .................................... 63
77. Devānampiyatissa meets Mahinda ......................... 64
78. The Exchange of Gifts ........................................ 65
79. Devānampiyatissa meets Mahinda's Companions ............. 67
80. The Riddle of the Mango Tree .............................. 67
81. Devānampiyatissa wins Faith in the Dhamma ................ 68
82. Mahinda preaches the Dhamma .............................. 69
83. The Discourse in the King's Palace ......................... 69
84. The Founding of the Mahāvihāra ........................... 71
85. The First Rains-Residence .................................. 72
86. Arijṭha (1) enters the Order .................................. 73
87. The King undertakes to build a Thūpa ....................... 73
88. Sumana obtains Relics ........................................ 74
89. The King receives the Relics .................................. 75
90. The Buddha Kakusandha ....................................... 76
91. The Buddha Konāgamana ...................................... 77
92. The Buddha Kassapa ........................................... 77
93. The Building of the Thūpa ..................................... 78
94. The Enshrinement of the Relics .............................. 79
95. Arijṭha (2) despatched as Envoy to Pātaliputta .............. 80
96. Saṅghamittā decides to go to Tambapāṇṇi ................. 81
97. The Golden Vase ............................................... 81
98. The Great Bodhi plants itself in the Vase .................... 83
99. The Dedication of the Sovereignty of Jambudīpā ............ 84
100. The Great Bodhi reaches Tāmalitti ......................... 85
101. The Departure of the Great Bodhi ......................... 86
102. The Great Bodhi reaches Anurādhapura ..................... 86
103. The Young Bodhi Trees ....................................... 88
104. Sites of Future Monuments .................................. 89
105. The Roots of the Dispensation .............................. 90
106. The Vinaya Recital .......................................... 91
107. The Conclusion of the External Story of the Vinaya ....... 92

List of Abbreviations ............................................. 94
Notes to the Translation ........................................... 95
General Index ...................................................... 119
Index of Proper Names ............................................ 126
List of Untranslated Pali Words ................................. 131
Inception of Discipline

Samantapāsādikāya Bāhiranidānaṁ

Abbreviations Used in the Notes

I. Samvāṇṇanāya Ārambhō I35
II. Paṭhamamahāsaṅgītīvaṇṇanā I38
III. Dutiyaṃmahāsaṅgītīvaṇṇanā I57
IV. Taṭiyaṃmahāsaṅgītīvaṇṇanā I62
V. Ācariyaparamparāvaṇṇanā I80

Index to Pali Text I215
PREFACE

I have taken the liberty of contracting the phrase Vinayassa Bāhiranidānaṃ (Smp. 107) to Vinayanidāna in using the title "Inception of Discipline" in this book. The text on which the translation is based is printed as the second part of this book. The text is essentially based on the Sinhalese edition of the Samantapāsādikā by Baddegama Piyaratana and Vālivitiye Sorata Nāyaka Theras, Simon Hewavitarne Bequest, Vol. XXVII, and the Pali Text Society's edition by Takakusu and Nagai. Other available printed editions of the text have been compared in re-editing the text. It was not considered necessary to go to manuscripts, as a representative number of them has been consulted by the previous editors and the variant readings noted. It has been necessary to differ from the P.T.S. edition in a number of instances. A minor departure from earlier editions is the division of the text into numbered paragraphs. However, it has not been possible to confine each numbered paragraph to a single topic as the topics themselves merge into one another. Even if this had been possible, it would have unnecessarily multiplied the paragraphs into an unwieldy number for a short text of this nature. It is hoped that this division, as well as the inclusion, in square brackets, both in the translation and the text, of the page numbers of the P.T.S. edition, will be useful to the reader for ready reference.

The present translation of the Bāhiranidāna was more or less completed as far back as 1956, but for various reasons its publication had to be delayed. I had earlier requested Dr. G. C. Mendis to write an historical introduction from a historian's point of view. His retirement from the University of Ceylon and the consequent departure from Peradeniya finally resulted in the idea being given up. He, however, made available to me a manuscript containing a translation to part of the Bāhiranidāna. Wherever possible it was made use of. I thank him for suggesting to me to make this translation, particularly on account of its being a useful source-book for the early history of Buddhism in Ceylon.
My sincere thanks are due to Miss I. B. Horner, M.A., President of the Pali Text Society, for giving me every encouragement and assistance and for carefully reading through the manuscript and making many valuable suggestions and supplying a good deal of information which has now been included in the notes to the translation. I also thank her for kindly agreeing to publish this work in the Sacred Books of the Buddhists Series. My thanks are also due to Dr. L. S. Perera of the University of Ceylon, and Mr. D. T. Devendra, of the Encyclopaedia of Buddhism, Peradeniya, who have helped me with some important topographical details of ancient Anuradhapura.
TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION

The Bāhiranidāna

The Bāhiranidāna is the introductory chapter to Buddhaghosa's Samantapāsādikā, the Commentary to the Vinaya Piṭaka. This introduction is primarily meant to explain the Nidāna, the "inception" or "origin" of the Vinaya. The author is anxious that no relevant detail, however insignificant, is left out in his description of the Nidāna. The long analysis of the classification of the Teachings (Smp. 16 ff.), the laborious details regarding Moggaliputta Tissa (Smp. 39 ff.), the Asoka legend (Smp. 44 ff.), the description of the missions sent out after the Third Convocation (Smp. 64 ff.), the Conversion of Ceylon (Smp. 73 ff.), and all the episodes connected with it, form but important links in the narrative dealing with the Nidāna of the Vinaya. His aim is to establish the authenticity of the Vinaya before proceeding to compile its commentary. Buddhaghosa first defines the term Vinaya as the entire Vinaya Piṭaka as known to him. He next introduces his māṭikā, "tabulation" for the exposition as a preliminary step, before dealing with the actual text of the Vinaya: Vuttaṃ yena yadā yasma dhāritaṃ yena cābhatam, yatthapatiṣṭhitam c'etam . . . "By whom it was said, when and for what reason, held by whom, where it was established . . ." (Smp. 2). In providing the answers to the six items in the tabulation Buddhaghosa has furnished us with a great deal of information which has hitherto not been presented in such comprehensive manner, though the introductory chapters to the Sumanāgalavilāsī and Atthasālinī cover more or less the same ground from the angle of the Sutta and the Abhidhamma respectively, while the Chronicles discuss them from altogether a different angle. He has deemed it fit that each of these topics in the tabulation should have a satisfactory explanation, especially for the sake of clarity and easy comprehension. In answer to the question, "by whom was the statement, tena kho pana samayena Buddhō bhagavā Veraṇjāyaṃ viharati . . ." made, he proceeds to give a complete account of the Convocation itself "for the sake of
familiarity with the source” (Smp. 3 ff.). After the account of the rehearsal of the Dhammavinaya he gives a disquisition on the classification of the Word of the Buddha defining the content and character of each of the units in the classification (Smp. 16 ff.). This discussion is, with some difficulty, incorporated in the story of the Recital as it does not harmonize with the general trend of the narrative, but is joined to it with the words, “Thus this Word of the Buddha which is uniform in sentiment ... was rehearsed together ... and not only this, but other divers distinctions in compilation to be met with in the Three Piṭakas ... have been determined when it was thus rehearsed together in seven months” (Smp. 33). It hardly has any bearing on the narrative proper, but is primarily designed to show the relationship in which the various component parts of the Canon stand to one another. Ultimately Buddhaghosa traces the Vinaya, as well as the rest of the sayings of the Buddha in their present form, to the First Great Convocation and explains the meaning of the words, “by whom was it said, when and for what reason?” (Smp. 34). In dealing with the significance of the words, “by whom this was retained in mind, handed down by whom and established in whom” he traces the history of the Vinaya from the Tathāgata (Smp. 35), in successive stages, to each of the three Convocations and finally to the Vinaya Recital of Mahā-Ariṭṭha in Ceylon under the presidency of Mahinda (Smp. 106). His primary aim is to establish that it is the Vinaya in its pristine purity (amissa) that he is commenting upon. Therefore it is imperative that the stages by which it has reached him should be traced. The succession of Teachers from Upāli brought it down to the time of the Second Convocation and the Theras “again rehearsed the entire Dhamma and the Vinaya ... even in the same manner as it was rehearsed by the Elder Mahākassapa” (Smp. 38).

The account of the Third Great Convocation is given in even greater detail than the first two. The Elders who held the Second Recital forewore that an even greater calamity than the ten indulgences of the Vajjiputtakas would befall the Dispensation in Dhammāsoka’s reign and were compelled to take adequate steps to meet the situation when the calamity would arise (Smp. 39 ff.). Much space is devoted to Moggaliputta Tissa
before coming to Asoka (at Smp. 44 ff.). The wealth of legendary details has but little bearing on the actual Nidāna of the Vinaya except to show the conditions that necessitated the Third Great Convocation. The King's conversion, his services to the Dispensation, his anxiety to become an "heir" of the Dispensation, and the lavish gifts he showered on the Saṅgha are described at length (Smp. 48 ff.). The interruption of the Uposatha due to heretics who had furtively entered the Order for personal gains (Smp. 55) and the King's abortive attempt to revive it through his minister Mahādeva (Smp. 57) and the consequent remorse and doubt that led to his seeking Moggaliputta Tissa's aid to remove his doubt and stabilize the Dispensation as well (Smp. 58 ff.) are all significant episodes in the story of the Third Convocation. The Elder clears the King's doubt absolving him from all responsibility of his minister's misguided act (Smp. 61). The purification of the Dispensation begins with the King himself learning the Teaching from the Elder and putting the heretics and the monks to a simple test by asking them the question, "What teaching did the Perfectly Enlightened One expound?" The heretics all to a man answer making the Buddha responsible for each one of their theories leaving the King in such a state of mental confusion that when the true monks reply that the Buddha was an exponent of the analytical doctrine the King has to seek confirmation from Moggaliputta Tissa even in spite of the earlier instruction he has had from the Elder. At this preliminary meeting designed to ensure the purity of the Dispensation, the King plays a prominent rôle in uniting the Saṅgha by disrobing the heretics giving them white garments (in order to remove all outward emblems of their monkhood—cp. Dpv. vii, 53), and expelling them for good from the Saṅgha (uppabbājesi), so that in later years in reminiscent mood he could allude to this incident in his Minor Pillar Edicts of Sārnāth, Kosāmbi, and Sāncī (Smp. 62, n. 4). The Saṅgha is cleansed of the undesirable elements and the King requests the monks to hold the Uposatha. The Uposatha that was interrupted for seven years is held again. Moggaliputta Tissa not being content with the mere physical expulsion of the heretics from the Saṅgha through the intervention of the
temporal authority, refutes all heretical theories by reciting, in the assembly, the Kathāvatthu so that the defeat of the heretics is doubly assured even at an intellectual level. Next, 1,000 monks recite together the Dhamma and the Vinaya in the self-same manner as it was done at the two previous Convocations (Smp. 62).

The rest of the narrative though entitled "The Succession of Teachers", covers a much wider range of subjects than does each of the four previous sections in the Bāhiranidāna. It starts with the succession of Teachers from Upāli in India to Siva in Ceylon to a date reckoned as "the present day" by the Porāṇa tradition on which Buddhaghosa has based his account (Smp. 63). It is in dealing with the story connected with the succession of Teachers that the nine missions sent out by Moggaliputta Tissa to the "Border Districts" are described (Smp. 64 ff.). The validity of all formal acts of the Saṅgha in the respective regions is assured by sending groups of five monks each, the minimum required for conferring the higher ordination in a border district. The mission to Ceylon is discussed in great detail (Smp. 73 ff.) and covers about a third of the story in the Bāhiranidāna. The important episodes in it are: the arrival of Mahinda (Smp. 75), the Conversion of Devānampiyatissa (Smp. 81), his envoys to the court of Pātaliputta (Smp. 78, 95 f.), the founding of the Mahāvihāra (Smp. 84), the building of the Thūpārāma (Smp. 93), the coming of Saṅghhamittā and the Great Bodhi (Smp. 96–103), and the Vinaya Recital of Mahā-Ariṭṭha (Smp. 106). In giving the date of Mahinda's arrival in Ceylon as 236 years after the Parinibbāna of the Buddha a chronological list of kings of Magadha and Ceylon is recorded dating events that took place in Ceylon from the regnal years of the contemporary Indian kings (Smp. 76). Mahinda entrusts the burden of the preservation and continuity of the Dispensation by "making its roots descend deep" into the soil of Lanka when he has found in Mahā-Ariṭṭha a competent person to learn the Vinaya and teach it in the Island (Smp. 105). It is Ariṭṭha's successors who handed down the Vinaya to the so-called "present day". The authenticity of the Vinaya is thus established and the mātikā is fully explained once the External Story connected
with the Vinaya is narrated. After this Buddhaghosa is free to proceed to his exposition of the Vinaya.

The Mahāvihāra Tradition

This, very briefly, is what the Bāhiranidāna deals with. Leaving aside the many interesting problems that arise from its contents, which have already been dealt with by others in some form or another with reference to the Samantapāsādikā or the Pali Chronicles, a few words about the Samantapāsādikā itself are necessary at this stage, while some of the problems connected with the Bāhiranidāna can be taken up for discussion later on.

The prologue and the colophon of the Samantapāsādikā furnish us with a good deal of information. Buddhaghosa’s own words in the opening stanzas eloquently speak of the commentary he is about to compile. As is usually the case with all his commentaries, it is by no means an original exegesis, but a restatement of the material available to him in the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā, for, in his own words it is a navasāṅghitavaṇṇanā, “a re-compiled commentary” (Smp. P.T.S., 1414). His implicit faith in the pubbācariyā, “the teachers of yore,” and his reliance on their authority in his exposition of the Vinaya are clearly expressed in his opening words (see Smp. 1, n. 1). Both in the prologue and in the colophon he acknowledges his indebtedness to the three main versions of the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā, the Mahā (or Mūla)-Aṭṭhakathā, the Mahāpaccariya, and the Kurundi which he studied under the “wise Elder Buddhhamitta who was proficient in the Vinaya” (Smp. P.T.S., 1415). This indebtedness to the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā is true of all his commentaries, for Buddhaghosa constantly refers to his commentaries being based on the earlier commentaries available in the language of the Island; e.g. in the colophons to the commentaries on the four prose Nikāyas the following hemistiches occur, among other parallel stanzas: sā hi Mahā-Aṭṭhakathāya sāram ādāya niṣṭhitā mayā, “for, it was compiled by me drawing the essence of the Mahā-Aṭṭhakathā,” and, Mūl ’aṭṭhakathāya sāram ādāya mayā imam karontena, “while I was compiling this drawing the essence of the Mūla-Aṭṭhakathā,” both of which refer to the Mahāvihāra version of the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā.
Inception of Discipline

There has been a great tradition of Vinaya learning in Ceylon from the time of its first recital under Mahinda (Smp. 106). It is the aim of the Bāhiranidāna to show the continuity of this tradition right up to the time of the finalization of the original documents on which the Samantapāsādikā is based. On account of the position of importance assigned to the Vinaya in the Theravadā in its development in Ceylon (see Smp. 1, n. 2), the views of its custodians are of utmost value as regards its correct interpretation. This is equally true as regards the interpretation of the Dhamma, for the learning in the Dhammavinaya, taken as a whole, is looked upon as a system that has evolved in the Mahāvihāra. The frequent statements in the colophons to the commentaries on the Four Āgamas, samayaṃ pakāsayanti Mahāvihāravāsīnām (with minor variations, and also in other commentaries attributed to Buddhaghosa), “advancing the corpus of traditional views of the Mahāvihāra Fraternity,” or other frequent statements in the prologues to the Āgama Commentaries, such as,

Samayaṃ avilomento therānaṃ theravāṃsappadīpānaṃ sunipuṇaṃvinicchayānaṃ Mahāvihārādhivāsīnaṃ,
hitvā punnappunāgatām atthaṃ atthatheṣu pakāsaiśāmi;

“I shall expound the meaning (thereof) avoiding repetitions of exegeses, not contradicting the corpus of traditional views of the dwellers of the Mahāvihāra, of profoundly mature judgments, the shining lamps of the lineage of Elders” can equally apply in the case of the Vinaya Commentary. The Jātakaṭṭhakathā (also attributed to Buddhaghosa), in its prologue states, “I will declare the exposition of the meaning of the Jātaka basing it on the method of discourse of the dwellers of the Mahāvihāra” (JA. i, 1, stt. 10 f.). A similar statement is made in the Kaṅkhāvitaranī, the Commentary on the Pātimokkha (p. 1, st. 6). In the Atthasālīni, Buddhaghosa stresses the purity of the views of the Mahāvihāra: “(I shall make my exposition) illustrating the unconfused judgments of the dwellers of the Mahāvihāra which are uncontaminated by the views of other Sects” (DhsA., 2, st. 16). It is apparent that the system evolved in the Mahāvihāra through the centuries was so comprehensive and thorough that it was jealously
guarded by its custodians and won the admiration of men of the calibre of Buddhaghosa. That aspect of the Mahāvihāra tradition pertaining to the Vinaya concerns us here, and further, the Mahāvihāra being a centre of Vinaya learning, the authoritative statements of the vinayadhara monks were faithfully handed down from generation to generation and formed an integral part of the ”samaya” of the Mahāvihāra. These monks were the scholiasts or the schoolmen of the Theravāda in Ceylon and were responsible for the tradition that was crystallized in the Sīhâla Aṭṭhakathā and played the most significant rôle in the evolution of these commentaries until they were recast and remoulded by Buddhaghosa. Further ”growth” was arrested as a result of Buddhaghosa’s rewriting them in Pali. Evidence is not lacking for the survival of the Sīhâla Aṭṭhakathā even after Buddhaghosa and the other Commentators that followed, though they finally went into oblivion in due course. The statement that they were burned in a huge bonfire (Buddhagoshuppatti, 7) is merely a figurative way of stating that they no longer served any purpose. The disappearance of the Sīhâla Aṭṭhakathā is looked upon by writers as a great blow to the development of Sinhalese literature. However that may be, it is decidedly the fruits of the endeavours of the ”teachers of yore” in some finalized form that were available to Buddhaghosa when he started compiling his Commentaries and paved the way for the perfect commentarial literature in Pali available to-day, perhaps unrivalled by that of any other School of Buddhism.

The terms Aṭṭhakathika and Aṭṭhakathâcariya mentioned in a large number of Commentaries (see EHBC, 14, nn. 9–11) directly refer to these teachers (the banners of the Mahāvihāra—Smp. i, st. 7), who contributed to the growth of the Sīhâla Aṭṭhakathā. The judgments of these ”Sons of the Enlightened One” were taken into consideration when commentaries were written in the past (Smp. i, st. 13) while incorrect statements such as those found in the Andhaka (in great abundance!) and genuine scribes’ errors (pamādalekha, Smp. i, st. 14) in the Mahā-Aṭṭhakathā (e.g. at Smp. P.T.S., 311) are dispensed with. A good example of this can be seen (at Smp. P.T.S., 495 f.) in the comments on the conditions
under which a monk suffers "Defeat" when he lays claims to transcendental attainments. The opinion of the Elder Phussadeva is cited but is immediately dismissed as "even his pupils rejected his view". He adds in his comments that a monk does not suffer Defeat when he acknowledges the attainment of analytic insight excluding that pertaining to the transcendental sphere. Next he quotes the Saṅkhepa as stating that even if one lays claims to atthapaṭisambhidā, the first item among the fourfold analytic insight, one suffers Defeat, whereas this is contradicted by the Mahā-Aṭṭhakathā. It goes to the extent of saying that one does not suffer Defeat even if one declares one's attainment of cessation. The statement made in the Mahāpaccariya and its abridged version Saṅkhepa, that when a monk discloses his attainment of cessation in order to lead another to infer that he is an Arahant or an Anāgāmi, and if the latter infers so, then he is guilty of the pārājīka offence (Defeat), should, according to Buddhaghosa, be carefully examined before it is accepted. He further adds that the Saṅkhepa states that a monk does not suffer Defeat if he refers to his attainments reached in previous existences, but jestingly adds that its statement regarding the present existence too is rejected (why talk about past existences!). The views of eminent Theras who differed from the interpretations of the recognized Commentaries such as the Mahā-Aṭṭhakathā, e.g. Mahāpaduma (Smp. P.T.S., 283, 454, etc. in all twenty-seven references) and views expressed by other eminent Theras recorded as being accepted by commentaries, e.g. the Ceylon monk (first century A.C.), Mahāsumma's interpretation of a Vinaya rule accepted by the Andhakaṭṭhakathā (Smp. P.T.S., 646, etc., twenty-four references), are also taken into consideration. Adikaram (EHBC, 81) observes that Buddhaghosa, in the Samantapāśadikā pays great tribute to the views of both Mahāpaduma and Mahāsumma: "There are instances where Mahāpaduma's expositions are considered to be as authoritative as those given in the Mahāpaccari, Kurundī, and Mahā-Aṭṭhakathā . . . Different views and interpretations of the Vinaya as put forward by these two theras occur very frequently in the Samantapāśadikā." The views of Teachers often referred to in Buddhaghosa's Commentaries invariably
include many others beside these two, and the acarīyaparamparā, “the Succession of Teachers” (Smp. 63) contains the most comprehensive list of Vinaya teachers among them. In addition to these, the statements of the Porāṇā, quoted even in the Bāhiranidāna (Smp. 63, 74, 75) are taken into account. This name, as well as the parallels Poranakattherā, Porāṇacariyā, etc., refers to the Pubbacariyā already mentioned, while Poranatthakathā can refer only to the exegetical works by them which represented the whole field of written source-material at Buddhaghosa’s disposal.

The Translation of the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā

Buddaghosa arrived in Ceylon at a time when the Mahāvihāra tradition was at its best, with a period of over six centuries of gradual progress only occasionally interrupted for short periods by a few setbacks due to circumstances totally beyond the control of the Saṅgha, such as political upheavals, famines, pestilences, etc., and the appearance of rival sects resulting in royal patronage being extended in that direction, sometimes with open hostility to the Mahāvihāra Fraternity as in the reign of Mahāsena (a.c. 334–361), all of which, up to now, it had withstood successfully. Its commentarial tradition has deep roots. According to the prologues of many of Buddhaghosa’s Commentaries, the origin of this tradition goes back to the time of the First Council. The stanzas Nos. 6, 7 of the prologues (DA., MA., SA., AA., DhsA., etc.) state: “Whatever Commentaries were rehearsed at the very outset, for the purpose of elucidating the meaning, by the five hundred (who were) endowed with self-mastery, and were likewise rehearsed even afterwards were subsequently brought to the Island of the Sīhālas by Mahā-Mahinda (who was) endowed with self-mastery, and were made to remain in the Sīhala language for the benefit of the inhabitants of the Island.” It is difficult to say what these commentaries were, but the extensive exegetical literature incorporated in the extant Canon (vide PLC, 88 ff.) perhaps sheds some light on this statement. Hence, there is some basis to accept, of course, with certain reservations, the

1 Mahāsiva Smp. Sinh. ed. 36, 816; Mahāsumana, ibid., 51, etc.
2 See the excellent data on Porāṇā in EHBC, 16–23, and Appendix II A.
tradition attributing the earliest exegetical activity in Ceylon to Mahinda when he furnished explanations to the Teachings in the language of the Island. He naturally interpreted the Word of the Buddha in a spoken idiom intelligible to the people. The Sinhalese Prakrit of the third century B.C. could have been quite akin to some of the Prakrit dialects current in Aryan India at the time, especially to those of the Western group of Prakrits, and to Sauraseni and Mahinda's own Āvantī. This similarity, to some extent, can be established by comparing the language of the earliest known inscriptions of Ceylon with Asokan Pali and the early dramatic and literary Prakrits. By the fifth century A.C., after a lapse of nearly six and a half centuries, when Buddhaghosa arrived in Ceylon, the extant exegetical tradition, both recorded and oral, was in a language that was no longer intelligible to "monks from overseas", and differed considerably from the idiom of the Pali Canon, as may be seen from recorded specimens of the Sinhalese Prakrit of this period. Hence, in Buddhaghosa's opinion it was necessary to translate the then available commentaries into Pali. In doing so he pays tribute to the Sinhalese language calling it a manoramā bhāsa, "a delightful language." He says in the prologues to the commentaries on the Four Āgamas, in the Atthasālinī (and in the Dhammpadaṭṭhakathā) that he will expound the meaning "having divested it of the Sihala language, a delightful language as it is, and translate it into the flawless idiom compatible with the mode of expression in the Texts". Thus Buddhaghosa's reason for translating the Sinhalese Commentaries was to make their contents available to monks outside Ceylon as well.

Another important reason for not only translating but for recording in a fixed form, the commentarial tradition of the Mahāvihāra was prompted by historical circumstances. As pointed out by Adikaram (EHBC, 94), with the first signal of danger arising from the Abhayagiri Fraternity the Mahāvihāra monks hastened to record in writing the Pali Texts even without the reigning monarch Vaṭṭagāmaṇi Abhaya's (43 and

1 The dialect peculiarities can be seen for purposes of comparison even in later inscriptive Sinhalese and the earliest literary Sinhalese which represents the Apabhraṃsa stage of development in Indo-Aryan.
29–17 B.C.) support, in far away Alokavihāra in the Mātula District in the central hills, away from the capital where it would have attracted the King's direct attention. The rift with the Abhayagiri Fraternity widened as time went on and more and more new sects appeared in course of time, the majority of them having affiliations with the Abhayagiri. A few subsequent kings were definitely hostile to the Mahāvihāra, the worst among them being Mahāsena (A.C. 334–361) who persecuted the Mahāvihāra monks. While the bitter memories of scarcely half a century earlier were fresh in the minds of the Mahāvihāra monks, Mahānāma the reigning king too was lukewarm towards the Mahāvihāra and supported the Abhayagiri Fraternity (Mhv. xxxvii, 212) while he was persuaded by his Queen to help the Mahāvihāra as well. It was necessary for the Mahāvihāra Fraternity to consolidate their position and preserve their “samaya” against the constant onslaughts of their opponents, who more often than not had support from their fellow monks from India. The half-century that followed Mahāsena's reign would have given the Mahāvihāra Fraternity time to reinforce themselves and close their ranks for self-preservation. It was as a result of the fulfilment of the wishes of the monks, who scarcely half a century earlier underwent such indignities at the hands of their opponents who were actively supported by the reigning monarch in their sinister task of harassing the Mahāvihāra monks, that the body of knowledge held sacred by them should at last be put down in some fixed form, translated into the language of the Canon itself to impart to it a greater dignity, sanctity, and authority so that it should be handed down to posterity. The presence of Buddhaghosa in Ceylon was an opportunity too good to be missed, and furthermore, there was every indication that the dark events in Mahāsena's day could recur, if there was an equally sinister figure as Saṅghamitra, among their opponents, to spark off such a conflagration. The pictures painted by Buddhaghosa in his colophons when referring to the King and country are rather dismal. He is glad that he has completed the Samantapāsādikā within one year, unhindered, in a world

1 Vide ibid., 79, for a summary of the causes that led to the writing down of the Canon.
troubled by many dangers (Smp. P.T.S., 1416) and repeats in his Commentaries to the works of the Abhidhamma, the exhortation, "Even as the good kings in days gone by cherished their subjects may the King too cherish them righteously even as his own offspring." The last few years of Mahānāma's reign\(^1\) may have given him some indication of the difficult days that were to follow two years after his death, though at the time everything looked peaceful.\(^2\) The repeated exhortation may be taken either as a mere formal statement or as an indirect indication that all was not well with Ceylon and that the country was not governed well. All these factors taken together show that the time was ripe for recording the commentaries in a more precise form than the Sihaḷa Aṭṭhakathā.

Another reason given by Buddhaghosa for rewriting the commentaries in Pali is his desire to secure the stability of the Good Teaching (saddhammaṭṭhitikāma). This should be considered as the chief reason why the Pali Commentaries were written. In fact, Buddhaghosa came to Ceylon at a very opportune time in the history of the Mahāvihāra. His work actually symbolizes a process in the codification, as it were, of the Mahāvihāra tradition and what matters more is the actual writing of the Commentaries rather than the Commentator himself.

From the foregoing remarks, Buddhaghosa's rôle as editor and translator is quite clear. He was convinced of the purity of the Mahāvihāra tradition, and it was all that mattered to him so that he strove to maintain it at all costs. His editorial activity was centred on the correct interpretation of the Word of the Buddha from the Theravāda point of view. The conflicting traditions before him did not deter him from his task. He, in fact, seems to have revelled in them as he separated the various strands in order to discover the correct interpretation of the Theriya tradition.\(^3\) His aim was to give explanations and interpretations maintaining a consistent point of view. The serious restrictions under which he had to work

---

1 According to the colophon Smp. was completed in the twenty-first year of his reign which was to end in just over a year—Mhv. xxxvii, 247.
2 cp. jayasamvacchare, Smp. P.T.S., 1416.
3 The limitations imposed upon him are analysed in PLC 93 f.
(as pointed out elsewhere) are best indicated in his own words in the Visuddhimagga (Vism. 522), when he says that in explaining the proposition avijjāpaccayā saṅkhārā, he had to abide by the universe of discourse of the Vibhajjavādins, not cast aspersions on the views of the "Teachers", not be inconsistent with his own thesis, not trespass on the views of dissentient Schools, not reject the Sutta, be in conformity with the Vinaya, see to the broad guiding principles and so on. This is further illustrated by the prologue to the Samantapāsādikā itself. The results of his labours are unrivalled by any single writer on the Buddha's teachings and there is none to equal him where the volume of output is concerned.

Sources of the Samantapāsādikā

There is no further necessity to dilate on the topic of Sīhāḷa Aṭṭhakathā in view of the lucid details given by Malalasekera (PLC, 91 f.) and Adikaram (EHBC, 10 ff.). The Mahā- or Mūla-Aṭṭhakathā is acknowledged as the chief source of the Samantapāsādikā (thirty-nine references), while Mahāpaccarī (ninety-four references), Kurundi (sixty-seven references), Andhaka (thirteen references), Saṅkhepa (nine references), and Paccarī (referring to either Mahāpaccarī or Saṅkhepa—one reference) are extensively consulted. The sources Buddhaghosa refers to in his prologue are actually those in his order of preference. He pays open tribute to the Mahā-Aṭṭhakathā while the Andhakaṭṭhakathā comes in for a good deal of criticism in the Samantapāsādikā. Though it is customary for him to give more weightage to the interpretations of the Mahā-Aṭṭhakathā, instances of his showing preference to explanations in other Commentaries over this one are not rare (see EHBC, 11 ff.). In three instances the Saṅkhepa is referred to in association with the Mahāpaccarī (as cited in EHBC 12, n. 9) which throws some light on its identity as the Cullapaccarī. It is rather strange that the Vinaya-Aṭṭhakathā referred to by Buddhaghosa in his commentaries on works of the Sutta and Abhidhamma Piṭakas, e.g. VibhA. 334,

1 UCR, xvii, 1–2, p. 2.
2 See the index to the Sinhalese edition of Smp. Simon Hewavitarne Bequest Series.
Pj. i, 97, hardly plays any significant part as a source of the Samantapāsādikā where it is to be most expected. This may perhaps be due to the fact that it was not an independent Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā by itself, but formed a part of each of the recognized versions of the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā to the whole Canon. When Buddhaghosa refers to the Samantapāsādikā in his other Commentaries he is quite specific, while the term Vinaya-Aṭṭhakathā by itself does not refer to his Commentary on the Vinaya. The reference at Pj. ii, 340 to a Khandhakaṭṭhakathā is to be placed in the same category as pointing to a part of the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā, while the reference at Pj. i, 97 to the Vinaya-Aṭṭhakathā leaves us in no doubt as to its nature, for it actually refers to the story of the First Convocation which is nearer to the version found at Vin. ii, 284 ff. rather than to the versions found in the introductions to the Commentaries of the first work of each of the Piṭakas. This, besides giving an indication as to how the accounts of the first two Councils were included in the Vinaya Cullavagga as its last two khandhakas, further lends support to the inference that this Vinaya-Aṭṭhakathā was not an independent Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā as Adikaram (EHBC, 13) contends but was a part of each of the recognized versions of these commentaries just as Khandhakaṭṭhakathā formed a constituent of it. Further investigation is necessary to arrive at a more definite conclusion as the material on which these inferences are made is very meagre.

Dates of Buddhaghosa’s Works

Coming to the question of the date of Samantapāsādikā in relation to that of his other works, we are faced with conflicting data. If its colophon is to be accepted without any questioning the only work that can be dated with accuracy is the Samantapāsādikā itself, but this leaves us in the serious predicament of trying to reconcile with its date the statement at Mhv. xxxvii, 246, which seems to suggest that Buddhaghosa returned to India, having accomplished his task in Ceylon, during Mahānāma’s reign itself and not after his death which is said to have taken place a little over a year after the completion of the Samantapāsādikā. The colophon (Smp. P.T.S. 1415) states:
Pālayantassa sakalaṁ Laṅkādīpaṁ nirabbudam rāñño Sirinivāsassa sirīpālayasassino
samavīsitime kheme jayaṁvacchare ayaṁ āraddhā, ekāvīsamhi sampatte pariniṭṭhitā;

“This work, undertaken exactly in the twentieth victorious and peaceful year when the glorious and renowned King Sirinivāsa was reigning unhindered over the whole of the Island of Laṅkā, was completed with the arrival of the twenty-first regnal year.” The same king is referred to as Sirikudala in the colophon to the Dhammapadaṭṭhakathā and is identified as Mahānāma. Taking his date of accession as A.C. 409 the Samantapāsādikā is to be dated, according to the colophon, to A.C. 429-430. The Visuddhimagga is to be assigned to a date prior to A.C. 429 as it was the first work of Buddhaghosa in Ceylon and this is supported not only by tradition but also by references to it in practically all of his Commentaries. Further, unlike some of his Commentaries which mutually refer to each other, the Visuddhimagga makes no mention of his Commentaries in Ceylon. The references in the Visuddhimagga to Majjhimaṭṭhakathā, Saṁyuṭtaṭṭhakathā, and Āṅguttaraṭṭhakathā are not to his own commentaries but to those belonging to the Siyala Aṭṭhakathā which he studied before he wrote this work.

The Kanḍhāvitaranī, the Commentary on the Pātimokkha, frequently refers to the Samantapāsādikā often with the statement: vitthāro pana Samantapāsādikāya Vinayasaṁvaṇṇāya vuttanayen’eva veditabbo, “And the explanation should be understood as stated in the exposition of the Vinaya in the Samantapāsādikā.” It is more or less certain that the Kanḍhāvitaranī was posterior to the Samantapāsādikā; and since it is the Commentary on the Pātimokkha it is quite probable that its compilation followed immediately after that of the Samantapāsādikā. We are not at all in this happy

1 Contrast this with the next stanza and also the statement in Paramatthadīpanī (Pañcappakaranatthakathā):
Yathā rakkhisu porāṇā surājano tath‘ev‘imaṁ rājā rakkhatu dhammena attano va pajaṁ pajaṁ.

2 See PLC 96.
3 See PLC 87.
position when we come to the question of the relative chronology between the Samantapāsādikā and Buddhaghosa’s Commentaries to works of the Sutta and Abhidhamma Piṭákas as the references are reciprocal. The Commentaries to the four Āgamas refer to the Samantapāsādikā, while each of the Commentaries to the succeeding work of the Piṭákas refers to the work or works that preceded it. Thus Sumaṅgalavilāsī (DA. iii, 981, 1000, 1043) refers to the Samantapāsādikā; Pāpāñcasūdānī (MA. i, 198, 199; iii, 45, 106) to Samantapāsādikā and (i, 2; v, 24) to Sumaṅgalavilāsī; Sāratṭhappakāsīnī (ii, 37, 145) to Samantapāsādikā, (i, 3, 348) to Sumaṅgalavilāsī, and (i, 13; ii, 45) to Pāpāñcasūdānī; Manorathapūraṇī (AA. iii, 334; iv, 136 f.) to Samantapāsādikā, (i, 3; iii, 285) to Sumaṅgalavilāsī, and (AA. i, 15) to Pāpāñcasūdānī. The Samantapāsādikā in turn refers to Sumaṅgalavilāsī (p. 115, Sinh. ed.), and Pāpāñcasūdānī (pp. 115, 644, 721, Sinh. ed.). It is quite probable that some of these references were inserted by Buddhaghosa later on into works already completed. This would not have been a difficult thing to do as the number of copies made during his brief stay in Ceylon could have been not many.

The fewer number of references in the Samantapāsādikā to the Āgama Commentaries ¹ may perhaps be indicative of the fact that it was the earlier work though there is no definite proof of their chronological relationship, particularly when we take into account the date given in the colophon and the Mahāvaṃsa reference to Buddhaghosa’s departure to India. The Pāpāñcasūdānī (MA. ii, 30), Sāratṭhappakāsīnī (SA. ii, 45), and Manorathapūraṇī (AA. v, 16) refer to Sammohavinodānī while the latter in turn (VibhA. 43, 396, 410, 479) mentions Atthasālinī as the Commentary that should take precedence over it. This would normally indicate that the Vinaya and Abhidhamma Commentaries were anterior to the Āgama Commentaries and that the commentaries to the works of each of the Piṭákas were composed in the order in which those works are classified in the Canon. The mutual references in Samantapāsādikā (Smp. P.T.S., 150) and Atthasālinī (DhsA. 97 f.) are

to be explained on quite a different basis. Though the Atthasaññī was written by Buddhaghosa in India, before he came to Ceylon, it must have been completed in Ceylon after being subjected to a complete revision in the light of the new material available at the Mahāvihāra, for this is the only explanation that could account for the references to Visuddhimagga and other subsequent works and the Sīhaḷa Aṭṭhakathā in the body of the work. In the light of the foregoing data, which should be treated with utmost caution, a tentative chronological scheme can be suggested though it can by no means be considered as satisfactory:—

1. Visuddhimagga.
2. Abhidhamma Commentaries in their order.
3. Vinaya Commentaries in their order.
4. The Āgama Commentaries in their order.

This scheme, however, would again lead us into some difficulty as the information given in the colophon to the Samantapāsādikā regarding the date of the completion of that work and that mentioned at Mhv. xxxvii, 246, regarding Buddhaghosa’s departure to India cannot be fully reconciled taking into account the volume of work that has to be dated after the Samantapāsādikā. Buddhaghosa’s departure is recorded in the stanza immediately preceding that which mentions the death of Mahānāma, and there is no reason to doubt the chronological sequence as intended by the author of this part of the Mahāvaṃsa. This being so, one or both of the above statements cannot be accepted considering the number of Commentaries that have to be dated after the Samantapāsādikā. First of all, the Kaṅkhāvitararāṇi which in all probability followed its major Vinaya Commentary would have kept the author occupied before he embarked on the Āgama Commentaries which, considering their bulk would have required at least three years of work if the Samantapāsādikā took him one year (or more). The revision of the Abhidhamma Commentaries too should be assigned to the period after the Samantapāsādikā. Besides, if any of the

¹ Vide PLC 98.
other four works\(^1\) that are attributed to Buddhaghosa were his, their compilation too would have to be assigned to the period after the Samantapāsādikā. This would leave us in the predicament of assigning all these works to the brief period between the King's twenty-first regnal year and his death which took place after he had reigned for twenty-two years. If the information in these two sources is correct, there is no alternative inference but to say that Buddhaghosa worked at several commentaries simultaneously. This would easily explain the cross-references in the several works while the absence of references to commentaries on works that follow in each of the Piṭakas in the Canonical arrangement presupposes that commentaries to works of each of the Piṭakas were written strictly in the order in which these works occur in the Canon.

Other Commentaries attributed to Buddhaghosa

This scheme has not taken into account the other commentaries attributed to Buddhaghosa, viz. Paramatthajotikā (KhA and SnA), Dhammapadaṭṭhakathā, and Jātakaṭṭhakathā. The prologue to Paramatthajotikā states that the author sets out to comment on the Khuddakas which he differentiates from the Khuddaka Nikāya: Khuddakāni nāma Khuddakanikāyassā ekadeso, Khuddakanikāyo nāma pañcanikāyānam ekadeso, “The Khuddakas constitute one part of the Khuddaka Nikāya and the Khuddaka Nikāya a part of the Five Nikāyas.” He next refers to the “greater” Khuddaka Nikāya as enumerated in the Bāhiranidāna (Smp. 31). It is possible that the term Khuddakas is meant to refer to Khuddakapāṭha and Sutta Nipāta as the Commentaries to both these works go by the same name Paramatthajotikā, while the other two Commentaries on works from the Khuddaka Nikāya which are attributed to Buddhaghosa have no separate names of their own, but are merely called Dhammapadaṭṭhakathā and Jātakaṭṭhakathā. The colophons to the Commentaries to Khuddakapāṭha and Sutta Nipāta do not provide any additional information except that the usual postscript is appended. Adikaram (EHBC 7 f.) doubts the authenticity of the tradition which attributes the Paramatthajotikā to Buddhaghosa and

\(^1\) KhA., SnA., DhA., JA.
gives his reasons for it, briefly examining the two works which comprise the Paramatthajotikā. He even doubts whether the two Commentaries in it were the work of the same author and suggests that the commentator Buddhaghosa to whom the works are attributed may be the Elder by that name mentioned in the Atthasālinī (DhsA. i, st. 8) and Sammohavinodani (VibhA. 523) at whose request these works were compiled.

The Dhammapadaṭṭhakathā in its prologue mentions that the excellent commentary found in the language of the Island of Tambapāṇi, handed down from generations does not serve the purpose of others (i.e. foreign monks), and that Buddhaghosa is translating it into Pali at the request of the Elder Kumārakassapa (DhA. i, i, stt. 5, 7), while the colophon adds that he wrote it when living in the storeyed dwelling of King Sirikuḍḍa (i.e. Mahānāma) in the monastery which was caused to have been erected by the grateful Emperor (DhA. iv, 235, st. 2). The stanza does not make it clear whether King Sirikuḍḍa and the Emperor are one and the same. In spite of this, the authorship of this commentary remains doubtful (see PLC 96 ff. for a detailed discussion), though there is yet a possibility, in spite of the difference in language and style between this work and Buddhaghosa’s major commentaries, that it may be by him.

The next work, Jātakaṭṭṭhakathā, too is attributed to Buddhaghosa, but it is extremely doubtful whether it was by him (see PLC 117 ff.). The prologue seems to suggest that Buddhaghosa was its author as it follows the usual pattern of the prologues to his works and points out that the commentary will be based on the tradition of the Mahāvihāra: Jātakassa atthavaṇṇanaṁ Mahāvihāravāsinaṁ vācanāmagganisṣitaṁ bhāsīsam (JA i, i, st. 10 f.). But indirectly a greater antiquity is claimed for this work than any of the other works of Buddhaghosa in Ceylon, if Buddhamitta, who is mentioned in the prologue, was the teacher under whom Buddhaghosa studied the Sīhaḷa Aṭṭhakathā (Smp. P.T.S., 1415), for no other work goes so far back as to mention Buddhamitta’s preceptor. It is very unlikely that the other Buddhamitta, his fellow-resident at Mayūrapatṭana (MA. v, 109) would have had his
Inception of Discipline

preceptor in Ceylon. The two monks Atthadassi and Buddhavatti (of the Mahāvihāra) and Buddhadeva "of keen intellect belonging to the Mahīmṣāsaka Sect" (st. 7) jointly request the author to compile this work. This creates another problem of how a monk belonging to a rival School to the Mahāvihāra could reconcile himself with the Mahāvihāra tradition. Thus the prologue, in the face of all these contradictions, appears spurious and looks like an attempt of a later writer to invest it with more authenticity than was really necessary to show that it was Buddhaghosa's. The colophon too is quite different from what is usually found in Buddhaghosa's works and consists of a long patthana which by no stretch of imagination could have come from Buddhaghosa's pen. The absence of the usual postscript is also very significant. The reference in the Sutta-nipāta Aṭṭhakathā (Pj. ii, 357) to the Nīdanakathā of the Jātakaṭṭhakathā may or may not refer to this version, for it might as well refer to the version in the Sihaḷa Aṭṭhakathā on which the extant work is based.1 The Manorathapūrāṇī closes the last important chapter in Buddhaghosa's literary career, and aptly bears that name to commemorate the fulfilment of his heart’s desire to compile commentaries to all the Four Āgamas (see the colophon, AA. v, 98 f.). In spite of the doubts cast on these works regarding their authorship, if a date is to be assigned to them, it has to be after the date of the Manorathapūrāṇī. No chronological arrangement is possible except to say that Khuddakapāṭha Aṭṭhakathā preceded the Suttanipāta Aṭṭhakathā and that these two preceded Dhammapadaṭṭhakathā and Jātakaṭṭhakathā. Geiger (Pali Language and Literature, p. 32) states that the Dhammapadaṭṭhakathā is later than the Jātakaṭṭhakathā, but gives no reasons for saying so.

In our search for further corroborative evidence we have to turn to the colophons of the works which are definitely known to be Buddhaghosa's, even though the information given in them cannot solve the question of relative chronology. The stereotyped postscript is of no value at all as it can very well belong to a subsequent scribe. The colophon to the

1 Smp. Sinh. ed., p. 179, refers to a Jātaka Nikāya along with the four prose Nikāyas.
Jātakaṭṭhakathā, which is the only one besides that to Samantapāsādikā which could have provided some useful information, cannot be relied upon. The colophon of Visuddhimagga says that the work was written on the invitation of a monk named Saṅghapāla, of whom nothing else is known. The names of theras who figure in the colophons to the other works (summarized in EHBC, 5 ff.) are not of much help unless something precise is known about them. Even here, the formal request to write these books could have been made long before the actual commencement of the works concerned. Thus, Buddhamitta’s request to write the commentary to the Majjhima Nikāya was made at Mayūrapaṭṭana, and Jotipāla’s to write the commentary to the Saṃyutta Nikāya was made perhaps at Kāṇci. It was probably the same Jotipāla, Buddhaghosa’s fellow-resident, who requested him both at Kāṇci and in the Mahāvihāra to write the commentary to the Aṅguttara Nikāya. Buddhamitta, under whom he studied the Sihaḷa Aṭṭhakathā, was different from his old friend by that name of his Kāṇci days. It is the former Buddhamitta who is also referred to as Buddhāsiri in the Bāhiranidāna (see Smp. i, n. 5). The writer of the prologue to the Jātakaṭṭhakathā also refers to the same Elder when he mentions the name along with that of his preceptor Atthadassī.

Sources of the Bāhiranidāna

Coming back to the Bāhiranidāna, a few words regarding its style and arrangement are necessary at this stage. As these are to some extent determined by the nature of the sources of which it is a somewhat faithful translation, a brief reference should be made to them in passing, though there seems to be hardly anything to be added to what has already been said by Oldenberg (the Dīpavāṃsa, edition and translation, pp. 2 ff.), Geiger (the Dīpavāṃsa and the Mahāvamsa, pp. 43 ff., the Mahāvamsa, English translation, pp. ix ff.), and Malalasekera (Vaṃsatthappakāsini–Mahāvamsa Ṭīkā, i, pp. lvi ff.). What has been said with reference to these works applies to some extent to the Bāhiranidāna as well, for all these works are based on practically the same source-material with a few modifications and changes necessitated by the aim in view and the
individual taste of their respective authors. Opinion differs as to what this source-material was as regards details though fundamentally there is a certain degree of agreement. Oldenberg identifies the Porāṇa, Porāṇaṭṭhakathā, and Aṭṭhakathā Mahāvamsa as referring to one and the same source. He holds that this formed the historical introduction to the Sinhalese Commentary of the Mahāvihāra, the Mahā or Mūla Aṭṭhakathā, and that it was an essential constituent part of the latter “composed in order to give the dogmatical contents of the latter the indispensable historical foundation”. Geiger’s view is that there was an ancient independent chronicle belonging to the Mahāvihāra bringing the historical records down to Mahāsena’s reign, the rewritten Pali version of which is the present Mahāvamsa. This he compares to the medieval monastic chronicles of Europe (ibid., p. 64). Malalasekera agrees with him and identifies it with the Sinhalese Aṭṭhakathā Mahāvamsa and points out that originally this chronicle formed an historical introduction to the Canonical commentary and dealt only with the following items:

Dīpāgamanam Buddhassa dhātu ca bodhiyāgamaṇ sāṅghācariyavādaṇ ca dīpam hi sāsanāgamaṇ narindāgamanam vaṃsaṇ . . .

"The Buddha’s visits to the Island, the arrival of the relic(s), and of the Bodhi, the (doctrinal) tradition of the leading Elders of the Saṅgha, the establishment of the Dispensation in the Island, the coming of the King and the genealogy . . . ." (Dpv. i, r). Later it incorporated extraneous matter and developed into an independent compilation, whose custodians were the Mahāvihāra monks (ibid., lviii). He adds that the historical tradition grew by various stages by the inclusion of new material as time went on and that it was added on to the already existing Porāṇa-aṭṭhakathā (ibid., lix). The already existing Porāṇa-aṭṭhakathā were the Commentaries to the Canon. Perhaps the introductions to Buddhaghosa’s Commentaries to the first book of each of the Piṭakas (Smp., DA, DhsA) may be helpful in determining those portions of the original Porāṇa-aṭṭhakathā, as unnecessary historical details of the Island have no relevance to his purpose which was to
establish the genuineness of the Textual and Commentarial tradition in Ceylon.

Thus many of the problems connected with the Dipavamsa and the Mahāvamsa regarding additional information not found in the Commentarial introductions do not arise in the case of the Bāhiranidāna which has a limited aim in view. Furthermore, its historical introduction is purely from the point of view of the Vinaya tradition and nothing else, while the list of kings and the chronological details (at Smp. 76) are merely incidental. Here, too, it does not proceed beyond Devānampiyatissa, while the Vinaya tradition is traced as far as the date indicated by the phrase yāva ajjatanā (about first century A.C.), through a succession of Vinaya teachers. Whether there was an independent chronicle, or whether the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā were prefixed with an introduction which from time to time was augmented to include events up to Mahāsenā's reign, it can be said without any degree of doubt that the portion covered by the Bāhiranidāna did certainly belong to the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā to the Canon as "the indispensable foundation" of the Vinaya is discussed in it. In giving the historical foundation of the Vinaya, Buddhaghosa has skilfully woven together into the narrative much relevant information, e.g. the classification of the Teachings, etc., which may or may not have been found in the sources, and most probably not in the context in which it is presented in the Bāhiranidāna as well as in the introductions to Sumanāgalavilāsini and Atthasālinī. This historical background portrayed the continuity of the Vinaya as far as the sources would go. All the events that are found recorded in the chronicles coming after the date of the source materials of the Bāhiranidāna, as well as the historical data not relevant in establishing the genuineness of the Textual and Commentarial tradition in Ceylon, should be treated as "foreign" to the Sīhāla Aṭṭhakathā on the Canon. They are, however, quite appropriate in the Aṭṭhakathā Mahāvamsa (or Sīhalaṭṭhakathā Mahāvamsa) and other Porāṇa sources outside the Mahā-Aṭṭhakathā and other allied recensions of the Sinhalese Commentaries on the Tipitaka. This would naturally lead us to the inference that the sources of the Pali Commentaries and those of the Chronicles were
Inception of Discipline

distinct though not necessarily independent and that the latter included all that was necessary for their purpose from among the sources of the former.

Buddhaghosa’s rôle, as well as that of Mahānāma, the author of the Mahāvaṃsa, was to translate the available material into Pali (see Mhv. Tīkā, i, 36, etc., loc. cit., pp. lvi). As the Tīkā states, the Mahāvaṃsa was a faithful rendering of the original Sinhalese source-material with the only change that it was put into Pali verse. Compared with the previous clumsy attempt at versification in the Dīpavamsa, Mahāvaṃsa stands out as a work of considerable poetic achievement though it falls short of the elegant poetry of the Canonical metrical literature. The fact that it was a metrical rendering could have placed certain restrictions and limitations on the author as regards presenting a faithful rendering of the original material. In the case of the Bāhiranidāna there were no such restrictions, and undoubtedly one may suppose that it is even more faithful to the original Sinhalese source than the more elegant literary product, the Mahāvaṃsa. It is partly on this basis that minor discrepancies in some proper names between the Bāhiranidāna and the Chronicles are to be explained, e.g. Issaranimmāna, Kāliṅgakula, Pakunḍaka, Tavakka, etc. (see notes to Translation). However, the word-for-word similarity between wholesale passages of the Bāhiranidāna and the Chronicles (see Geiger, the Dīpavamsa and Mahāvaṃsa, 106 ff.) shows that there were no wide divergences between them. This similarity does not presuppose the fact that the chronologically later work was based on the earlier work, but that they go back to a common tradition. Where actual quotations are made from the Dīpavamsa they are duly acknowledged in the Bāhiranidāna whereas the passages taken wholesale from the Porāṇā are acknowledged as such and the fact that the Dīpavamsa too had incorporated them is ignored.

The Style and Arrangement of the Bāhiranidāna

As stated earlier, the style and arrangement of the Bāhiranidāna is to a great extent determined by the nature of its

---

1 Both the Aṭṭhakathā Mahāvaṃsa and Sīhaḷa Aṭṭhakathā to the Tipiṭaka were interspersed with Pali verse. See Malalasekera, Mhv. Tīkā, I, lvi ff.
sources. In spite of Buddhaghosa’s commentaries being translations of the Sihaḷa Aṭṭhakathā his works display a literary style of their own. Though he worked under serious limitations as regards the interpretation of the Texts, he appears to have exercised the highest freedom when he clothed his ideas in words. His prose style which is so vigorous and lucid is quite different from the sober and stereotyped prose of the Nikāyas. The old idiom is already archaic by Buddhaghosa’s time. Though the language of the Vinaya and Abhidhamma Piṭakas shows minor differences from that of the prose Nikāyas, there is essentially no fundamental departure from the older idiom. The Post-Canonical works like the Milinda Pañha, Nettippakaranā, and Peṭakopadesa exhibit a somewhat greater degree of flexibility not seen in the standard prose of the Nikāyas, yet betray their kinship to the earlier idiom. Buddhaghosa makes no effort to conform to the old idiom as it would have hindered his free expression of ideas. The restrictions imposed by the no-longer living idiom of the Canon would have made his task very difficult. Yet it was necessary to re-edit the old commentaries in the language of the Texts—pāḷinayānurūpaṁ. He has done this so skilfully that it met with the approval of the Theras not only as regards contents but also in literary style: Theriyācariyā sabbe pāḷim viya tam aggahum—Mhv. xxxvii, 245. For his purpose he has masterfully evolved a style of his own which is even more vigorous and expressive than that of the Milinda Pañha, the best of the Post-Canonical works as regards style and diction, yet keeping within the strict rules of the idiom of the Texts—tantikkamaṁ kañ ci avokkamitvā. This is best stated in the words of Malalasekera: “In place of the archaic, stilted, sometimes halting Sutta speech, almost puritanical in its simplicity, groping about often for want of words to express ideas and conceptions then fresh to the minds of the users of this or that dialect, Buddhaghosa left behind him in his many works a language rich in its vocabulary, flexible in its use, elegant in structure, often intricate in the verbiage of its constructions, and capable of expressing all the ideas that the human mind had then conceived. Sonorous, long-winded sentences took the place of the direct simple composition of the Suttas” (PLC, 103).
However, this literary skill is not seen to best advantage in the actual commentarial portions of his Commentaries, but in his original work Visuddhimagga, the introductory chapters to his Commentaries, and the long exegetical remarks and narrative portions of his works. In the case of the Bāhiranidāna, its faithfulness to the older Porāṇa source, in the bulk of the narrative, has not given Buddhaghosa much opportunity to show his literary skill at its best. Yet, where he has deviated from the sources, his true genius as a writer of elegant Pali is quite evident. The best examples of Buddhaghosa occasionally exercising great freedom when he cuts himself away from the sources are seen in a few scattered descriptive passages in the Bāhiranidāna, e.g. the description of the pavilion erected by Ajātasattu (Smp. 10), of Asoka’s supernatural powers (Smp. 44), Majjhantika’s conversion of Kasmīra-Gandhāra (Smp. 65), Soṇa and Uttara in Suvanṇabhūmi (Smp. 72), etc. Some of these descriptions betray a remarkable affinity to the highly ornate descriptive prose of Classical Sanskrit of this period. The nature of the material to be dealt with is such that Buddhaghosa had very little opportunity of proving his ability as a “creative” writer, but the few available examples are a sufficient indication of his ability in this direction. Furthermore, some idea of his analytic and synthetic treatment of highly abstruse points of doctrine, his logical reasoning and proneness to abstraction, best seen in the Visuddhimagga, can be gained from his remarks on the classification of the Buddha’s teachings, especially those at Smp. 25 ff.

The narrative prose of the Bāhiranidāna can be classed among the best of its category in Pali literature and compares very favourably with the best in Indian literature. It can claim for itself this distinction not only for its clarity, simplicity, and vigour, but also due to its effective presentation, while at the same time closely adhering to the main theme, the Nidāna of the Vinaya. In spite of his rôle as commentator, Buddhaghosa reveals himself as a great writer of narrative prose. This is amply illustrated by the manner in which the episodes of Tissa (Smp. 39 ff.), Nigrodha (Smp. 47 f.), Tissa, Asoka’s brother (56 ff.), the conversion of the Border Districts (Smp. 65 ff.), the Great Bodhi (Smp. 97 ff.), etc., are presented.
All these episodes are skilfully woven into the main narrative with the greatest ease and at no stage do they appear forced or laboured. He makes subsequent reference to an earlier statement by giving details to justify it, e.g. end of Smp. 18, Handa mayaṃ āvuso dhammaṃ ca vinayaṃ ca saṅgāyāma ... at Smp. 4; Smp. 48, Rājā sīhapaṇjare ṭhito ... at the top of Smp. 47, etc. He carries this simple device further by resorting to the so-called "flash-back" style in order to explain an incident or introduce a new figure in the narrative, e.g. Smp. 47, 56, 97 ff., etc. He does so in order to avoid a break in the main narrative and often connects up the episode with an introductory phrase such as, Tatrayaṃ ānupubbikathā (Smp. 47, 64), Ko paṇayaṃ Nigrodho nāma (Smp. 47), Tissatthero nāma na yo vā so vā (Smp. 56), etc. Compared with the chronological sequence in which events are recorded in the Chronicles, this manner of narrating a story appears to be rather unusual, but it is doubtful whether it was peculiar to Buddhaghosa, for this difference between the Samantapāsādikā and the Chronicles may reflect some significant fact as regards their sources. As stated earlier, the Samantapāsādikā and the Chronicles have drawn from two different sources (not necessarily independent) and the main narrative in the Samantapāsādikā perhaps reflects the introductory portion of the Vinayaṭṭhakathā of the Sīhāla Āṭṭhakathā while the supplementary material drawn from other Porāṇa sources, including those on which the Chronicles were based, was included in the narrative as additional information. The difference in sources is perhaps a plausible explanation of the unusual "flash-back" style of the Bāhiranidāna. On the other hand, it may equally be said that there is nothing new in this technique and that it goes back even to the Canon, e.g. bhūtapubbaṃ bhikkhave imissā yeva Sāvatthiyā ... etc., and is the rule in the Jātaka literature in narrating the past story, e.g. atītaṃ āhari. Whatever its origin, the narration of a story in historical sequence is not considered as an essential element in the Bāhiranidāna, whereas the Chronicles try to maintain it as far as possible. The scant attention paid to it in the Bāhiranidāna even tends to confuse the reader. For example, the legend of the Nāga King Kāla appears earlier in the narrative (Smp. 45) and
mention is made of King Asoka paying homage to the image of the Buddha created by him, while his conversion is mentioned later on (Smp. 48). Asoka’s reference to the Dhamma as “ovāda” in his conversation with Nigrodha before his conversion, on the other hand, is meant to impress on the reader Asoka’s unfamiliarity with Buddhism. (See Smp. 87, n. 2 for parallel instances.) Yet, as regards chronology the Bāhiranidāna is consistent within itself, e.g. see the chronological details of Asoka’s reign given at Smp. 52, 53, 56, 74, etc.

The Bāhiranidāna is seen to follow the usual style of Pali Canonical writings when it intersperses a large number of stanzas along with the prose. Many of these stanzas resemble stanzas occurring in the Dīpavamsa and the Mahāvamsa, but are identical in a few instances only. Except where actual quotations are made from the Dīpavamsa, the rest is to be traced to the Pali stanzas of the Porāṇas, already referred to, which these works incorporated, either in the form in which they occurred in the different versions of the old Aṭṭhakathā, or with a few modifications to suit their literary style.

Another feature the Bāhiranidāna shares with all the works of Buddhaghosa is the frequent allusion to Canonical Texts and quotations from them to substantiate his statements, especially in his exegetical remarks, e.g. Smp. 28.

*    *    *

Among the contents of the Bāhiranidāna there are several topics of great interest, the most important of which are the accounts of the Three Councils and the traditions pertaining to them. As this subject has been exhaustively dealt with from various angles, expressing conflicting views, it is not proposed to take it up here, nor have any observations of a controversial nature been made in the notes to the Inception of Discipline. The incidental information given in these accounts requires more careful examination than making generalizations on the Councils themselves, which are too vast a topic to be taken up here. A few observations have been made in the notes about the traditional classifications of the Teachings (Smp. 16 ff.). The Succession of Teachers in India (Smp. 35) and in Ceylon
(Smp. 63) is a very fruitful field for investigation, and the work already done so far by scholars in this field requires to be carried on with patient toil in order that the ācariya-paramparā should have some meaning instead of its remaining a mere list. The observations made on Asoka’s associations with Buddhism in the light of the data available in the Pali sources should help the reader to reassess the so-called “Buddhist” edicts of Asoka which have hitherto been neglected; the tendency so far has been to treat the edicts and the Pali sources as things apart shedding no mutual light on one another. A fresh examination of the historicity of the missions sent out after the Third Council and Asoka’s relations with the kingdoms over which his “dhammavijaya” extended is also necessary. His connexions with Ceylon, too, require more careful examination, particularly in view of the two envoys sent by Tissa, his second consecration, and the adoption of the Mauryan title Devānampiya which was later adopted by several Sinhalese Kings (see Epigraphia Zeylanica, i, 142). It is not within the scope of a book of this nature to treat adequately any one of these problems.

N. A. Jayawickrama.

Department of Pali and Buddhist Civilization,
University of Ceylon,
Peradeniya.

THE INCEPTION OF DISCIPLINE OR THE HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION TO THE VINAYA COMMENTARY CALLED SAMANTAPĀSĀDIKĀ

Homage to the Exalted One, the worthy and fully awakened.

I—The Preamble

I. I pay homage to that Lord of great compassion who underwent severe hardships for a long period which cannot be reckoned even in terms of crores of aeons and brought pain upon himself for the sake of the welfare of the world. I pay homage to the exalted Dhamma, the resort of the awakened, which tears asunder the tangle of defilements such as that of ignorance, not understanding which, the world of beings goes from existence to existence.

I prostrate myself before the worthy Saṅgha, the field for those in quest of merit, which is endowed with the virtues of morality, concentration, wisdom, and insight into emancipation.

I have won an incessant flow of merit by my adoration of the Triad of Gems which in this manner is most worthy of reverence; and by its power I have surmounted all obstacles.

Placing reliance in the greatness of the teachers of yore I shall expound the uncontaminated Code of Discipline by the survival of which is assured the mainstay of the Dispensation of the Sage of great stability though He exists no more.

Readily have the pre-eminent teachers of yore who have washed away the stains of defilements with the water of their wisdom, being endowed with analytical knowledge arising from their clear wisdom and being adept in the exposition of the Good Teaching—

and who are like unto the banners of the Mahāvihāra, expounded to us the Discipline of the higher life with clear examples and divers methods as adopted by the noble Sambuddha, the Enlightened One.
But on account of the fact that this exposition had been done in the language of the Island of Sīhala, and since the monks overseas cannot understand the meaning thereof.

I shall now begin this exposition in conformity with the method of treatment found in the Sacred Texts, recollecting well the request made by the Elder named Buddhasiri.

And in commencing the exposition I shall practically base it on the Mahā-aṭṭhakathā as well as the Mahāpaccariya without discarding the relevant statements and the rulings given in the recognized commentaries such as the Kurundi; and henceforth I shall proceed with the correct exposition of the Tradition of the Elders embodied therein.

May the Elders and monks both young and middling with devotion at heart and holding in high esteem the Teaching of the Tathāgata who is the guiding lamp of the Dhamma, hearken unto me.

The Buddha has declared both the Dhamma and the Vinaya which his Sons came to know likewise. Since, in the past, commentaries were written without ignoring their judgments,

I shall therefore avoid the incorrect statements (scribes' errors) handed down in those commentaries, for the final authority here are the men of learning who have the highest esteem for the methods of training.

Thence giving up recourse to a different tongue, condensing protracted exegesis, without excluding any formal decision nor deviating from the method of exposition found in the textual tradition even in a small measure—

this exposition should be studied with care as it will offer explanations in harmony with the Suttas (discourses) taking into account the statements of those who are well versed in the Suttantas.

2. Since it is said here that I would expound the Vinaya, the term Vinaya itself should be first defined; and hence it is said that the entire Vinaya Piṭaka is meant by the term Vinaya here. Here is its tabulation for purposes of exposition:

By whom it was said, when, for what reason, held by whom,
handed down by whom, where it was established: having thus explained the procedure

I shall proceed to show in divers ways the significance of the section beginning with tena ¹ and compile a commentary to the Vinaya.

Here the phrase, "by whom it was said, when and for what reason" has been used with reference to the statement beginning with,² "At that time the Buddha, the Exalted One was living at Vepañjā." This evidently is not a statement made personally by the Buddha himself. Therefore it is imperative that we state [4] by whom this statement was made, when and for what reason. The venerable Elder Upāli uttered this at the time of the First Great Convocation, and this First Great Convocation has been dwelt upon at length in the Section dealing with the Convocation of the Five Hundred.³ For the sake of familiarity with the source, here too, it should be understood in the following manner.

II—The Account of the First Great Convocation

3. When the Exalted One, the Lord of the world had passed away in the element of Nibbāna which is devoid of any material substratum, at the hour of day-break on the full moon day of the month of Visākha ¹ between the twin sāla trees in the Upavattana sāla-grove of the Mallas in Kusinārā,² having discharged the functions of an Enlightened One, beginning with the turning of the Wheel of the Dhamma,³ down to the conversion of the wandering ascetic Subhadda,⁴ the venerable Mahākassapa the leading Elder ⁵ among the 700,000 monks who had assembled at the passing away in perfect Nibbāna of the Exalted One, recollecting after the lapse of seven days from the passing away in perfect Nibbāna of the Exalted One, the words uttered by Subhadda ⁶ who had taken to the ascetic life in old age, namely,⁷ "Away with it friends, grieve not, lament not, we are well rid of the Great Recluse who was wont to tell us what was befitting and what was not and hence made our lives miserable; but now we will do whatever we please and not do what we please not"; kindled the enthusiasm
among the Order of monks to bring about a rehearsal of the Dhamma and Vinaya and further reflected,⁸ "It may be that the occasion would arise for evil-minded monks to think that the Sacred-word is such that its Teacher is no more, to form factions and before long make the Good Teaching disappear for ever. As long as the Dhamma and Vinaya endure, so long will the Sacred-word be such that its Teacher has not passed into oblivion. And so has the Exalted One said,⁹ 'O Ānanda, the Dhamma and the Vinaya that I have declared to you [5] and laid down before you (respectively) that itself will be your teacher after my demise.' It behoves me to rehearse the Dhamma and Vinaya so that the Dispensation would endure and remain for long. Since I have been honoured with equality in the use of robes by the Exalted One saying,¹⁰ 'Kassapa, you may wear my patch-work hempen robes which I no longer use,' and also honoured by placing me on an equal footing with Himself with reference to transcendental attainments ¹¹ consisting of the categories such as the sixfold higher knowledge ¹² and the ninefold successive modes of abiding ¹³ with such statements as,¹⁴ 'O monks, as long as he wishes, Kassapa can enter and abide in the first jhāna (spiritual rapture) being detached from sensual pleasures, etc.', what other indebtedness will there be unto me as such? Has not the Exalted One conferred upon me this unique honour of considering me as the protector of the lineage of His Good Teaching even as a king would his own son as the perpetuator of his dynasty by conferring upon him his armour and regal splendour?"

4. For it has been said,¹ "Thereupon the venerable Mahā-kassapa addressed the monks, 'On one occasion, friends, I had set out on the high road from Pāvā to Kusinārā with a large company of monks, about five hundred in number.'" In this manner the entire Section dealing with Subhadda ² should be understood in detail.

⁶ Subsequently he said,³ "Let us, friends, rehearse the Dhamma and the Vinaya: in the past what was contrary to the Dhamma and the Vinaya prevailed, the Dhamma and the Vinaya were disregarded; those who held views contrary to the Dhamma and the Vinaya held sway while those who
professed the Dhamma and the Vinaya were powerless.”  

The monks rejoined, “If that be so, Sir, may the Elder select the monks (for the Convocation).”

The Elder rejected many hundreds and thousands of monks in the categories of worldling, Stream-Entrant, Once-Returner, Non-Returner, and Dry Visioned Arahant and canker-waned Arahant, all of whom were versed in the Teachings consisting of the entire ninefold Dispensation of the Teacher and chose 499 canker-waned monks who alone were proficient with regard to the learning in all aspects of the Teachings in the entire Three Baskets, had attained mastery in analytical knowledge, were of no mean achievement, and for the greater part were classified by the Exalted One as an expert each in his field in the distinct spheres of the threefold knowledge. Regarding them it has been said, “Thereupon the venerable Mahākassapa selected five hundred Arahants less one.”

5. Why did the Elder make the number fall short by one? To make room for the venerable Elder Ananda. It was not possible to hold the Convocation with or without that venerable one, for he was yet a Learner with his (spiritual) task yet unaccomplished. Therefore it was not permissible to have him at the Convocation. Since there was no section whatsoever of the Teachings of the Lord of Ten Powers commencing with the discourses and mixed prose and verse utterances which he himself had not learned from the Exalted One, it was equally not possible to hold it without him. This being so, even though he was yet a Learner he would have to be selected by the Elder on account of the great service that might be rendered by him at the rehearsal of the Dhamma; but the reason for his not [7] being selected was to absolve himself (Kassapa) of the blame of others.

The Elder had great confidence in the venerable Ananda, so much so, that even after grey hair started appearing on his head, he used to look upon him as a lad and address him, “And Oh! this lad has not understood even this little.” (Had he been chosen) the monks would have subjected him to hostile criticism, saying that the Elder had chosen Ananda who was endowed with the analytic insight of but a Learner in preference
to many monks who had reached perfection and were also endowed with analytic insight in conformity with it, and would think that in this instance he was prejudiced in his favour as this venerable one was born of the Sakya Clan and was the Tathāgata's cousin, being the son of his father's younger brother. While avoiding that censure by others he (purposely) did not select him, reflecting (at the same time) that it was not possible to hold the rehearsal without Ānanda (but) he would accept him only on the express wish of the monks.

Thereupon the monks themselves begged of the Elder on Ānanda's behalf; for it has been said 3: "The monks spoke thus to Venerable Mahākassapa, 'Yonder Venerable Ānanda, Sir, even though he is yet a Learner, is incapable of going on a wrong course through desire, ill-will, fear, or delusion 4; he has mastered much of the Dhamma and the Vinaya under the Exalted One. Therefore, Sir, may the Elder nominate Venerable Ānanda as well.'" Thereupon Venerable Mahākassapa selected Venerable Ānanda as well. There were thus 500 Elders including that venerable one who was selected on the express wish of the monks.

6. It then occurred to the Elder monks,1 "Where shall we rehearse the Dhamma and the Vinaya?" Thereupon it again occurred to them, [8] "Food is plentiful at Rājagaha, 2 and lodgings are easy to obtain there. Well then, let us rehearse the Dhamma and the Vinaya spending the Rains-residence 3 at Rājagaha, and let not other monks enter upon the Rains-residence there." Why did they think in this manner? (Their idea was:) "Perhaps some undesirable individual may come into the midst of the monks and disturb this gigantic undertaking of ours." Then the venerable Mahākassapa made an announcement followed by a formal Act of the Order. 4 It should be understood as stated in the Section dealing with the Convocation.5

7. A fortnight had elapsed since the time of the passing away of the Tathāgata in perfect Nibbāna when seven days were spent in sacred festivities 1 and a further seven days in paying homage to the relics and so on. And the Elder Mahākassapa,
First Great Convocation

considering that one and a half months of the summer were yet remaining and that the day for entering upon the Rains-residence was fast drawing nigh, took with him half the number of the Order of monks saying, "Friends, we shall repair to Rājagaha," and went in one direction. The Elder Anuruddha took with him the other half and went by a different route.

8. On the other hand, the Elder Ānanda, taking with him the bowl and the robe of the Exalted One and being attended by a company of monks went on a missionary tour in the direction of Sāvatthi in his eagerness to repair to Rājagaha visiting Sāvatthi first. Wherever the Elder Ānanda went, there was great lamentation to the effect, "O Sir, Venerable Ānanda, where have you left the Teacher that you are coming here?" In due course the Elder arrived at Sāvatthi; the lamentation there was great, as it had been on the day of the passing away of the Exalted One in perfect Nibbāna. Thereupon the venerable Ānanda consoled the populace with a discourse on the Dhamma dealing with transciency and, entering the Jeta Grove opened the door of the Fragrant Chamber which used to be the dwelling of the Lord of Ten Powers, shifted the couch and seats, dusted them, swept the Fragrant Chamber, [9] threw away the rubbish of withered flowers and garlands, brought back the couch and the seats and placed them in their former places and did all the ministrations which he would have done when the Exalted One had been alive. Then the Elder took a purgative in milk on the following day in order to allay the humours of his body which were disturbed on account of the excessively sedentary life he had led from the time of the passing away of the Exalted One in perfect Nibbāna, and remained indoors in the monastery. He referred to it when he told the young brahmin messenger whom Subha the brahmin had sent, "Young man, it will not suit me today. I have taken some medicine. Perhaps I shall come to-morrow." On the following day, he went accompanied by the Elder Cetaka as his attendant monk and, when questioned by Subha the brahmin, preached the tenth sutta of the Dighanikāya called Subhasutta. After that the Elder supervised the repairs to the broken and shattered portions of the Jetavana Monastery.
and, when the day for entering upon the Rains-residence drew near, went to Rājagaha. Likewise, the Elders Mahākassapa and Anuruddha took with them the entire company of monks and went to Rājagaha itself.

9. At that time there were eighteen great monasteries at Rājagaha. And all of them were soiled with the cast-off and accumulated rubbish. For, at the time of the passing away of the Exalted One in perfect Nibbāna all the monks took each his bowl and robe and went away deserting the monasteries and cells. The Elders there, in order to honour the request of the Exalted One and to escape the adverse criticism of members of heretical schools, thought of repairing the dilapidations during the first month. For, should the heretics say, "The disciples of the Recluse Gotama looked after their monasteries while their Teacher was alive; now that he has passed away in perfect Nibbāna, they have deserted them," it is said that they thought so to escape the blame from them.

[10] And so it has been said: It then occurred to the Elder monks, "Friends, the Exalted One has praised the effecting of repairs to dilapidations. So let us, friends, during the first month, repair the dilapidations and assemble to rehearse the Dhamma and the Vinaya during the second month."

10. On the following day they went and stood at the palace gates. King Ajātasattu came forth, saluted them and inquired from them why they had come and what they expected him to do. The Elders intimated their need of labour to effect the repairs to the dilapidations in the eighteen great monasteries. "Very well, Sirs," said the King and gave artisans. The Elders had all the monasteries repaired during the first month and informed the King, "Great King, the repairs to the monasteries are completed, we now wish to rehearse the Dhamma and Vinaya."

"Very well, Sirs, do so with full confidence. Mine is the wheel of command, let yours be the Wheel of the Dhamma. Command of me, Sirs, whatever you wish me to do."

"A place for the monks who make the rehearsal of the Dhamma to assemble, Great King."
"Where shall I build it, Sirs?"

"It is meet you erect it at the entrance to the Sattapanṇi Cave on the side of the mountain Vebhāra, Great King."

"So be it, Sirs," said King Ajātasattu and had a pavilion erected, resembling the handiwork of Vissakamma, with well apportioned walls, pillars, and stairways, adorned with diverse decorative designs of garlands and creepers, as though surpassing the splendour of the royal palace, or mocking with derision the glory of divine mansions, like unto a veritable abode of Sīra or a unique emporium, or a world of delight to the birds—the eyes of devas and men—or like a conglomeration of the choice essence of all that the eye should see; and decorated it like the abode of Brahma, with its floor well laid out and ornamented with variegated decorative motifs of many kinds of flowers resembling a floor of polished crystal inlaid with gems of many colours and with a delightful overflowing canopy with manifold festoons of flowers suspended from it. In that large pavilion he spread out 500 rugs which were permissible for use for the 500 monks, prepared a seat for the president at the southern end facing the North and a seat for the preacher in the centre of the pavilion facing the East, a seat worthy even of the Buddha, the Exalted One; and placing there a fan inlaid with ivory he sent word to the Order of monks: "My task, Sirs, is done."

And at that time some monks, referring to the venerable Ānanda said, "There is a monk here in this assembly who goes about emanating the smell of raw flesh." The Elder heard it and was greatly perturbed thinking that there was no other monk in that assembly of monks who went about emanating the smell of raw flesh, and that undoubtedly they were saying so referring to him. Some other monks told the venerable Ānanda that the assembly was to meet the following day and that he was but a Learner with his (spiritual) task yet unaccomplished and that it was not proper for him to go to the assembly, and further, that he should strive with diligence.

Thereupon, the venerable Ānanda having reflected that the assembly was to meet the following day and that it did not become him to enter the assembly whilst yet being a Learner,
spent the greater part of the night in mindfulness as to the body, and at day-break, descended from the caṅkama-walk, entered the monastery, and inclined his body with the idea of lying down. Scarcely had his feet left contact with the floor and before his head had reached the pillow, during that interval his mind was released from the cankers with no further clinging to the material substratum. For, this Venerable One [12] had spent the time out of doors pacing up and down (in meditation) and, being unable to reach any higher attainment, he reflected, "Has not the Exalted One told me, "Ānanda, you have done merit in the past. Engage yourself in striving, you will soon be released from the cankers.' Buddhas never err in their pronouncements. I have over-exerted myself in my effort, in consequence of which my mind was tending towards distraction. Let me therefore abate the rigour of my exertions." Saying so he came down from the caṅkama-walk, washed his feet standing at the place for washing the feet, entered the monastery, sat down on his couch and stretched himself on it thinking of resting awhile. His two feet left the floor and his head had not yet reached the pillow. During this interval his mind was released from the cankers with no further clinging to the material substratum; the Elder attained arahatship remaining in a position outside the four postures. Therefore, when it is asked what monk attained arahatship in this Dispensation neither lying down, sitting, standing, nor pacing up and down one should answer that it is the Elder Ānanda.

12. Thereupon, on the following day, the Elder monks, having finished their meal, arranged their bowls and robes and assembled in the convocation hall. But the Elder Ānanda who was desirous of intimating his attainment of arahatship did not go with the monks. The monks seating themselves in their respective seats in order of seniority, sat down leaving a place for the Elder Ānanda. And when some asked for whom that seat was left they were told that it was for Ānanda. And in answer to the question, "Where has Ānanda gone?" (it should be said thus:—) At that time the Elder thought that it was then the time for him to go. [13] Then displaying his supernatural power he dived into the earth and showed himself
in his own seat. But some say that he came through the air and sat down.

13. When the Venerable One was thus seated the Elder Mahākassapa addressed the monks, "Friends, what shall we rehearse first, the Dhamma or the Vinaya?" The monks replied, "Sir, Mahākassapa, the Vinaya is the very life of the Dispensation of the Enlightened One: so long as the Vinaya endures, the Dispensation endures, therefore let us rehearse the Vinaya first." ¹

"Placing whom in charge?" ²
"The venerable Upāli."
"Is not Ānanda competent?"

"It is not that he is not competent, but the Perfectly Enlightened One, while he was living, considered the venerable Upāli as the most pre-eminent in connexion with the learning of the Vinaya, saying, 'He, O monks, is the most pre-eminent among my disciples who are monks, in the retention of the Vinaya, namely Upāli.' Therefore let us rehearse the Vinaya in consultation with the Elder Upāli." Thereupon the Elder (Mahākassapa) appointed himself for the purpose of questioning about the Vinaya, and the Elder Upāli agreed to give explanations.

So say the Sacred Texts: "Thereupon the venerable Mahākassapa announced to the assembly of monks, 'Friends, may the fellow members of the Order listen to me. If it is agreeable to the members of the Order, I shall question Upāli on the Vinaya.' The venerable Upāli too announced to the Order, 'May it please the venerable members of the Order to listen to me. If it is agreeable to the Order, I shall expound the Vinaya when questioned by the venerable Mahākassapa.'"

Having thus obtained approval for himself, the venerable Upāli rose from his seat, arranged his robe over one shoulder, saluted the older monks, and sat in the preacher's seat taking in his hand the fan inlaid with ivory.

14. Then the venerable Mahākassapa seated himself in the president's seat and questioned the venerable Upāli on the Vinaya, "Friend Upāli, where did the Exalted One lay down the first Pārājika?" ²
"At Vesālī, Sir."
"In connexion with whom?"
"In connexion with Sudinna, son of Kalandaka."
"In connexion with what subject?"
"In connexion with sexual intercourse."

Then the venerable Mahākassapa questioned the venerable Upāli on the subject of the first Pārājika, the occasion, the person, the rule, the corollaries, and on what constitutes an offence and what does not. In the same way as of the first, then of the second, the third, and of the fourth Pārājika he asked about the subject and so on and what did not constitute an offence. The Elder Upāli explained whatever he was asked.

Then having classified accordingly these four Pārājika entitled the chapter on the Pārājika, they established as thirteen the thirteen Saṅghādisesa. They established the two rules called the Aniyata, the thirty rules called the Nissaggiyapacittiya, the ninety-two rules called the Pācittiya, the four rules called the Pāṭidesanīya, the seventy-five rules called the Sekhiya, and the seven rules for the settlement of questions that have arisen.

Thus having classified accordingly the Mahāvibhaṅga, they established the eight rules in the Bhikkhuṇīvibhaṅga entitled the chapter on the Pārājika. They established as seventeen the seventeen (Saṅghādisesa) rules, the thirty rules as the Nissaggiyapacittiya, the 166 rules as the Pācittiya, the eight rules as the Pāṭidesanīya, the seventy-five rules as the Sekhiya, and the seven rules for the settlement of questions that have arisen.

Having thus classified the Bhikkhuṇīvibhaṅga even in the same manner they established the Khandhaka and the Parivāra.

Thus was made the compilation of the Vinaya Piṭaka which consists of the Vibhaṅga of both categories, the Khandhaka and the Parivāra. The Elder Mahākassapa questioned on everything and the Elder Upāli explained. At the conclusion of the explanation of the questions the 500 Arahants rehearsed together in a group according to the exact way in which the compilation had been fixed. On the conclusion of the compilation of the Vinaya the Elder Upāli placed aside the fan
inlaid with ivory, descended from the preacher's seat, saluted the older monks, and sat in the seat assigned to him.

15. Having rehearsed the Vinaya, the venerable Mahākassapa, wishing to rehearse the Dhamma, asked the monks, "Whom shall we place in charge in rehearsing the Dhamma?" The monks replied, "Let us make the Elder Ānanda to be in charge."

Thereupon the venerable Mahākassapa announced to the Order of monks, "Friends, may the members of the Order listen to me. If it is agreeable to the members of the Order, I shall question Ānanda on the Dhamma." The venerable Ānanda, too, announced to the Order of monks, "May it please the venerable members of the Order to listen to me. If it is agreeable to the members of the Order, I shall explain the Dhamma when questioned by the venerable Mahākassapa.”

Then the venerable Ānanda rose from his seat, arranged his robe over one shoulder, saluted the Elder monks (i.e. those who were his seniors), and sat in the preacher's seat taking in his hand the fan inlaid with ivory. The Elder Mahākassapa questioned the venerable Ānanda on the Dhamma, "Friend Ānanda, where was the Brahmajāla preached?"

[16] "Sir, at the King's palace at Ambalaṭṭhikā, between Rājagaha and Nālandā."  "In connexion with whom?"

"Suppiya the wandering ascetic and the brahmin youth Brahmadatta."

"On what subject?"  "On praise and blame."

And in such wise did the venerable Mahākassapa question the venerable Ānanda on the occasion and the person. (Again he asked),

"Friend Ānanda, where was the Sāmaññaphala preached?"  "Sir, at Jivaka's Mango Grove at Rājagaha."

"With whom?"  "With Ajātasattu, son of the Videhan princess."

Thereupon the venerable Mahākassapa questioned the venerable Ānanda on the occasion of the Sāmaññaphala, and the person. And in the self-same manner he questioned him on all five Nikāyas.
Inception of Discipline

The five Nikāyas are, Dighanikāya, Majjhimanikāya, Saṃyuttanikāya, Aṅguttaranikāya, and Khuddakanikāya. Here Khuddakanikāya means the rest of the sayings of the Buddha excluding the four Nikāyas. The venerable Elder Upāli explained the Vinaya therein and the Elder Ānanda the remaining sections of the Khuddakanikāya and the four Nikāyas.

16. All this forms the word of the Buddha which should be known as uniform in sentiment, twofold as the Dhamma and the Vinaya, threefold according to the first, intermediate, and last words, and similarly as Piṭakas (Baskets), fivefold according to the Nikāyas (Collections), ninefold according to the Aṅgas (Factors), and forming 84,000 divisions according to the Units of the Dhamma.

17. How is it uniform in sentiment? During the interval of forty-five years from the time He realized the unique and perfect Enlightenment until He passed away in the element of Nibbāna being free from clinging to the material substratum, whatever the Exalted One has said either as instruction to devas, men, nāgas, yakkhas, and other beings or on reflection, has but one sentiment and that is emancipation. Thus it is uniform as regards sentiment.

18. [17] How is it twofold as the Dhamma and the Vinaya? All this, in its entirety, is reckoned as the Dhamma and the Vinaya. Herein the Basket of the Discipline is the Vinaya, the rest of the word of the Buddha is the Dhamma. Hence was it stated: “Let us, friends, rehearse the Dhamma and the Vinaya,” and “I shall question Upāli on the Vinaya and Ānanda on the Dhamma.” Thus it is twofold as the Dhamma and the Vinaya.

19. How is it threefold according to the first, intermediate, and last words? All this, in its entirety, has the three divisions as the first words of the Buddha, the intermediate words and the last words. Herein, the stanzas:

“For many births have I run my course in saṃsāra
seeking with no success the builder of the house; painful is birth again and again.

"Thou art seen O builder of the house, thou shalt not build the house again. All thine beams are broken, the ridge-pole shattered. The mind that is divested of all things material has attained the destruction of all craving": form the first words of the Buddha. Some say that it was the Stanza of Joy in the Khandhaka beginning with, "When indeed, phenomena manifest themselves" (which formed the first words). It should be known that this is a Stanza of Joy which arose in Him as he contemplated on the causal modes with a happy frame of mind after the attainment of Omniscience on the first day of the lunar fortnight. The statement that He made on the eve of His passing away in perfect Nibbāna, "Now then monks, I address you, all component elements have decay inherent in them, apply yourselves diligently," forms the last words of the Buddha. What has been said during the interval between these two (statements) form the intermediate words of the Buddha. Thus it is threefold according to the first, intermediate, and last words.

20. [18] How is it threefold according to the Piṭakas? Indeed, all this, in its entirety, has the three divisions as the Vinaya-piṭaka, the Suttantapiṭaka, and the Abhidhammapiṭaka. Therein, having brought together all that has been both rehearsed and not 1 at the First Convocation, both Pātimokkha, the two Vibhaṅga, the twenty-two Khandhaka, and the sixteen Parivāra, it is called the Vinayapiṭaka.

The collection of the thirty-four suttas beginning with Brahmajāla called the Dīghanikāya, that of 152 suttas beginning with Mūlapariyāya called the Majhimnikāya, that of 7,762 suttas beginning with Oghataranasutta called the Saṃyuttanikāya, that of 9,557 suttas beginning with the Cittaparīyadanasutta called the Aṅguttaranikāya, and the Khuddakanikāya consisting of the fifteen works: Khuddaka-pāṭha, Dhammapada, Udāna, Itivuttaka, Suttanipāta, Vimānavatthu, Petavatthu, Thera- and Therīgāthā, Jātaka, Niddesa, Paṭisambhidā, Apādāna, Buddhavaṃsa, and Cariyāpiṭaka, are called the Suttantapiṭaka.
Dhammasaṅgāṇi, Vibhaṅga, Dhatukathā, Puggalapaññatti, Kathavatthu, Yamaka, and Paṭṭhāna constitute the Abhidhammapiṭṭaka.

21. Herein,

Because it contains manifold distinctive modes of practices and restrains both bodily and verbal acts, the Vinaya is called so by those who are adept in the purport of the Discipline.

Here the word "manifold" is used with reference to the divisions such as the injunctions of the fivefold Pātimokkha,¹ the seven classes of offences beginning with the Pārājika,² the Mātikā,³ and the Vibhaṅga. They have become distinctive on account of the application of corollaries ⁴ which serve the purpose of relaxing rigid rules. [19] It regulates body and speech as it prohibits physical and verbal transgressions. Therefore it is called Vinaya on account of the diversity of means, the distinctive practices, and the disciplining of the body and speech. Therefore this has been said for the sake of expediency in bringing out the connotation of the term:

Because it contains manifold distinctive modes of practices and restrains both bodily and verbal acts, the Vinaya is called so by those who are adept in the purport of the Discipline.

22. And the next:

Because it points out meanings, expresses them clearly, fulfils them, flows with meanings, affords perfect protection, and shares the properties of a thread, Sutta is given the name Sutta.

For it conveys meanings which are diversified as subjective, objective, and the like. Here the meanings are clearly expressed as they have been declared in accordance with the intentions of those who are amenable to discipline. Here it fulfils the meanings in the same manner as when it is said that corn yields a harvest. It flows with meaning in the same manner as when it is said that the cow yields abundant milk. It has been said that it protects and guards them well. It shares the properties
of a thread even as a plumb-line serves as a measure to the carpenters: even so is this to the wise, as when flowers strung together with a thread are neither scattered nor dispersed. Likewise, by means of this the meanings have been grasped. Therefore this has been said for the sake of expediency in bringing out the connotation of the term:

Because it points out meanings, expresses them clearly, fulfils them, flows with meanings, affords perfect protection, and shares the properties of a thread, Sutta is given the name Sutta.

23. [20] And the other:

Since here are found conditions which possess growth and their own characteristics, are revered and differentiated and said to be excellent—on account of these it is called Abhidhamma.

And this prefix abhi is seen to denote growth, possession of own characteristics, reverence, differentiation, and excellence. Therefore it has come to be used in the sense of growth in statements such as, "acute and painful sensations come upon me, they do not recede." In statements such as "all those memorable nights that had been set apart", it is used in the sense of own characteristics; in statements such as "king of kings, Inda among men", in the sense of reverence; in statements such as "capable of being disciplined in the fundamental tenets of the Dhamma and the essential rules of the Vinaya", in the sense of differentiation. It means (that they are able to master) the Dhamma and the Vinaya without confusing either with the other. In statements such as "in surpassing splendour", it is used in the sense of excellence. Herein, as stated in expressions such as "he develops the path for the arising of form", or "he lives suffusing one quarter with thoughts of love", phenomena which have reached a state of development have been referred to. On account of their being characterized by sense-data and so forth according to such attributes as "visual object and auditory object", they possess their own characteristics. According to such designations as "conditions pertaining to a Learner, to a
Man Perfected and those that are transcendental \(^{10}\), it is implied that they are revered and are worthy of reverence. On account of their true state being delimited in such manner as \[^{11}\] "there arises contact and there arise sensations" and so forth, they are differentiated. They are called phenomena of excellence in statements such as \[^{11}\] "states waxed great, states immeasurable, states incomparable", and so forth. Therefore this has been said for the sake of expediency in bringing out the connotation of the term:

Since here are found conditions which possess growth and their own characteristics, are revered and differentiated and said to be excellent—on account of these it is called Abhidhamma.

24. Whatever has been not specifically implied, it is expressed in,

Those versed in the meaning of the term Piṭaka, used it with reference to learning and a vessel. By combining (the two meanings) the three (divisions) commencing with the Vinaya should be known so.

[21] In signifying learning it is called a piṭaka in statements such as \(^{1}\) "not by including in a piṭaka" and so forth. In statements such as \(^{2}\) "Then a man might come along bringing with him a hoe and a basket" it signifies some kind of vessel. Therefore,

Those versed in the meaning of the term Piṭaka, used it with reference to learning and a vessel. By combining (the two meanings) the three (divisions) commencing with the Vinaya should be known so.

Hence having thus formed a compound with the noun piṭaka in both meanings, it is called the Vinayapiṭaka as the Piṭaka is the Vinaya on account of its being the learning and as it embraces the differentiated meanings. And so, in the very same manner as stated above, the Suttapiṭaka is the Sutta which is the Piṭaka and the Abhidhammapiṭaka is the Abhidhamma which is the Piṭaka. In this manner should these three, commencing with Vinaya, be known. Having understood them thus, again for the sake of expediency in bringing out in divers ways the significance of these Piṭakas:
One should explain their divisions of sayings incorporating admonitions and discourses that suit the occasions, as well as of moral training, avoidance, and the profundity.3

One should also elaborate on all topics such as the division of the learning and how and under what conditions a monk attains whatever (there may be of) success or failure.

25. Here follows the explanation and elucidation. These three Piṭakas, indeed, according to formal analyses are said to be the authoritative injunctions, the popular teachings, and the ultimate truth respectively; or they are the discourses necessitated by transgressions, those adapted to circumstances, and those set out in accordance with reality respectively; or again, discourses on the various categories of restraint,1 on the refutation of heresies, and on the distinction between Name and Form, respectively. Herein, the Vinayapiṭaka is called the exposition of injunctions as it has been preached with a preponderance of authority by the Exalted One in whom all authority is vested; the Suttapiṭaka, the exposition of popular teachings as it has been preached with great emphasis on popular ethics by the Exalted One who was proficient in popular ethics; and the Abhidhammapiṭaka, the exposition of ultimate truth as it has been preached with great leanings on absolute truth by the Exalted One who is adept in the absolute truths.

[22] Likewise, the first is called the teaching necessitated by transgressions wherein those beings who are given to many misdeeds are admonished in accordance with the nature of their offences; the second, that adapted to circumstances wherein beings who are given to divers dispositions, latent tendencies, and traits of character are admonished in accordance with their adaptability; and the third, that set out in accordance with reality wherein beings who conceive of an ego and what pertains to it, only in the presence of a pile of conditions, are instructed in terms of the absolute truth.

Similarly, the first is called discourse on the various categories of restraint as in it are discussed all aspects of restraint, which are diametrically opposed to remissness in conduct; the second, discourse on the refutation of heresies as in it is discussed the unravelling of perverse views, which is diametrically opposed
to the sixty-two heretical theories; and the third, discourse on the distinction between Name and Form as in it is discussed the differentiation of Name and Form which is diametrically opposed to lust and other evil tendencies.

26. It should be known that in these three are the threefold training, the threefold avoidance, and the fourfold profundity. Hence the training in the higher morality is specifically discussed in the Vinayapiṭaka, the training in higher thought in the Suttapiṭaka, and the training in higher wisdom in the Abhidhammapiṭaka. In the Vinayapiṭaka is taught the avoidance of transgression, as transgression in defilements is diametrically opposed to morality; in the Suttapiṭaka the avoidance of prepossession, as prepossession is diametrically opposed to concentration; in the Abhidhammapiṭaka, the avoidance of latent bias, as latent bias is diametrically opposed to wisdom. In the first is the categorical avoidance of defilements and in the others the avoidance consisting of elimination and eradication. In the first is the avoidance of the defilement of misconduct: in the others that of the defilements of craving and misbelief. And in each of them the fourfold profundity of the Dhamma, of the meaning, of the exposition, and of the comprehension, should be known. Herein the Dhamma is the Sacred Texts, the meaning is its precise meaning, the exposition is the verbal preaching of the Sacred Texts which have been established in the mind, and the comprehension is the correct understanding of the Sacred Texts and the meaning of the Sacred Texts. And in these three (Piṭakas) the Dhamma, the meaning, the exposition, and the comprehension are difficult of access to men of little wit and providing no basis of support even as the great ocean is to hares and such animals; and hence they are profound. In this manner, herein, should the fourfold profundity too of each one of them be understood.

27. Another explanation: Dhamma signifies cause; for it is said, "The knowledge of the cause is the analytical knowledge of the Dhamma." Attha signifies the result of the cause; for it is said, "The knowledge of the result of the cause is
the analytical knowledge of the meaning." Desanā signifies exposition. It also implies the verbal expression of the Dhamma according to its true nature. Paṭivedha signifies realization in a worldly and in a transcendent sense: an exposition in its proper sphere, without confusion, in conformity with the essential significance of the phenomena and with the nature of the meanings and the comprehension of the expositions in accordance with their general trend.

Now, on account of whatever is characterized as Dhamma or Attha in these Piṭakas, of the exposition which elucidates the meaning in accordance with that meaning which has to be announced to the listeners and precedes knowledge, of all that which consists of penetrative knowledge herein and is considered as unequivocal realization, and of its being difficult of access providing no basis of support to men of feeble intellect who have not accumulated any meritorious deeds, even as the great ocean is to hares and such animals, the fourfold profundity herein should be known in this manner.

[24] To this extent are the reasons for stating the following stanza:

One should explain their divisions of sayings incorporating admonitions and discourses that suit the occasions, as well as of moral training, avoidance, and the profundity.

28. But in,

One should also elaborate on all topics such as the division of the learning and how and under what conditions a monk attains whatever (there may be of) success or failure, the threefold division of the learning in these three Piṭakas should be observed. The modes of learning are three (in number): that which may be compared to the water-snake, that which aims at release, and the mode of learning of a treasurer. Here, what has been wrongly grasped, and learned by heart for the reproach of others is comparable to the simile of the water-snake: regarding which it is said,1 "Even as, O monks, a man who is in need of a water-snake, who seeks for one and goes about searching for one, were to see a large water-snake, he would seize it by the coils or tail, and that water-snake
were to turn round and bite him in the hand or arm or any other part of his body, he would, in consequence of that undergo death or pain amounting to death. What is the reason for it? O monks, it was due to the improper handling of the water-snake. Even in the same way, O monks, some foolish men in this world commit to memory the Dhamma consisting of sutta, geyya, veyyākarana, gāthā, udāna, itivuttaka, jātaka, abbhutadhamma, and vedalla.\(^2\) Having committed to memory the Dhamma, they do not examine with intelligence the significance of those teachings. As they do not examine intelligently their significance those teachings do not arouse comprehension. They commit the teachings to memory for the sake of censuring others and freeing themselves of others' blame. They do not experience that purpose for the sake of which (the virtuous) master the Dhamma. Those teachings which have been wrongly grasped by them are conducive to their disadvantage and misery for a long time. What is the reason for it? O monks, it is due to the wrong comprehension of the teachings.”

\[25\] Whatever has been well grasped, and perfected, desiring the fulfilment of the aggregate of moral precepts themselves, not with the purpose of censuring others—it brings about release. Regarding this it is said,\(^3\) “Those teachings being well grasped by them are conducive to their advantage and happiness for a long time. What is the reason for it? O monks, it is due to their correct comprehension of the teachings.”

Again, whatever a canker-waned sage who has understood the aggregates, rid himself of the defilements, developed the path, pierced through the state of mutability, and realized cessation, accomplishes solely for the purpose of guarding the line of continuity and protecting the linage, this is the mode of learning of a treasurer.

29. But the monk who is faring along well in the Vinaya, on account of his attainment of virtue arrives at the threefold knowledge, which is stated therein in accordance with their analytical treatment. He who is faring along well in the Sutta, on account of his attainment of concentration arrives at the sixfold higher knowledge, which is stated therein in accordance
with their analytical treatment. He who is faring along well in the Abhidhamma, on account of his attainment of wisdom arrives at the fourfold analytic insight, which is stated therein in accordance with their analytical treatment. Thus, he who is faring along well in them, in due course arrives at the attainments consisting of this threefold knowledge, sixfold higher knowledge, and fourfold analytic insight.

On the other hand, he who is faring ill along in the Vinaya is not aware of the blameworthiness of the physical contact and the like which arise in association with those forbidden objects which are excluded from the prescribed categories of pleasant contact with (specified types of) carpets, garments for outer wear and the like. For it is said, "I understand the Dhamma declared by the Exalted One that certain practices have been said to be harmful by the Exalted One, and the person who indulges in them (considers them) as incapable of bringing harm upon him." Consequently he arrives at evil conduct. [26] He who is faring ill along in the Sutta accepts the wrong thing, not knowing the correct significance, as it is stated in such passages as, "These four individuals, O monks, are seen existing," and so on. Regarding this it has been said, "On account of his wrong grasp, he accuses me, harms himself, and enters on much evil." Consequently he arrives at wrong views. He who is faring ill along in the Abhidhamma over-rides the thoughts on the nature of things and thinks even of what should not be reflected on. Consequently he arrives at confusion of mind. For it has been said: "These four topics should not be reflected on, O monks, they should not be thought of, for he who thinks of them would be subjected to madness and vexation." Thus, he who is faring ill along with reference to those, in due course, sustains great loss consisting of evil conduct, wrong views, and confusion of mind. To this extent are the reasons for also stating the following stanza:

One should also elaborate on all topics such as the division of the learning and how and under what conditions a monk attains whatever (there may be of) success or failure. In this manner should the Piṭakas be known in their divers aspects: and in accordance with them the word of the Buddha should be understood as being threefold.
30. How is it fivefold according to the division into Nikāyas? All this falls into the fivefold division: Dīghanikāya, Majjhimanikāya, Saṃyuttanikāya, Aṅguttaranikāya, and Khuddakanikāya.

Therein, what is the Dīghanikāya?

The thirty-four suttas commencing with Brahmajāla arranged in three vaggas (groups).

The thirty-four long suttas whose arrangement is in three vaggas is called the Dīghanikāya, the first in serial order.

And why is it called the Dīghanikāya?

On account of the fact that it is a collection and a resting place for suttas long in measure (it is so termed), and it is called a nikāya as all of them are placed together as a collection.

[27] In statements such as,¹ "O monks, I do not see any other group that is so variegated as creatures of the animal kingdom, as the kingdom of those that go prone and of those that live in the mud," are found examples both from the doctrinal aspect and popular usage. Thus should the connotation of the term nikāya be understood even with reference to the others.

What is the Majjhimanikāya?

The 152 suttas of medium length commencing with the Mūlapariyāyā Sutta and arranged in fifteen vaggas.

That which contains 150 suttantas and two other suttas, comprising fifteen vaggas is called the Majjhimanikāya.

What is the Saṃyuttanikāya?

The 7,762 suttas commencing with the Oghatarana Sutta and classified under such topics as the Devatā Saṃyutta.

Seven thousand suttas and 700 of them as well as sixty-two suttantas—this is the Saṃyutta collection.

What is the Aṅguttaranikāya?

The 9,557 suttas commencing with the Cittapariyādana, the "Summary Grasping of the Mind", which occur as one factor in excess of each preceding one.

Nine thousand suttas and 500 suttas and fifty-seven other suttas form the number in the Aṅguttara.

What is the Khuddakanikāya?

The rest of the word of the Buddha including the entire Vinaya Piṭaka, the Abhidhamma Piṭaka, and the fifteen
divisions commencing with the Khuddakapāṭha enumerated earlier, leaving aside the four nikāyas.

[28] The rest of the word of the Buddha, excluding these four nikāyas such as the Dīgha, is considered the Khuddakanikāya.

Thus it is fivefold according to (the division into) Nikāyas.

31. How is it ninefold according to (the classification into) Āṅgas?

All this is comprised under the ninefold division: sutta, geyya, veyyākarāṇa, gāthā, udāna, itivuttaka, jātaka, abhutadhamma, and vedalla.

Herein, the twofold Vibhaṅga, the Niddesas, the Khandhaka, the Parivāra, Maṅgala, Ratana, Nālaka, and Tuvaṭaka Suttas of the Sutta Nipāta and other sayings of the Tathāgata bearing the name sutta should be known as Sutta (Discourses).

All the suttras containing stanzas should be known as Geyya (Recitation), particularly the entire Sagathavagga (Chapter with Stanzas) in the Saṁyutta.

The whole of the Abhidhamma Piṭaka, suttras which contain no stanzas and any other (sayings from the) word of the Buddha not included in the other eight Āṅgas should be known as Veyyākarāṇa (Expositions).

The Dhammapada, Theragāthā, Therīgāthā, and sections entirely in verse in the Sutta Nipāta which are not designated as suttras should be known as Gāthā (Stanzas).

The eighty-two suttaṇitas containing stanzas which were prompted by an awareness of joy should be known as Udāna (Utterances of Joy).

The 112 suttaṇitas which have been handed down prefixed with the statement, “For this has been said by the Exalted One,” should be known as Itivuttaka (Thus Said).

The 550 Birth Stories commencing with Apanṇaṇaka should be known as Jātaka (Birth Stories).

All the suttaṇitas connected with wonderful and marvellous phenomena handed down with words to such effect as, “O monks, these four wonderful and marvellous qualities are seen in Ānanda,” should be known as Abhutadhamma (Marvellous Phenomena).
[29] All the suttantas requested to be preached as a result of repeated attainment of wisdom and delight, such as Culla-vedalla, Mahāvedalla, Sammādiṭṭhi, Sakkapaṇha, Saṅkhārabhājaniya, and Mahāpuṇṇama Suttas and others should be known as Vedalla (Analyses). Thus it is ninefold according to (the classification) into Aṅgas.

32. How is it eighty-four thousandfold according to the Dhammakkhandhas (Units of the Dhamma)?

All this, the entire word of the Buddha has 84,000 divisions according to the Units of the Dhamma as laid down in the following manner:

I have taken 82,000 from the Buddha, and 2,000 from the monks: and these are the 84,000 extant Units of the Dhamma.

Herein, a sutta with a unitary application is one Unit of the Dhamma. Whatever is of multiple application, the number of Units of the Dhamma in it depends on the number of topics of application. In metrical compositions the question and the answer form two different Units of the Dhamma. In the Abhidhamma, each analysis of a triad or a dyad or the analysis of each thought-process forms a separate Unit of the Dhamma. In the Vinaya, there are the subjects for rules, tabulations, analysis of terms, secondary conditions of guilt, and of innocence and the demarcation of the threefold delimiting factors of offences. Herein, each category should be understood as a separate Unit of the Dhamma. Thus it has 84,000 divisions according to the Units of the Dhamma.

33. Thus, this word of the Buddha which is uniform in sentiment taken as a whole (without division), and consists of such divisions as the Dhamma and the Vinaya in the divisions such as those into two and so forth, has been laid down as, "This is the Dhamma and this is the Vinaya, these are the first, intermediate, and final sayings of the Buddha, these are the Vinaya, Sutta, and Abhidhamma Piṭakas, these are the Nikāyas from Dīgha to Khuddaka, these are the nine Aṅgas commencing with Sutta and these are the eighty-four thousand Units of the Dhamma," was rehearsed together by the assembly.
of self-controlled monks with Mahākassapa as their leader verily observing this distinction.

And not only this, but other divers distinctions in compilation to be met with in the three Piṭakas, such as the stanzas containing lists of contents, the arrangement into chapters, noting down of repetitions, and the classification into kindred sections of ones, twos, and so forth, that into groups of kindred topics, and into groups of fifties and so forth, have been determined when it was thus rehearsed together in seven months.

And at the conclusion of its rehearsal this great earth trembled and quaked, shook and shook violently many times over, up to its ocean-limits as though giving its blessing at the joy produced that this Dispensation of the Lord of Ten Powers had been made by the Elder Mahākassapa to last a period of time extending 5,000 years. And many wondrous things became manifest. And this is the First Great Convocation which is commonly known in the world as:

Held by 500, and hence called "Pertaining to the Five Hundred"; and as it was held by the Elders it is also termed as that of the Elders.

Here ends the First Great Convocation.

III—The Account of the Second Great Convocation

34. While the First Great Convocation was in progress, the venerable Mahākassapa, who was asking questions on the Vinaya, at the end of such statements of his as, "Where O friend, Upāli, was the first Pārājika laid down?" asked about the subject, the occasion, and the person. And the venerable Upāli who wished to convey everything by explaining the occasion from the very beginning when he was thus asked about the occasion here, by whom it was proclaimed, and wherefore it was proclaimed, spoke thus: [31] "At that time the Buddha, the Exalted One, was living at Veneraṇā." And in this manner everything should be stated. So it has been said by the venerable Elder Upāli. It should be known too that it was said at the time of the First Great Convocation. And with
this statement the meaning of these words, "By whom was this statement made, and when was it said?" has been expressed.

And now, here is told (the significance of), "Wherefore it has been said?" Since the Venerable One was asked the occasion by the Elder Mahākassapa, it should be known that it has been so declared by the venerable Elder Upāli, in order to explain this occasion from the beginning, at the time of the First Great Convocation when he said this for this reason. And so with this statement the meaning of these terms of tabulation, "By whom said, when and for what reason" has been explained.

35. Now, this is said to express the significance of the words: "By whom this was retained in mind, handed down by whom, established in whom, and having next delcared the procedure." And it states by whom the Vinaya Piṭaka—adorned as it is with the "Occasion" expressed in words to the effect,¹ "At that time the Buddha, the Exalted One was living at Venuṇjā"—has been retained in mind, by whom handed down, and in whom established. Firstly, from the beginning, it has been retained in mind by the venerable Elder Upāli having learned it under the Exalted One, and directly from him, even before the passing away of the Tathāgata in perfect Nibbāna, by many thousands of monks such as those possessing the six-fold higher knowledge, and after the passing away of the Tathāgata in perfect Nibbāna, by the Elders who made the compilation of the Dhamma under the leadership of Mahākassapa.

The meaning of "By whom was it handed down?" is that it was firstly handed down in Jambudīpa till the Third Convocation by a succession of teachers commencing with the Elder Upāli. [32] And this is the succession of teachers ²:

Upāli, Dāsaka, as well as Soṇaka, similarly Siggava and Tissa Moggaliputta—these five victorious ones,

Transmitted the Vinaya in the glorious (is)land of Jambu-siri in unbroken succession up to the time of the third rehearsal.

36. For, the venerable Upāli learned this Vinaya tradition,
this lineage of the Vinaya, this legacy of the Vinaya directly under the Exalted One and established it in the heart of many monks. Among those individuals who learned the Vinaya under the Venerable One and attained perfection of knowledge in the Vinaya, the number of worldlings, Stream-Entrants, Once-Returners, and Non-Returners has transcended all reckoning; and there were exactly 1,000 canker-waned Arahants. And the Elder Dāsaka was his own Saddhivihārika. He received it from the Elder Upāli and in the same way gave instruction in the Vinaya. The number of worldlings and others who studied the Vinaya under this Venerable One too and attained perfection of knowledge in the Vinaya has transcended all reckoning; of canker-waned Arahants alone there were 1,000. Next, the Elder Sonaka was the Saddhivihārika of the Elder Dāsaka. He too learned it from his preceptor the Elder Dāsaka and in the same way gave instruction in the Vinaya. The number of worldlings and others who studied it under that Venerable One too and attained perfection of knowledge in the Vinaya has transcended all reckoning; of canker-waned Arahants alone there were 1,000.

37. And the Elder Siggava was the Saddhivihārika of the Elder Sonaka. He too studied the Vinaya under his preceptor the Elder Sonaka and took the rôle of the Chief in office among a thousand Arahants. Again, the worldlings, Stream-Entrants, Once-Returners, Non-Returners, as well as canker-waned Arahants who studied under that Venerable One and attained perfection of knowledge in the Vinaya were not (to be) limited as so many hundred or so many thousand. It is said that there was a very large number of monks in Jambudīpa at that time. And the influence of the Elder Moggaliputta Tissa will be clearly seen from the Third Convocation. It should be known that in this manner the Vinaya Piṭaka was first handed down in Jambudīpa until the Third Convocation by this succession of teachers.

38. In order to know well the Second Convocation this procedure should be understood. For when,

Those 500 Elders, including Kassapa and others who were
effulgent and canker-waned and devoid of attachment, rehearsed the Good Teaching, making it shine everywhere, remained till the end of their life-time and passed away in Nibbāna like lamps with oil consumed; as days and nights were passing by, one by one, in due course, when it was a hundred years since the passing away of the Exalted One in perfect Nibbāna, the Vajjiputtaka monks of Vesālī proclaimed at Vesālī these ten indulgences: It is permissible to use salt in a horn, to eat when the sun has turned two digits after noon, to go into the village for alms a second time, to hold separate uposatha meetings within the same sīmā, to pass a formal act of the Order awaiting the sanction of the others, to follow precedent in practices, to drink whey after meals, to drink unfermented liquor, to use rugs not of the prescribed length if they have no fringe, and to accept gold and silver. King Kālāsoka, son of Susunāga was on their side.

At that time the venerable Yasa, son of Kākanḍaka who was on his sojourns in the land of the Vajjīs came to hear that the Vajjiputtaka monks of Vesālī had put forward ten indulgences, and soon arrived at Vesālī thinking to himself, “It does not become me to remain indifferent hearing the danger that is to befall the Dispensation of the Lord of Ten Powers: let me check the propounders of this heresy [34] and make the Dhamma shine.” Thereupon the venerable Yasa, son of Kākanḍaka took up his residence in the Gabled Hall in the Great Wood near Vesālī.

And at that time the Vajjiputtaka monks of Vesālī, on the day of the uposatha, filled a bronze vessel with water, placed it in the midst of the Order of monks, and began to say to the lay devotees of Vesālī who came there, “Friends, give a kahāpana to the Order, even half a kahāpana, even a quarter or even a māsaka: it will be of use to the Order to procure requisites.” All that, as far as the statement that at this rehearsal of the Vinaya there were exactly 700 monks, neither less nor more, and that therefore this Second Convocation was called that of the Seven Hundred, should be mentioned. In this manner, at that assembly 1,200,000 monks gathered together urged by the venerable Yasa. In their midst, those
Second Great Convocation

Ten indulgences were decided on by the Elder Sabbakāmī who, being questioned by the venerable Revata, explained the Vinaya, and the dispute was thus settled.\textsuperscript{10}

Next,\textsuperscript{11} the Elders who wished to rehearse the Dhamma and the Vinaya afresh, selected 700 monks versed in the Three Piṭakas and possessing analytic insight; and making them sit in conclave at Vālukārāma in Vesāli, cleansed the Dispensation of every impurity and they again rehearsed the entire Dhamma and the Vinaya separately as piṭakas, nikāyas, aṅgas, and Units of the Dhamma even in the same manner as it was rehearsed by the Elder Mahākassapa. This convocation was concluded in eight months.

What is commonly held in the world as,

That of the Seven Hundred as it was done by 700, and also called the Second by reason of the one that was held earlier; is verily this: \textsuperscript{12}

Well known among those Elders by whom this rehearsal was done were those Saddhiviharikas of the Elder Ānanda, Sabbakāmī, Sālha, Revata, Khujjasobhita, \textsuperscript{[35]} Yasa, and Sāṇasambhūta, Elders who had themselves seen the Tathāgata.

These two, Sumana and Vāsabhagāmī, should be known as the Saddhiviharikas of Anuruddha, who had themselves seen the Tathāgata.

Further, those Elders by whom the Second Recital was rehearsed, all of them had laid aside their burden, done their duty and were cankerless.

This is the Second Convocation.

39. Having thus finished rehearsing this Second Recital, those Elders who were investigating whether a calamity of this nature would, in the future, befall the Dispensation foresaw thus: \begin{quote}"In the hundred and eighteenth year from now, the King named Dhammāsoka will appear in Pātaliputta and reign over the whole of Jambudīpa. He will win faith in the Dispensation of the Buddha and bestow upon it great material gains and honour. Consequently, heretics coveting gain and honour will enter the Order in the Dispensation and propound each his
own philosophical dogma. In this manner a great calamity will befall the Dispensation.”

Thereupon it so occurred to them, “When this calamity has arisen will we be able to meet the situation or not?” And all of them, realizing that they themselves would not live to see it, surveyed the whole of the human world and the six heavenly regions of the sensuous plane,¹ and not being able to perceive any one who would be able to settle this dispute, beheld in the world of Brahma, the Great Brahma named Tissa whose span of life there was drawing to a close and who had developed the path for birth in a higher Brahma-world.

Perceiving this it so occurred to them: “If we should make an effort to induce him to be born in the world of men, for certain, [36] he would take birth ² in the family of the Brahmin Moggali. Next, with his curiosity aroused for the mantas ³ he will go forth from home and enter the Order. Having thus entered the Order he will learn the entire word of the Buddha, attain analytic insight, subdue the heretics, give his judgment on the dispute and stabilize the Dispensation.”

They went to the world of Brahma and spoke thus to the Great Brahma Tissa, “One hundred and eighteen years from now, a great calamity will befall the Dispensation. While surveying the whole world of men and the six heavenly regions of the sensuous plane we did not see any one able to stabilize the Dispensation, but in our search in the world of Brahma we saw your worthy self. It would be well, O good Sir, if you will give us the assurance that you will be born in the world of men and stabilize the Dispensation of the Lord of Ten Powers.”

When this was said, the Great Brahma who was overjoyed and fired with enthusiasm at the thought that indeed he would have the ability to stabilize the Dispensation by purifying it of the calamity that would arise in it, gave them the assurance saying, “So be it.” The Elders having accomplished their task in the world of Brahma came back again.

40. And at that time there were two young monks called the Elder Siggava and the Elder Caṇḍavajjī, who were newly ordained, were versed in the Three Piṭakas, and gained analytic insight and were canker-waned. They did not take part in the
settlement of that dispute. The Elders said to them, "Friends, you did not give us your assistance in the settlement of this dispute. And let this be your punishment for it: The Brahma named Tissa will take birth in the family of the brahmin Moggali. Let one of you take him away and admit him into the Order, let the other teach him the word of the Buddha"; and all of them remained till the end of their span of life and

Those Elders of great psychic power, headed by Sabba-kāmi, blazed forth in the world like columns of fire and became extinct.¹

[37] And verily, those canker-waned Elders who had reached full mastery (over themselves) and developed analytic insight, made the second rehearsal, purified the Dispensation, and paved the way for the purity of the Good Teaching even for the future and finally were overpowered by the way of impermanence.

Thus knowing the contemptible nature and unassailability of the way of impermanence let the wise man endeavour to reach that immortal state which is everlasting.

With this is concluded the description of the Second Convocation in all its aspects.

IV—THE ACCOUNT OF THE THIRD GREAT CONVOCATION

41. Now Tissa the Great Brahma passed away from the world of Brahma and took birth in the house of the brahmin Moggali. From the day he took birth, the Elder Siggava too continued for seven years to visit the brahmin's house for alms. Not on a single day did he receive even a ladleful of gruel or a spoonful of rice. Then one day, at the end of seven years he received the mere word, "Your pardon Sir, go on." On the same day, the brahmin too who was returning home having attended to some business outside saw the Elder going the opposite way and asked him, "O good recluse, did you visit our home?"

"Yes, brahmin, we went thither."
"Did you receive anything there?"
"Yes, brahmin, we did receive."
He went home and inquired, "Did you give anything to that recluse?"

"We gave nothing whatever."

On the following day, the brahmin seated himself right on the doorway thinking to himself, "Today I will put the recluse to shame for lying." And on this second day, the Elder came to the door of the brahmin's house. On seeing the Elder the brahmin said to him, "Without receiving anything from our house yesterday, you said that you did receive. Is it becoming of you to utter falsehood?" The Elder replied, "Brahmin, for seven years we have not been honoured at your house even with the mere words, 'Your pardon Sir, go on,' but yesterday I received this mere word. Hence I spoke in that manner taking into account this act of courtesy."

The Brahmin reflected, "These (recluses) having received but a courteous greeting express their thanks to us for having received it. [38] In what manner will they not praise us if they receive anything else in the form of hard and soft food?" and was pleased, and had a spoonful of food, together with curries suitable for it, given to him from the food prepared for his use, and said that he would be receiving that quantity of alms every day. He was highly impressed by the composure of the Elder who continued to visit him from the following day onwards, and begged of the Elder to partake of his meals in his house for all time. The Elder accepted the invitation, and every day, at the end of his meal on his visit there, preached the word of the Buddha a little at a time before he departed.

42. As for the young brahmin, even at the age of sixteen, he had gained proficiency in the three Vedas. There is no one else who may sit on or lie down on the seat or couch used by a pure being who has come down from the world of Brahma. When he visits his teacher's house they cover his bed and seat with a white cloth and keep them apart hanging them up.

The Elder thought, "The time is now come to admit the youth into the Order. Though I have been coming here for a long time no conversation has ever taken place with the youth. It would be expedient now if it were to take place by this means, on account of his divan," and went to the house and
made a determination of will that no other seat should be visible in that house except this divan of the youth. The inmates of the brahmin's house who were not able to see any other seat when they saw the Elder, spread out the divan of the young man and offered it to him. The Elder sat on the divan. The youth too, who had returned from the house of his teacher that very instant, saw the Elder seated on his divan, and being angry and displeased asked, "Who prepared my divan for the recluse?"

The Elder finished his meal and when the youth's churlishness had subsided, asked him "How now, young man, [39] do you know any manta?" The youth replied, "Well, recluse, if I do not know the mantas who else knows them?" and asked the Elder, "Do you yourself know the manta?"

"Ask me, young man, you will find out."

Thereupon the youth questioned the Elder on all those knotty points of the three Vedas with their glossaries, ritual, phonology, etymology, and traditional lore as the fifth, whose meanings neither he nor his teacher could comprehend. As he had mastered the three Vedas even by nature and had now gained analytic insight, the Elder found no difficulty in solving those problems. First of all, he unravelled those problems and next told the youth, "Young man, I have been asked many questions by you, now I too will ask you one question. Will you answer it for me?"

"Yes, good recluse, ask, I will answer."

The Elder asked the following question from the Cittaya-maka: "He whose thought arises but does not cease, will his thought cease and not arise; or he whose thought will cease and not arise, does his thought arise and not cease?"

The young man who was not able to call to mind the beginning or the end asked him, "What indeed, O good recluse, is this?"

"Young man, this is called the Buddha-manta."

"Is it possible, Sir, to initiate me too into it?"

"Yes, young man, it is possible to give it to him who obtains the ordination which we have ourselves taken upon."

[40] Thereupon the youth went up to his parents and told them, "This recluse here knows what is called the Buddha-manta, but he does not give it to any one who has not entered
the Order under him. I wish to enter the Order under him and learn the manta.” And his parents gave him their permission, thinking, “Let our son even enter the Order and learn the mantas; after he has learned them he will come back to us”; and said to him, “Son, you may receive it.”

43. The Elder admitted him into the Order and, first of all, acquainted him with the topics of meditation on the thirty-two parts of the body.\(^1\) Doing his preliminary exercises with regard to them, before long, he established himself in the fruit of the Stream-Entrant stage. The Elder next thought, “The novice has attained the fruit of the Stream-Entrant stage, it is now impossible for him to turn back from the Dispensation. If I should assign to him more elaborate topics of meditation, he would attain arahatship and would evince no keenness to learn the word of the Buddha. Now is the time to send him to the Elder Caṇḍavajji.”

Subsequently he said to him, “Come novice, go to the Elder and learn the word of the Buddha. Inquire after his health on my behalf and say to him, ‘Sir, my preceptor sent me to you.’ When you are asked the name of your preceptor say, ‘Sir, he is the Elder Siggava.’ When he asks you what his name is say, ‘Sir, my preceptor knows your name.’”\(^2\)

Saying, “Very well, Sir,” the novice Tissa took leave of the Elder by reverentially circumambulating him, and in due course, went before the Elder Caṇḍavajji and saluting him stood respectfully aside. The Elder asked, “Novice, from where do you come?” He replied, “My preceptor, Sir, sent me to you.”

“What is the name of your preceptor?”
“Sir, he is the Elder Siggava.”
“And what is my name?”
“Sir, my preceptor knows your name.”
“Then put away your bowl and robe.”

Saying, “So be it, Sir,” the novice \([41]\) put away the bowl and robe; and on the following day swept the cell and provided water and a tooth cleaner.

The Elder swept over again the place that had been swept, brought fresh water throwing away that water, and took
another tooth-stick removing that tooth-stick. He did this for seven days and on the seventh day questioned him again. Once again the novice spoke in the manner he had spoken in before. The Elder realized for certain that he was the brahmin and asked him, "What is your purpose in coming here?"

"Sir, to learn the word of the Buddha."

Saying, "Novice, then you may learn it," the Elder initiated him into the word of the Buddha from the following day onwards. Whilst yet being a novice, Tissa mastered together with the commentary, the entire word of the Buddha with the exception of the Vinaya Piṭaka. When he had received the higher ordination, even before he had spent the first Rains-residence, he had become proficient in the Three Piṭakas.

The teacher and the preceptor having established the entire word of the Buddha in the hands of the Elder Moggaliputta Tissa, remained till the end of their span of life and passed away in perfect Nibbāna. And at a subsequent date the Elder Moggaliputta Tissa developed the topics of meditation, and having gained arahatship imparted the Dhamma and Vinaya to many.

44. And at this time King Bindusāra had one hundred sons. Asoka killed all of them except Prince Tissa who was born of the same mother.¹ Whilst carrying on his campaigns against them he reigned for four years without being anointed king; and at the end of the four years he was consecrated as the sole ruler of Jambudīpa in the 218th year after the passing away of the Tathāgata in perfect Nibbāna.² [42] By virtue of his consecration the following supernatural royal powers accrued to him: His sway extended over a region of a yojana below the great earth and a similar region above in the sky. Daily, the deities brought to him sixteen pots of water in eight pingoes³ from the lake Anotatta,⁴ of which, after he had won faith in the Dispensation, he gave eight pots to the Order of monks, two pots to the monks versed in the Three Piṭakas numbering about 60,000, two pots to his chief queen Asandhimittā, and he himself used four pots. There is in the Himalayas a variety of tooth-stick called nāgalatā,⁵ smooth and soft and full of sap. Daily, the deities brought these as well, and they
served as the daily tooth-cleaners to the King, the Queen, 16,000 (women) dancers and 60,000 monks.

And daily, the deities brought for him medicinal myrobalan fruits, golden coloured medicinal gall-nuts, and sweet smelling and juicy ripe mangoes. In the same way, they brought from the Chaddanta lake 6 inner and outer garments of the five colours, yellow silken cloth for wiping the hand, and celestial drink. And daily the Nāga Kings brought for him from the Nāga realm perfumed ointments, silken cloth for his outer garments interwoven with jasmine flowers without using thread, and costly unguents. [43] Parrots brought daily, 9,000 vāhas 7 of sāli rice grown in the Chaddanta lake; and rats removed the husk so that not one grain was broken; and on all occasions this grain was meant for the King's use. Bees made honey. In forges and other places (of work) bears swung the hammers. The cuckoos came forth warbling in sweet tones and paid homage to the King.

45. The King who was endowed with these supernatural powers, one day sent a golden chain to bind the Nāga king called Kāla 1 whose span of life is an aeon and who had had the opportunity of seeing four Buddhas in person; and he had him brought before him, and seating him on a worthy divan beneath the white parasol of state made offering of flowers of many hundred colours sprung both on land and water, as well as with flowers of gold. Making 16,000 (women) dancers decked in all their finery to stand around him on all sides he requested him, "Firstly, set before these eyes of mine the form of the Perfectly Enlightened One, the Exalted Universal Monarch of the Good Teaching." And beholding the form of the Buddha created by him, decked with all the eighty minor marks scattered all over his body, arisen through the power of his merit and resembling an expanse of water adorned with red, blue, and white lotuses in full bloom on account of the splendour of the thirty-two characteristics of a Great Being, 2 or like the expanse of the heavens resplendent with the suffusion of the clear radiance from the clusters of rays from myriads of stars, or which resembled the peak of a golden mountain surrounded by flashes of lightning and rain-bows with the sheen of the
twilight glow on them on account of the splendour of the fathom-deep halo of the interwoven rays of the diversified colours consisting of blue, yellow, red, and others around him, [44] radiant with the graceful head dazzling with the splendour of the bright pinnacle of rays consisting of many colours, and like an unguent to the eyes of the hosts of brahas, devas, human beings, nāgas, and yakkhas; and for seven days, he made what is known as the offering of his gaze.3

46. After he received his consecration, for three years, the King, it is said, supported an outside heretical sect, and in his fourth year gained faith in the Dispensation of the Buddha.1 As for his father Bindusāra, he was an adherent of Brahmanism. He established the constant feeding of brahmins, heretical teachers born of the brahmin caste, and white-robed wandering ascetics, numbering about 60,000.

Asoka, who likewise continued at his palace, the gift of alms that was performed by his father, one day, as he stood at his lion-window,2 saw them eating and conducting themselves in a manner bereft of all composure, with unrestrained faculties and with undisciplined bodily movements, and he thought, “It is worth investigating and making this gift to a suitable recipient.” Having thus reflected, he said to his ministers, “Go, fellows, and bring hither to my palace recluses and brahmins whom each one of you considers worthy, for we wish to give alms.” Replying to the King, “So be it, Sire,” the ministers brought various classes of white-robed wandering ascetics, religious mendicants, naked ascetics, and others and announced, “These, Sire, we deem holy.”

The King, thereupon, had various types of high and low seats prepared at his palace, and inviting them to come, said to all of them who came, “Sit down on any seat suitable for each one of you.” [45] Some of them sat down on comfortable seats, others on seats of plank. Seeing this the King realized that there was no inner substance in them, and he gave them hard and soft food agreeable to them and sent them away.

47. As time thus went by, one day, standing at his lion-window he saw the novice Nigrodha ¹ walking by the royal courtyard,
restrained, self-controlled, with senses guarded and endowed with deportment in his movements. And who is this Nigrodha? He is the son of Prince Sumana, the eldest son of King Bindusāra. And here follows the story from the beginning: It is said that during King Bindusāra's dotage Prince Asoka gave up the principality of Ujjeni which was assigned to him and came and took the whole city under his control and captured Prince Sumana. On the very same day, Princess Sumanā, Prince Sumana's wife, had completed the full period of pregnancy. She went away in disguise; and while she was on her way through a Caṇḍāla village she heard the words, "Come hither Sumana," uttered by the deity who had made a banyan tree growing hard by the house of the Caṇḍāla chieftain his abode and she went thither (up to the deity).

By his supernatural power the deity created a hut and gave it to her requesting her to live in it. She entered that hut. Even on the day she went away she gave birth to a son. As he had received the protection of the deity of the banyan (nigrodha) tree she gave him the name Nigrodha. The Caṇḍāla chieftain, from the day he saw her, began to attend on her regularly looking upon her as the daughter of his lord. The Princess lived there for seven years.

[46] The Prince Nigrodha too reached the age of seven years. At this time the Elder Mahāvaruṇa, an Arahant who was living there, seeing the latent potentialities of the child thought, "This child is now seven years old, it is time to admit him into the Order"; and sending word to the Princess, he admitted Prince Nigrodha into the Order. The Prince attained arahatship in the tonsure-hall itself. One day, after he had attended to his bodily ablutions early in the morning, he performed his duties to the teacher and the preceptor, and taking the bowl and robe set out with the intention of visiting the home of his mother, a lay-devotee. And the place of residence of his mother had to be reached by entering the city through the southern gate and going through the heart of the city and emerging from the eastern gate.

48. At this time, Asoka the righteous monarch, was pacing up and down at the lion-window facing the East. Even at this
Third Great Convocation

moment Nigrodha reached the royal courtyard, with his senses controlled, mind pacified, and looking but a yoke's distance ahead. Therefore it is said: "One day, standing at his lion-window he saw the novice Nigrodha walking by the royal courtyard, retrained, self-controlled, with senses guarded and endowed with deportment in his movements." 1 Seeing him, it so occurred to him, "All these people are confused in mind and are like the perturbed deer; but this child is not confused in mind, his gaze ahead and around and the movement of his limbs to and fro are exceedingly pleasant; for surely, within him there is bound to be some transcendental virtue"; and at the mere sight (of him) the King's mind was pleased with the novice and there arose love towards him.

Why?

It is said that in the past, when they were doing good works together, he was born as a merchant, as the King's eldest brother. 2 For it is said, 3

[47] By living in constant association in the past or through affection in the present, there thus arises this love like a lotus in the water.

The King with love arisen for him and with great esteem for him, despatched his ministers saying, "Summon this novice." As he saw that they were delaying long he again sent two or three others in order to hasten his arrival.

The novice came along with his usual measured gait. The King said, "Select a suitable seat and sit down." He looked around this way and that and ascertaining that there were no other monks present at the time, went up to the royal divan over which was hoisted the white parasol of state and made a sign for the King to take his bowl. The moment the King saw him going up to the divan he reflected, "Now, even today, this novice will be the lord of this house." Giving the bowl into the hands of the King, the novice ascended the divan and sat down. The King offered him all the various preparations of food such as gruel and hard food which had been prepared for his own use. The novice accepted the food, both hard and soft, sufficient only for his sustenance. At the end of the meal the King asked, "Do you know the instruction given you by the Teacher?"
"Great King, I know some aspect of it."

"Preach it to me too, my dear."

"Very well, Great King," said he, and preached, in order to arouse the King's joy, the Chapter on Diligence in the Dhammapada which was most suited to him. And the King, even as he heard the words, "Diligence is the path to immortality and indolence is the path of Death," said, "I have understood it, my dear, do conclude it." At the end of the discourse which kindled his joy he said, "I will, my dear, give you eight appointed meals." The novice replied, "Great King, I will give these to my preceptor."

"And pray, my dear, who is this preceptor that you speak of?"

"Great King, it is he who urges me on and makes me remember when he sees my repeated wrong behaviour."

"I will, my dear, give you eight other meals."

"Great King, I will give these to my teacher."

"And pray, my dear, who is this teacher that you speak of?"

"Great King, it is he who establishes me in the principles (dhammā) in which one should have a training in this Dispensation."

"It is well, my dear, I will give you eight other meals."

"Great King, these I will give to the Order of monks."

"And pray, my dear, what is this Order of monks that you speak of?"

"Great King, it is they on whom depend the ordination and higher ordination of my preceptor and my teacher and of me."

The King was exceedingly delighted and said, "I will give you eight further meals, my dear."

The novice accepted, saying, "So be it," and on the following day, entered the royal palace taking with him thirty-two other monks and partook of his meals there. The King said, "Let thirty-two other monks in addition accept alms with you tomorrow"; and in this manner, day by day, he made the number increase and discontinuing the meals for the 60,000 brahmins, wandering ascetics, and others, and, on account of his devotion to the Elder Nigrodha, established the continual feeding of 60,000 monks at his inner apartments.

And the Elder Nigrodha established the King together with his followers in the Three Refuges and in the five moral precepts
and made firm their faith as that of common people in the Dispensation of the Buddha, so that it should not waver.\(^{6}\) Moreover, the King had the great monastery called Asokārāma built and instituted the permanent feeding of 60,000 monks. And righteously and not by unlawful means, he had in the 84,000 townships all over Jambudīpa, monasteries duly adorned with 84,000 cetiyas, built.

49. And so one day, seated amidst the Order of monks numbering 60,000, when he had given magnificent alms at Asokārāma and made offerings of the four requisites\(^{1}\) to the Order, the King asked the question, "What is the extent of the Dhamma preached by the Exalted One?"

"Great King, according to āñgas, it forms nine Āṅgas: according to units, it forms eighty-four thousand Units of the Dhamma."\(^{2}\)

Having won faith in the Dhamma, the King said, "I will honour each one of the Units of the Dhamma with a monastery,"\(^{[49]}\) and spent ninety-six crores of wealth on one and the same day and ordered his ministers, "Come hither, fellows, having a monastery erected in every town have eighty-four thousand monasteries built in the eighty-four thousand townships": and he himself initiated the work for the construction of the Great Asoka Monastery at Asokārāma.

The Order gave him the services of the Elder named Indagutta, a canker-waned Arahant of great psychic and supernatural power, as the officer supervising the new constructions.\(^{3}\) By his supernatural power the Elder completed whatever work had failed to reach completion. In this manner too, the work of the construction of the monasteries was completed in three years.

On one and the same day letters arrived from all the towns; and the ministers announced to the King, "Sire, the eighty-four thousand monasteries are completed."

The King sent out a drum of proclamation in the city announcing, "Seven days hence will be held the festival of dedication of the monasteries. Let all make preparations both within and without the city for the festival of dedication of the monasteries, taking upon themselves the eightfold moral precepts."
50. Seven days later, surrounded by his fourfold army consisting of many hundred thousands decked in all their ceremonial attire, he went to the monastery parading through the city which had been gaily dressed by the eager multitudes who were anxious to make the city excel in splendour the glory of the royal city of Amaravati in heaven, and went and stood amidst the Order of monks.

And at that time there had assembled eighty crores of monks and 9,600,000 nuns. Among these monks the canker-waned alone numbered 100,000. It thus occurred to them, "If the King were to obtain an unobstructed view of the service he was rendering, he would win faith to a greater extent in the Dispensation of the Buddha." [50] They then performed a miracle called the Unveiling of the World. As the King surveyed the four directions, remaining at Asokarama, he saw up to its ocean limits Jambudīpa right round him and also beheld the 84,000 monasteries resplendent with the magnificent ceremonies connected with the festival of dedication.

Seeing this splendour he was overcome with great joy and fervour; and reflecting whether such joy and fervour had arisen to any one else before, he asked the Order of monks, "Sirs, who has made great sacrifice to the Dispensation of the Lord of Ten Powers, our saviour of the world? And whose sacrifice is considered the greatest?" The Order of monks entrusted the responsibility (of answering) to the Elder Moggaliputta Tissa. The Elder replied, "Great King, even during the life-time of the Tathāgata there was no other giver of requisites like you. Your sacrifice alone is great." When the King heard the Elder's words, with his body incessantly permeated with great joy and fervour, he thought, "And so there is no giver of requisites like me, great is my sacrifice, and I am said to support the Dispensation with material gifts! This being so am I or am I not an heir of the Dispensation"?

51. Then he asked the Order of monks, "Am I Sirs, an heir of the Dispensation?" The Elder Moggaliputta who heard this statement of the King, perceiving the inherent sufficing qualifications (for arahatship) of Mahinda, the King's son, thought, "If this Prince were to enter the Order there would be
great progress for the Dispensation”; and spoke thus to the King, “Great King, not indeed with this alone have you become an heir of the Dispensation, but you will only be designated as a giver of requisites or as a servitor. For, Great King, even he who gives a heap of requisites measuring from the earth to the world of Brahma, is not designated as an heir of the Dispensation.”

“Then Sir, how does one become an heir of the Dispensation?”

“Great King, he who, [51] whether rich or poor, has his own begotten son enter the Order, he, O Great King, is called an heir of the Dispensation.” When it was said thus, King Asoka reflected, “And so, even with this sacrifice I have made I have not become an heir of the Dispensation!” and in his desire to be an heir of the Dispensation, looked about this way and that and saw Prince Mahinda standing nearby. Seeing him it so occurred to him, “Even though I have been eager to invest him with the office of Viceroy from the day Prince Tissa entered the Order, now methinks, ordination is better (for him) than Viceregal splendour.”

Then he said to the Prince, “My son, will you be able to join the Order?” As for the Prince, he was naturally inclined to seek ordination ever since the day Prince Tissa entered the Order, and hearing the words of the King he was exceedingly delighted and replied, “Sire, I will enter the Order, admit me into the Order and you become an heir of the Dispensation.”

At this time, the King’s daughter Saṅghamittā too was standing at the same place. And her husband, the Prince called Aggibrahmā had entered the Order along with the Viceroy, Prince Tissa. The King saw her and said, “My child, will you too be able to join the Order?”

“Yes father, I am able.”

Having obtained the consent of his children, the King was overjoyed and spoke thus to the Order of monks, “Sirs, admit these children into the Order and make me an heir of the Dispensation.”

52. The Order (of monks) approved of the King’s request and admitted the Prince into the Order appointing the Elder
Moggaliputta Tissa as preceptor and the Elder Mahādeva \(^1\) as teacher and gave the higher ordination with the Elder Majjhantika \(^2\) as teacher. At that time, it is said, the Prince had completed his twentieth year. Even within the precincts of the sīmā \(^3\) for the higher ordination, he attained arahatship gaining the fourfold analytic insight. \(^4\) The teacher of the Princess Saṅghamittā was the Elder (-nun) Āyupāli and the preceptor was the Elder (-nun) Dhammapāli. \([52]\) At this time Saṅghamittā was eighteen years of age. The moment she entered the Order, even within the precincts of the sīmā they established her in the training in moral precepts. At the time of the ordination of the two of them the King was in the sixth year after consecration. \(^5\)

Thereupon the Elder Mahinda, from the time he received the higher ordination, studying the Dhamma and the Vinaya under his preceptor, within three years learnt the complete Tradition of the Elders consisting of the works of the Three Piṭakas together with their commentaries handed down at the two Convocations, and became the leader among a thousand monks, resident-pupils of his preceptor.

53. By this time Asoka the righteous monarch was in the ninth year of his consecration. And even during the eighth year of the King's consecration the Elder Kontiputta Tissa \(^1\) who was wandering about following the observance of begging his requisites \(^2\) did not receive a handful of ghee for the treatment of his ailment, and with his span of life reduced by the intensity of his disease he admonished the Order of monks to be diligent, and seated cross-legged in mid-air entered the element of fire and passed away in perfect Nibbāna. The King heard of this incident, paid all due honour to the Elder, and exclaiming, "Even during my reign the requisites of the monks are so rare!" he had tanks constructed at the four gateways of the city and filling them with medicaments had them dispensed.

54. At that time, it is said, the King had a daily revenue of 500,000, of which 400,000 were collected at the four gates and 100,000 at the hall of justice. Of this the King spent
100,000 daily for the Elder Nigrodha, 100,000 for offerings of incense and garlands at the cetiyas built in honour of the Buddha, 100,000 for the Dhamma—it served the purpose of procuring the four requisities for learned monks well versed in the Dhamma—100,000 for the Order of monks and the other 100,000 to provide medicines at the four gates. In this manner there arose great gain and honour to the Dispensation. The heretics, whose gain and honour had dwindled to the extent of their failing to obtain even food and clothing, gained admission to the Order in the Dispensation in their eagerness for gain and honour, and each propounded his philosophical dogmas claiming them to be the Dhamma and the Vinaya. And those who failed to gain admission to the Order, themselves shaved off their hair, and wearing yellow robes wandered about in monasteries intruding at the uposatha and "Invitation" ceremonies and at formal Acts of the Order and of the Chapter. The monks did not perform the uposatha ceremony in their company.

55. Thereupon the Elder Moggaliputta Tissa handed over the leadership of the Chapter to the Elder Mahinda, thinking, "Now this dispute has arisen, it will soon be aggravated; and it is not possible to settle it living in their midst"; and wishing to abide at peace as he was wont to, he retired to the hill near Ahogaṅgā.

And in spite of the heretics being subjected to censure by the Order of monks with regard to the Dhamma and the Vinaya and the Teaching of the Master, they gave rise to divers forms of upheavals, stains, and thorns in the Dispensation, as they did not conform to the principles laid down in accordance with the Dhamma and the Vinaya. Some of them tended the sacrificial fire, some subjected themselves to the heat of the five fires, some worshipped the sun following its movements in the sky, while others made a determined effort to destroy the Dhamma and the Vinaya.

At that time the Order of monks held neither the uposatha nor the "Invitation" with them. The uposatha at Asokārāma was interrupted for seven years. They informed the King too of this matter. The King commanded a minister to go to the
monastery and settle the dispute and revive the uposatha. This minister who had not the courage to ask questions of the King in turn, approached the other ministers and asked them, "The King has despatched me charged with the duty of going to the monastery to settle the dispute and revive the uposatha. How is this dispute to be settled?" [54] They replied, "We are inclined to believe that what the King intended was that all those who did not perform the uposatha should be slain even as those who quell an uprising in the frontier districts execute the culprits." Then the minister went to the monastery, and summoning an assembly of the Order of monks, told them, "I have been sent by the King to see that the uposatha is held. Sirs, hold now the uposatha." The monks replied that they would not hold the uposatha in the company of the heretics. The minister began cutting off their heads with his sword, starting from the seat of the seniormost Elder.

56. And the Elder Tissa saw this minister who was committing this misguided act. The Elder Tissa was a person of no mean consequence; he was Prince Tissa, the King's brother, born of the same mother. The King, after his consecration, appointed him Viceroy. One day, on one of his visits to the forest he saw a large herd of deer disporting themselves in delightful gambol. On seeing them it so occurred to him, "These deer that feed on mere grass play about thus, but what manner of agreeable sport will these recluses not indulge in, eating delicious food at the royal household and sleeping in comfortable beds?" He returned from there and told the King about this reflection of his.

Thinking: "The Prince feels remorse for no reason; and it would be well if I convinced him in this manner," the King, one day, pretended to be very angry over something or another and said to him, "Come hither, accept the kingship for seven days: after that I will put you to death"; and threatening him with impending death he made him realize that fact. And as for the Prince, he did not bathe at leisure, neither ate nor slept, and his body became miserably emaciated as he kept on thinking that they would kill him after seven days. Thereupon
the King asked him, "Why are you reduced to this condition?"
"For fear of death, Sire."
"Look you, seeing death that is due within a fixed time-limit [55] you are not yourself and do not enjoy life. How can the monks rejoice observing death which is intrinsically connected with in-breathing and out-breathing?" Thenceforth the Prince gained faith in the Dispensation.

And again one day, while roaming in the forest, when he had set out on a deer-hunt, he saw the Elder Mahādhammarakkhita, a Yona,3 who was seated and being fanned by a lordly elephant with the branch of a sāla-tree. He was delighted on seeing this and thought to himself, "When, indeed, will I too be able to enter the Order like this great Elder? Will that day ever come to pass?" The Elder perceived his reflection, and while he was looking on rose into the air and, descending on the surface of the lotus lake at Asokārāma, began to bathe making his robe and upper robe float in mid-air. The Prince was exceedingly delighted when he beheld the Elder's supernatural powers; and turned back wishing to enter the Order that very day and announced to the King, "Sire, I wish to enter the Order."

Though he begged of him in many ways, the King was unable to keep him back. He had the road leading to Asokārāma decorated, and making the Prince attire himself in festive garb, conducted him to the monastery, led in procession by the army in festive array. Hearing that the Viceroy would enter the Order many monks prepared bowls and robes. The Prince made his way to the hall of meditation, and together with a thousand men entered the Order under the Elder Mahādhammarakkhita. There was no limit to the number of those who entered the Order following the Prince's example.

The Prince entered the Order during the fourth year of the King's consecration.4 Further, there was another Prince named Aggibrahmā, a nephew of the King, Saṅghamittā's husband. Saṅghamittā bore him an only son.5 [56] Having heard that the Viceroy had entered the Order, he too went up to the King and begged of him, "Sire, I too wish to enter the Order." Receiving the King's permission, "Enter the Order, dear child," he entered the Order on the same day.
In this manner should be known the Elder Tissa the younger brother of the King, whose entry into the Order was followed by that of a band of Khattiyas of great splendour and opulence.

57. He saw the minister who was thus committing this misguided act and reflected, "The King will not send him to kill the Elders. Assuredly, this minister must be acting under a misapprehension"; and he himself went and sat down in the seat nearest to him. Recognizing the Elder, and not having the courage to bring his weapon down upon him he went back and announced to the King, "Sire, I have beheaded so many monks who were not willing to hold the uposatha; and then came the turn of the venerable Elder Tissa. What shall I do?" The moment the King heard this he reprimanded him, "You villain, did I send you to kill the monks?" And with his body burning with anguish he hastened to the monastery and asked the Elder monks, "Venerable Sirs, this minister has thus acted contrary to my commands. On whom will the evil devolve?"

Some Elders replied, "He has acted at your command. The evil is yours." Some replied, "This evil belongs to both of you." And some others asked, "Was there, Great King, the intention in you that he should go and kill the monks?"

"No Sirs, I sent him with all good intentions that the Order of monks might hold the uposatha being united."

"If you had good intentions, no evil belongs to you, but it devolves on the minister."

58. The King was perplexed with doubt and asked, "Sirs, is there any monk who can cut off this doubt of mine and stabilize the Dispensation?"

"There is, Great King, the Elder named Moggaliputta Tissa. [57] He is able to cut off this doubt and stabilize the Dispensation."

And on the same day the King sent four preachers of the Dhamma, each attended by a thousand monks, and four ministers, each attended by a thousand men, to conduct the Elder to him.

They went and said, "The King summons you." The Elder
did not go. The second time the King sent eight preachers of the Dhamma and eight ministers, each one attended by a retinue of a thousand asking them to say, "Sir, the King summons you"; and to conduct him to him. Even so did they speak to him, but the Elder did not go to him even the second time. The King asked the Elders, "Sirs, I have sent for him twice; why does the Elder not come?"

"Great King, as he is told that the King summons him, he does not come. If it is restated thus, 'Sir, the Dispensation is sinking. Be of assistance to me to stabilize the Dispensation,' then he would come."

Thereupon the King despatched sixteen preachers of the Dhamma and sixteen ministers, each with a retinue of a thousand followers, charged with this message. He asked the monks, "Sirs, is the Elder young or old?"

"He is old, Great King."

"Sirs, will he ride in a carriage or in a palanquin?"

"Great King, he will not ride in it."

"Sirs, where does the Elder live?"

"On the upper reaches of the Ganges, Great King."

The King then commanded, "If that be so, my men, tie a raft of boats, make the Elder sit in it, station guards on both banks and conduct the Elder hither." The monks and the ministers went to the Elder and conveyed to him the King's message. The Elder heard it and thinking to himself, "Indeed, here am I who have entered the Order from the very outset for the purpose of stabilizing the Dispensation; and the time has now come to me," he rose taking with him his piece of hide.

59. [58] Now at night, the King dreamt a dream which indicated that the Elder would reach Pātaliputta the following day. And thus was his dream: A majestic elephant, all white, came and felt the King's body right down from his head and held him by the right hand. On the following day the King questioned the interpreters of dreams, "I have seen such a dream: what will befall me?"

"Great King, a mighty monk will take you by the right hand."
Then the King, as soon as he heard that the Elder had come, went to the bank of the Ganges, waded into the river, and going forward to meet him reached the Elder when the water was knee-deep and gave his hand to the Elder so that he could descend from the boat. The Elder held the King by the right hand. Seeing this, the sword-bearers drew forth their swords from the scabbards thinking of cutting off the Elder's head. Why? It was customary among ruling clans that whosoever holds the king's right hand shall have his head cut off with a sword. The King saw their shadow only and said, "I enjoy no peace of mind for the past wrongs done to the monks. Do not do the Elder any harm." And why did the Elder hold the King by his hand? Since he had been invited by the King for the purpose of asking a question, he therefore held him (by the right hand) treating him as his resident-pupil.

60. The King conducted the Elder to his park, and placing three sets of guards all round outside, he himself washed the Elder's feet, smeared them with oil, and sat near him; and in order to test whether the Elder was capable of removing his doubt and stabilizing the Dispensation by settling the dispute that had arisen, he said to him, "Sir, I am desirous of seeing a miracle."

"Great King, which miracle do you wish to see?"
"Sir, the earth quake."
"Great King, do you wish to see the whole earth tremble, or only a region?"
"Which of them, Sir, is more difficult?"
"Which, Great King, is the more difficult to move—all the water in a bronze bowl filled with water, or only a part of it?"
"A part of it, Sir."
"Even in the same way, Great King, it is more difficult to make a part of the earth to tremble."
"Then, Sir, I wish to see a part of the earth tremble."

[59] "If that be so, Great King, at an interval of a yojana in every direction let a chariot be placed on the eastern side with one wheel standing inside the boundary, let a horse stand on the southern side with two feet inside the boundary, let a man stand on the western side with one foot resting within
the boundary and let a bowl of water be placed on the boundary on the northern side with half of it resting within the boundary.”

The King had this done. The Elder entered the fourth jhāna which has higher knowledge as its basis, and emerging from it made a resolution of will that the earth should tremble to the extent of a yojana for the King to see. The wheel of the chariot that stood within the boundary on the eastern side shook, the other did not; in the same way, the feet of the horse and the man which were within the boundary on the southern and western sides respectively, shook, together with half their bodies; on the northern side, the water of that half of the bowl which stood within the boundary shook and the rest remained still.

61. The King saw this miracle and came to the conclusion that the Elder was capable of stabilizing the Dispensation, and questioned him about his own remorse, “Sir, I despatched a minister asking him to go to the monastery to settle the dispute and make the uposatha held. He went to the monastery and put to death so many monks. To whom does this evil belong?”

“What, Great King, was it your intention that he should go to the monastery and kill the monks?”

“Not so, Sir.”

“If, Great King, you had no such intention, the evil is not yours.”

Thereupon the Elder convinced the King on this matter with the following discourse: “O monks, I say that volition is action. Having willed one does a deed physically, verbally, or mentally.” [60] In order to elucidate this meaning he quoted the Tittira Jātaka: In the past, O Great King, a decoy partridge asked an ascetic:

“Many are the beings that come with the thought, ‘Here is seated our kinsman.’ My mind is in doubt regarding whom the consequent action affects.”

The ascetic replied, “Is there the thought in you that those birds should come to you, guided by your voice or seeing your form, and be trapped and killed?” “No Sir,” replied the partridge. Thereupon the ascetic assured him, “If the thought
was not in you, no evil belongs to you. Action affects him only that wills and not him who wills not.’”

If the mind harbours no evil, no consequent action affects it. Evil does not smear the virtuous man of meagre cares. 4

62. In this manner the Elder reassured the King: and living there in the King’s park itself for seven days, he instructed the King on the Teaching. 1 On the seventh day, the King had the Order of monks assembled at Asokârâma and having had an enclosure of screens put round, he sat within that enclosure, and separately grouping together monks who held divergent views, and summoning each group of monks, asked, “What teaching did the Perfectly Enlightened One propound? ” Then the eternalists replied that He was an eternalist. The qualified eternalists, the propounders of the theory of finiteness and infinitude, the eel-wrigglers, casuists, those who held theories of conscious existence, non-conscious existence, neither conscious nor non-conscious existence, [61] annihilationists and those who professed Nibbâna of this life also replied (in accordance with their view). 2 Since the King had already studied the Teaching 3 he realized that they were not monks but heretics belonging to other schools; and giving them white garments he expelled them from the Order. 4 They numbered 60,000 in all.

He next summoned the remaining monks and asked, “What teaching did the Perfectly Enlightened One expound? ”

“Great King, He was an exponent of the analytical doctrine (Vibhajjavâda).” 5

When it was said thus the King asked the Elder, “Did the Perfectly Enlightened One expound the analytical doctrine? ”

“Yes, Great King.”

Thereupon the King said, “Sir, the Dispensation is now pure; let the Order of monks hold the uposatha” ; and giving them his protection he entered the city. The Order, in perfect harmony, assembled and held the uposatha. 6 In that assembly were 6,000,000 monks. At that meeting the Elder Moggaliputta Tissa recited the treatise Kathavatthu refuting the heretical theories. Even as the Elders Mahâkassapa and Yasa son of Kâkanḍaka rehearsed the Dhamma and the Vinaya, he too selected, out of the monks numbering 6,000,000 who were
well versed in the learning of the Three Piṭakas and were of profound analytic insight and possessed of the threefold knowledge, 1,000 monks, and rehearsing the Dhamma and the Vinaya he purified the Dispensation of all stains and held the Third Convocation. At the end of the rehearsal the earth trembled in many ways. This rehearsal was concluded in nine months. What is commonly known in the world as:

Has been held by a thousand monks, and hence is called "Pertaining to One Thousand"; and, on account of the earlier two, is also called "The Third"
—this is the Third Convocation.

V—THE ACCOUNT OF THE SUCCESSION OF TEACHERS

63. Whatever we have said to the effect, "It has been handed down firstly in Jambudīpa up to the Third Convocation, by the succession of teachers commencing with the Elder Upāli"; has been said to this extent for the purpose of answering this question, "By whom has it been handed down?" [62] And here follows the succession of teachers:

Upāli, Dāsaka, as well as Soṇaka, similarly Siggava and Tissa Moggaliputta—these five victorious ones Transmitted the Vinaya in the glorious (is)land of Jambu-siri, in unbroken succession up to the time of the third rehearsal.

And to this extent is its meaning declared. And after the time of the third rehearsal it has been brought to this Island by Mahinda and others. Having learned it from Mahinda, for some time, it was handed down by the Elder Ariṭṭha and others: and it should be known that from that time up to the present day it has been handed down by the succession of teachers who constituted their own line of resident-pupils. For as the Porāṇas say:

Thereupon Mahinda, Iṭṭhiya, Uttiya and Sambala... and the learned Bhadda—

These sinless sages of great wisdom came hither from Jambudīpa. They taught the Vinaya Piṭaka in Tambāpaṇṇi. They also taught the five Nikāyas and the seven (Abhidhamma) treatises.
Then the wise Ariṭṭha and the learned Tissadatta, the skilled Kālasumana, the Elder named Dīgha . . . and the learned Dīghasumana,
And another Kālasumana, the Elder Nāga, Buddhārakkhita, the wise Elder Tissa and the learned Elder Deva,
And another wise Sumana proficient in the Vinaya, Cūlanāga of great learning, unassailable as an elephant,
[68] The Elder named Dhammapālita, and Rohaṇa revered by the virtuous, his pupil named Khema of great wisdom and learned in the Three Piṭakas,
Who in his wisdom shone with great splendour in the Island, like the king of the stars, Upatissa the wise, Phussadeva the great orator,
And another wise Sumana, he of great learning named Phussa, the great orator Mahāśīva proficient in all the contents of the Piṭaka,\(^5\)
And again another wise Upāli skilled in the Vinaya, Mahānāga of great wisdom, proficient in the tradition of the Good Teaching,
And again the wise Abhaya skilled in all the contents of the Piṭaka, the wise Elder Tissa proficient in the Vinaya,
His pupil named Puppha of great wisdom and of much learning, who while protecting the Dispensation had established himself in Jambudīpa,
The wise Cūlābhaya proficient in the Vinaya, the wise Elder Tissa skilled in the tradition of the Good Teaching,
Cūladeva the wise, proficient in the Vinaya and the wise Elder Sīva skilled in all the contents of the Vinaya—
These nāgas (sinless sages) of great wisdom, knowing the Vinaya and skilled in the path, proclaimed the Vinaya Piṭaka in the Island of Tambapaṇṇī.

64. And here follows the story connected with it \(^1\):
It is said that the Elder Moggaliputta Tissa \(^2\) conducted the Third Rehearsal of the Dhamma and thought thus: “Where will the Dispensation be firmly established in the future?” As he reflected it so occurred to him, “It will be firmly established in the border districts.” Handing over the responsibility to various groups of monks, he sent those monks in these
respective directions: he sent the Elder Majjhantika to the kingdom of Kasmīra-Gandhāra saying, “You go to that kingdom and establish the Dispensation there.” Making the same request he sent the Elder Mahādeva to the principality of Mahisaka, the Elder Rakkhita to Vanavāsi, the Elder Dhammarakkhita, the Yona, to the Western Lands, the Elder Mahādhammarakkhita to Mahāraṭṭha, the Elder Mahārakkhita to the Yona World, the Elder Majjhima to the districts bordering the Himalayas, the Elders Sonaka and Uttara to Suvaṇṇabhūmi, and his own co-resident pupil, the Elder Mahinda, together with the Elders Itthiya, Uṭṭiya, Sambala, and Bhuddasāla to the Island of Tambapanni, saying, “You go to the Island of Tambapanni and establish the Dispensation there.” And all of them, as they went to the respective districts, took with them four companions each considering that a chapter of five was sufficient to confer the higher ordination in the border districts.

65. And at this time, a Nāga King named Aravāla created a hail-storm during the harvesting season in the land of Kasmīra-Gandhāra and had the grain carried down to the great ocean. The Elder Majjhantika rose into the air at Pāṭaliputta and alighting on the lake Aravāla in the Himalayas continued to walk up and down, stand upon, sit down and recline on the surface of the lake Aravāla. The Nāga youths saw him and announced to Aravāla the Nāga King, “Great King, a shaven headed recluse draped in a yellow patch-work garment of tattered rags pollutes our water.” Forthwith the Nāga King was overcome with anger; and going forth he beheld the Elder, and not being able to restrain his rage he created many terrors in the sky. Winds blew vehemently from every direction, trees were uprooted, mountain-peaks were shattered, thunder roared, lightning flashed, thunderbolts crashed, water streamed forth as though the sky were rent asunder, and Nāga youths congregated assuming hideous shapes: and he himself emitted smoke, blazed forth and unleashed torrents of weapons and intimidated the Elder with harsh words such as, “Who is this shaven-headed recluse draped in a yellow patch-work garment of tattered rags?” and
commanded the Nāga hosts, "O come, capture this monk, bind him, exterminate him." The Elder warded off all these terrors with his own psychic powers and said to the Nāga King:

Should even the whole world together with the deities come and terrify me it would not be sufficient to produce in me fear and dismay.

Great Nāga, even if you were to raise up the whole earth together with its oceans and mountains and hurl it upon me, You will not be able to produce in me fear and dismay. But on the other hand, O Lord of Nāgas, there would result vexation to you alone.

When this was said, the Nāga King with his powers subdued and efforts turned fruitless became sad and dejected. The Elder, with a doctrinal discourse befitting the occasion, instructed him, incited him, fired him with enthusiasm, and gladdened him, and along with his 84,000 Nāgas established him in the Three Refuges and in the five precepts. And many other dwellers in the Himalayas, Yakkhas, Gandhabbas, and Kumbhāndas who listened to the Elder's discourse were established in the Refuges and precepts. And the Yakkha Pañcaka together with the Yakkhini his wife, as well as 500 sons were established in the fruit of the first stage. Thereupon the Elder Majjhantika addressed all the Nāgas, Yakkhas, and Rakkhasas and said to them:

From this day, no longer give rise to anger as before, do not destroy crops, for beings desire happiness. Extend love to creatures and let men live happily.

[66] And all of them replied to the Elder, "Very well, Sir," and conducted themselves as instructed. And on that very day the time for paying homage to the Nāga King was due. Then the Nāga King had his jewelled throne brought to him and had it prepared for the Elder. The Elder sat on the throne; and the Nāga King stood there fanning the Elder. The inhabitants of Kasmīra-Gandhāra who came at that time saw the Elder, and thinking, "The Elder possesses greater supernatural powers than our Nāga King," venerated the Elder himself and sat down. The Elder preached to them the Āsīvisopama Suttanta. At the end of the discourse there resulted the
realization of the Dhamma to 80,000 beings, and 100,000 men of family entered the Order. Thenceforth up to the present day, the land of Kasmīra-Gandhāra has been aglow with the yellow robe and been fanned with a breeze hallowed by sages.

Then the sage Majjhantika went to Kasmīra-Gandhāra, converted the enraged Nāga and released many from bondage.⁸

66. And the Elder Mahādeva went to the principality of Mahiṃsaka¹ and preached the Devaduṭṭa Sutta.² At the conclusion of the discourse 40,000 beings gained insight into the Dhamma and a further 40,000 beings entered the Order.

Mahādeva of great psychic power went to the country of Mahisa and exhorting them with the “Divine Messengers” released many from bondage.³

67. The Elder Rakkhita went to Vanavāsi,¹ and standing in the sky converted the inhabitants of Vanavāsi with a discourse on the Anamataggapariyāya.² And at the end of the discourse there resulted the realization of the Dhamma to 60,000, [67] and about 37,000 entered the Order.

The Elder Rakkhita of great psychic power went to Vanavāsi and remaining in mid-air there, preached the discourse on the Anamatagga, the “Inconceivable Ends”.³

68. And the Elder Dhammarakkhita, the Yona, went to the Western Lands¹ and converted the people of the Western Lands with a discourse on the Aggikkhandhūpama Suttanta² and made 37,000 beings to drink the nectar of the Dhamma: and 1,000 men from the Khattiya clan and in addition 6,000 women entered the Order. In this manner he established the Dispensation there.

The Elder Dhammarakkhita, the Yona, entered the Western Lands and here converted many people with the Aggikkhandhūpama, the Simile of the Column of Fire.³

69. And the Elder Mahādhammarakkhita went and converted the people of Mahāraṭṭha¹ with a discourse on the Mahānāradakassapa Jātaka² and established 84,000 beings in the
fruits of the paths, and 13,000 entered the Order. In this manner he established the Dispensation there.

The sage Mahādhammarakkhita went to Mahāarattha and converted the multitude by preaching a jātaka, a Birth Story.  

70. And the Elder Mahārakkhita went to the Yonaka Kingdom and converted the Yona-World with a discourse on the Kālakārāma Suttanta and gave the ornaments of the fruits of the paths to 37,000 in excess of 100,000 beings; and 10,000 entered the Order under him. Even in this manner he established the Dispensation there.

Then the sage Mahārakkhita went to the Yonaka Kingdom and converted the Yonas by means of the Kālakārāma Sutta.  

71. [68] And again, the Elder Majjhima, together with the Elders Kassapagotta, Alakadeva, Dundubhissara, and Mahādeva went to the districts bordering the Himalayas and converted that district by preaching the Dhammacakkappavattana Suttanta and conferred the treasures of the fruits of the paths on eighty crores of beings. These five Elders converted five kingdoms, and about 100,000 entered the Order under each one of them. In this manner they established the Dispensation there.

The Elder Majjhima went to the Himalayas and converted hosts of Yakkhas by preaching to them the Dhammacakkappavattana, the "Turning of the Wheel of the Dhamma".  

72. The Elder Soṇaka, with the Elder Uttara, went to Suvan-ṇabhūmi. At that time a Rakkhasī was in the habit of coming out of the sea and devouring all the children born in the royal family. That very day, a child was born in the royal family. The people saw the Elder and thinking that he was a companion of the Rakkhasas went forth to attack the Elder taking their weapons with them. The Elder asked, "Why do you come towards me armed with your weapons?" They replied, "Rakkhasas devour all the children born in the royal
family. You are their companions.” The Elder said, “We are not the companions of Rakkhasas; we are monks who abstain from the destruction of life (etc.) and from drinking intoxicants and we subsist on one meal a day, we are of virtuous conduct and of good moral habits.” At that very moment, the Rakkhasi, with her retinue, came out of the sea thinking of devouring the child born in the royal family. The people saw her and, overcome with fear, cried out, “Sir, here comes the Rakkhasi.” The Elder created phantoms twice as large as the Rakkhasas and with those phantoms [69] encircled the Rakkhasi and her retinue on either side, placing them in the centre. She and her retinue thought, “Assuredly this place has been obtained by them, and we will become their prey”; and so all the Rakkhasas fled in haste in fear. The Elder drove them out of sight and secured the protection of the land on all sides. By preaching the Brahmajāla Suttanta he converted the large multitude that had assembled there on that occasion and established them in the Refuges and the precepts. Hereat there resulted the realization of the Dhamma to 60,000 people, 3,500 young men of family and 1,500 young women of family entered the Order. In this manner he established the Dispensation there. Thenceforth they gave the name Soṇuttara to the children born in the royal family.

Soṇa and Uttara of great psychic power, having gone to Suvannabhūmi and driven away the goblins preached the Brahmajāla, the “Perfect Net”.4

73. And the Elder Mahinda who was requested by his preceptor and the Order of monks 1 to go to the Island of Tambapānī and establish the Dispensation, reflected, “Is it or is it not the time for me to go to the Island of Tambapānī?”. As he investigated, it occurred to him that the time was not ripe. What considerations made him think so? (He saw that) Mutāsīva 2 was in his dotage; and therefore he thought, “This king is old. He is not capable of receiving this and establishing the Dispensation firmly. Soon his son Devānampiyatissa will be reigning, he will be able to receive it and establish the Dispensation firmly. Indeed, it would be well if we were to visit our kinsmen until that time comes. Perhaps we may or
may not have the opportunity of again returning to this district." Having thus reflected, he saluted the preceptor and the Order of monks and setting out from Asokârâma and going on his sojourns in the District of Dakkhinagiri 4 following a circuitous route from the city of Râjagaha, in the company of those four Elders Itâthiya and others, the novice Sumana, son of Saanghamittâ [70] and the lay disciple Bhaânduka, he spent six months visiting his kinsmen. And in due course he arrived at the city of Vedisa, 5 the residence of his mother.

74. It is said that Asoka, on his way to Ujjeni, 1 when he had been appointed ruler of that district, in his early youth, arrived at the city of Vedisa and accepted the hand of the daughter of the alderman Deva. 2 Even on that day she conceived and later gave birth to Prince Mahinda at Ujjeni.

When the Prince was fourteen years old the King was consecrated ruler. 3 At that time, she, his mother, was living in the home of her parents. Therefore it is said: In due course he arrived at the city of Vedisa, the residence of his mother. Devî, the Elder’s mother seeing that the Elder had arrived, saluted at his feet with head bent low, gave him alms and conducted him to the Great Monastery of Vedisagiri built by her. Seated in the monastery, the Elder thought, "Our duty here is done, is it now the time to visit the Island of Laâkâ?" He further thought, "Let Devânampiyatissa first undergo the consecration 4 sent by my father, let him hear the virtues of the Triad of Gems, let him set out from the city in order to celebrate the festival 5 and climb the peak Missaka; 6 then will I meet him there." And after that he spent a further month there. On the elapse of that month all of them assembled on the uposatha day of the full moon of the month of Jettha-mûla 7 and considered whether it was the time for them to visit the Island of Tambapâññî or not. Hence the Porâñâ have said 8 :

Then there was the Elder named Mahinda, a leading Elder in the Sañgha, (and there were also) the Elders Itâthiya, Uttiya, Bhaddasâla, and Sambala,

[71] The novice Sumana of sixfold higher knowledge and of great psychic power; the seventh among them was the
Succession of Teachers

lay disciple Bhanduka who had visioned the truth—these were the great nāgas (sinless sages) who conferred in seclusion.

75. Then Sakka, the lord of the deities, came to the Elder Mahinda and said, "Sir, King Muṭasìva is dead; the great King Devānampiyatissa is reigning now. Besides, the Perfectly Enlightened One has thus prophesied about you, 'A monk named Mahinda, will, in the future, convert the Island of Tambapannī.' Therefore, Sir, it is now the time to go to that fair Island. I too will assist you." Why did Sakka say this?

It is said that the Exalted One, even as he surveyed the world with his eye of wisdom, seated at the foot of the Bodhi tree, foresaw the future prosperity of this Island and told him about it. He further commanded him to be of service then. Hence he made this statement. The Elder accepted his bidding, and rising, with himself as the seventh, into the sky from the mountain Vedisa, alighted on the mountain Missaka situated to the East of Anurādhapura, now known as Cetiyapabbata. Hence the Porāṇā have said:

Having spent thirty days in Vedisagiri near Rājagaha(?), and considered that it was the time to go, they decided that they would go to that fairest Island.

Like the royal swan in the sky, the Elders rose into the air leaving Jambudīpa and alighted on the lordly peak.

Like swans on a mountain top they descended on the summit of the hill which had the appearance of a cloud and was situated to the East of the best of cities.

76. [72] Thus when the venerable Elder Mahinda came with Itthiya and the others and set foot here, it should be known that he established himself in this Island in the 236th year after the passing away of the Perfectly Enlightened One in perfect Nibbāna. And the Perfectly Enlightened One passed away in perfect Nibbāna in the eighth year of Ajātasattu’s reign. In the same year Prince Vijaya, the first king of the Island of Tambapannī, son of Prince Siha, came to this Island and made it a human habitation. In the fourteenth year of Udayabhadda’s reign in Jambudīpa, Vijaya died here. In the fifteenth
year of Udayabhadda’s reign Paṇḍuvāsadeva ascended the throne in this Island. In the twentieth year of King Nāgadasaka’s reign there, Paṇḍuvāsadeva died here having reigned for thirty years. In the same year a Prince named Abhaya became king of this Island. In the seventeenth year of King Susanāga’s reign there, twenty years had been completed in King Abhaya’s reign. And in the twentieth year of Abhaya’s reign, a rebel named Pakuṇḍakābhaya seized the kingdom. In the sixteenth year of Kālāsoka’s reign there, seventeen years had been completed in Pakuṇḍakābhaya’s reign. These seventeen years, together with the previous one year, form eighteen years. In the fourteenth year of Candagutta’s reign there, Pakuṇḍakābhaya died here, and King Muṭasīva ascended the throne. In the seventeenth year of the righteous King Asoka’s reign there, King Muṭasīva died here and King Devānampiyatissa ascended the throne.

After the passing away of the Sambuddha, the Enlightened One in perfect Nibbāna, Ajātasattu reigned for twenty-four years, [73] Udayabhadda sixteen years, Anuruddha and Muṇḍa eight years, Nagādasaka twenty-four years, Susunāga eighteen years, and his son (Kāla) Asoka twenty-eight years, and Asoka’s sons the ten brothers who ascended the throne reigned for twenty-two years. After them the nine Nandas (reigned for) also twenty-two years, Candagutta twenty-four years, and Bindusāra twenty-eight years. At the end of his reign, Asoka ascended the throne, reigned for four years without being consecrated, and in the eighteenth year after his consecration the Elder Mahinda established himself in this Island. In accordance with this succession of rulers it should be thus known that he established himself in this Island in the 236th year after the Perfectly Enlightened One had passed away in perfect Nibbāna.

77. And on this day, in the Island of Tambapanni there was a festival called the festival of the asterism of Jeṭṭhamūla. The King had the holiday proclaimed, and commanding his ministers to conduct the festivities, set out from the city with a retinue of 40,000 men; and wishing for the sport of a deer-hunt wended his way to the Missaka mountain. Then a tutelary
divinity of that hill who wished to show the Elders to the King assumed the form of a ruddy deer and walked about in the vicinity pretending to be eating grass and leaves. The King saw it, and thinking that it was not proper to shoot it then, unguarded as it was, twanged his bow-string. The deer began to run along the road leading to Ambatthala. Chasing the deer close behind, the King climbed Ambatthala itself. The deer too disappeared not far from the Elders. When the Elder Mahinda saw the King close at hand coming towards him, he made a resolution of will, "Let the King see me alone and not the others," and said aloud, "Tissa, O Tissa, come hither!" Upon hearing it the King thought, "No one born in this Island is capable of addressing me by name. [74] But this shaven-headed recluse draped in a yellow patch-work garment of tattered rags addresses me by my name. Who can he be, a human being or a non-human?" The Elder said,³

"Great King, we are monks, disciples of the King of the Dhamma who have come here from Jambudipa with consideration for you yourself."

78. At that time the great King Devānampiyatissā and the righteous monarch Asoka were friends who had not seen each other. By the potency of the merits of the great King Devānampiyatissā, three bamboo shoots about the size of chariot poles sprang up in a thicket of bamboos at the foot of the mountain Chātaka⁴; one of them was known as the "creeper-sapling", the second as the "flower-sapling", and the other as the "bird-sapling." Of these, the creeper-sapling was of a silver colour; the creeper that grew decorating it appeared to be golden in colour. And there appeared on the flower-sapling, flowers of blue, yellow, red, white, and dark colours with clearly marked stalks, petals, and filaments. On the bird-sapling there appeared figures of birds such as swans, fowls, and pheasants as well as various kinds of four-footed animals as though they were alive. And so it has been said in the Dipavamsa²:

There were three bamboo shoots at the foot of the Chātā mountain. The silver-sapling was white and the creeper appeared to be of gold.
Whatever flowers there were of colours such as blue, such were they that appeared on the flower-sapling; and on the bird-sapling were arrayed birds in their natural form.

[75] From the ocean too there arose to him manifold treasures such as pearls, gems, and lapis-lazuli. Eight varieties of pearl arose in Tambapaṇṇi—the horse-pearl, the elephant-pearl, the chariot-pearl, the myrobalan-pearl, the bracelet-pearl, the finger-wrapping-pearl, the kakudha 3-fruit-pearl, and the natural pearl. He sent those saplings and these pearls and many other treasures as gifts to Asoka, the righteous monarch. Asoka was pleased and sent him the five ensigns of royalty: the parasol of state, the yak-tail fan, the sword, the diadem, and the golden sandals and gifts of many other articles required for the consecration, namely, the conch shell, water from the Ganges, perfumed bath-powder, 4 ear ornaments, a water jar, a ceremonial vessel with markings in the auspicious direction, 5 a palanquin, a young girl, 6 a ladle, a pair of garments which required no washing, a cloth for wiping the hands, yellow sandalwood, reddish clay, ointment, gall-nut, and myrobalan. 7 And so it has been said in the Dipavamsa 8 :

A yak-tail fan, a diadem, a parasol, a sword, sandals, a turban, a golden chain, a water jar, and a vessel with markings auspicious-wise—

A palanquin, a conch, ear-ornaments, a pair of garments which required no washing, a golden bowl, a ladle, a valuable cloth for wiping the hands;

Water from the lake Anotatta, a maiden most noble, 6 yellow sandalwood, [76] reddish clay and ointments brought by the Nāgas—

Gall-nut and myrobalan, precious heavenly medicine, 60,000 waggonloads of perfumed sāli-rice brought to him by the parrots: all this his deserts of past good deeds, did the renowned Asoka send.

He sent not only this material gift but also the following message of the Dhamma 9 :

I have sought the refuge of the Buddha, the Dhamma, and the Sangha, and proclaimed lay discipleship in the Dispensation of the Son of the Sakyas. 10
May you, too, O lord of men win faith in mind as regards these three noblest objects and seek their refuge with devotion.\textsuperscript{11}

79. And this King had been anointed for one month to this day with the consecration sent by the King Asoka, for his consecration was performed on the full moon day of the month of Visākha.\textsuperscript{1} And recalling to mind the news of the Dispensation which he had but recently heard,\textsuperscript{2} and realizing that the venerable ones had already come, he threw down his weapon immediately when he heard the words of the Elder, "Great King, we are monks, disciples of the King of the Dhamma," and sat beside him exchanging pleasant greetings. For it is said,\textsuperscript{3}

Laying aside his weapon he sat respectfully aside: seated thus the King indulged in pleasant talk of immense benefit. Even while he was making his speech of welcome those 40,000 followers came and stood around him. At this stage the Elder made the other six visible.\textsuperscript{4} Seeing them the King asked, "When did they come?"

[77] "Together with me, Great King."
"Are there other monks such as they in Jambudīpa at present?"
"There are, Great King. Jambudīpa is aglow with the yellow robe and fanned with a breeze hallowed by sages." Therein,\textsuperscript{5}

There are many disciples of the Buddha who possess the threefold higher knowledge, have gained psychic powers, are skilled in the knowledge of others’ minds and are canker-waned Arahants.

80. (He asked\textsuperscript{1}), "Sirs, how did you come?"
"Great King, neither by water nor by land."

The King inferred that they had come through the air. In order to test the King’s accomplishment in wisdom, the Elder began asking him questions on the mango tree nearby.
"Great King, what is the name of this tree?"
"Sir, it is known as a mango tree."
"Besides this mango tree, Great King, is there any other mango tree or not?"
"There are, Sir, many other mango trees."
"Leaving aside this mango tree and the other mango trees, are there, Great King, other trees?"
"Yes Sir, there are, but they are not mango trees."
"Leaving out those mango trees and the other trees that are not mango, is there any other tree?"
"This mango tree alone, Sir."
"Good, Great King, you are wise."

"Great King, have you any kinsmen?"
"Yes, Sir, they are many in number."
"Besides them, are there any who are not your kinsmen, Great King?"
"Those who are not my kinsmen, Sir, are many more than my kinsmen."
"Leaving aside your kinsmen and those who are not your kinsmen, Great King, is there any one else?"
"Yes, Sir, I myself."
"Good, Great King, a person himself is neither his kinsman nor non-kinsman."

81. Thereupon the Elder, realizing that the King was intelligent and would be able to understand the Dhamma, preached the Cūlahatthipadopama Sutta. At the end of the discourse, together with his 40,000 followers, the King established himself in the Three Refuges. Exactly at this moment the King's food [78] was brought to him. Even as he was listening to the discourse the King knew that it was not permissible for them to eat at that time, and thinking that it was wrong to eat without asking them he asked, "Sirs, will you eat?"

"Great King, food is not permissible for us at this time."
"Sirs, at what time is it permissible?"
"Starting from dawn till mid-day, Great King."

"Sirs, let us go to the city."
"No, Great King, we will reside even here."
"Sirs, if you will live here, let the child come with me."

"Great King, this child has attained the fruits and understood the instruction and is an aspirant for ordination who will presently enter the Order."
The King, saying, "If that be so, Sir, I will send you a chariot tomorrow, come riding in it," saluted him and departed.

82. Scarcely had the King departed than the Elder addressed the novice Sumana, "Come hither, Sumana, proclaim the time for listening to the Dhamma."

"Sir, how far shall I make the announcement heard?"

"In the whole Island of Tambapanni."

"Good, Sir," said the novice, and having entered the fourth jhāna which has higher knowledge as its basis, he emerged from it and with mind concentrated, thrice announced the time for listening to the Dhamma, making it heard, by virtue of his resolution of will, throughout the whole Island of Tambapanni. The King heard this announcement and sent a messenger to the Elders inquiring whether they were in any danger. They replied, "No misfortune has befallen us. We have announced the time for listening to the Dhamma, and we wish to preach the word of the Buddha." Hearing the novice's proclamation, terrestrial deities repeated the announcement and in this manner the proclamation reached as far as the world of Brahma. As a result of this proclamation there arose a large assembly of deities. Seeing the large assembly of deities, the Elder preached the Samacitta Suttanta. At the end of the discourse there resulted the realization of the Dhamma to countless deities. [79] Many Nāgas and Supaññas were established in the Refuges. As was (the size of) the assembly of deities when the Elder Sāriputta preached this suttanta, so it was when the Elder Mahinda preached it.

83. Then after that night had passed, the King sent a chariot for the Elders. The charioteer halted the car on the roadside and said to the Elders, "Sirs, the chariot is brought, board it so that we may set out." The Elders said, "We will not board the chariot; you may go, we will come later." And rising into the air they descended on the site of the Paṭhamakacetiya, to the east of Anurādhapura. Because it was built at the place where the Elders first alighted, this cetiya was called the Paṭhamakacetiya. The King issued a command to the ministers through his charioteer to arrange a pavilion within the palace.
Overcome with great joy, all of them immediately arranged an exceedingly delightful pavilion. The King further reflected, "While discoursing on the code of moral precepts yesterday, the Elder said that the use of high and comfortable couches was not permissible. Will the venerable ones sit in these seats or not?" While he was thus reflecting that charioteer reached the city-gate. There he saw that the Elders had arrived before him and were draping themselves with the outer robe, having already tied on their belts. Seeing them, he was overcome with great fervour, and coming back, he reported to the King, "Sire, the Elders are come." The King asked, "Did they board the chariot?" He replied, "No, Sire, they did not; but they set out after me and have arrived at the eastern gate before me." Learning that they did not board the chariot and realizing that the venerable ones would then on no account accept high couches, the King issued instructions, "If that be so, my men, prepare seats for the Elders in the manner floor-carpets are arranged," and went the opposite way to greet them. The ministers first laid down a mat on the floor and then laid on it many-coloured spreadings of fleecy counterpanes and so on.

The soothsayers saw this and explained, "They are now firmly rooted in the soil; they [80] will be the masters of the Island of Tambapaṇṇi." The King went up and saluted the Elders. Taking the bowl from the Elder Mahinda's hand he conducted the Elders to the city with great honour and reverence and led them to his palace. Seeing the seats that were arranged, the Elder sat down thinking that their Message would be established throughout the Island of Laṅkā, as widespread and calm as the earth. The King himself personally waited on the Elders and regaled them with various kinds of delicacies both hard and soft and, sending for the 500 ladies of the court led by the Princess Anulā so that they might greet, pay homage to, and honour the Elders, he sat respectfully aside. His meal over, the Elder preached the Petavatthu, the Vimānavatthu, and the Saccasamyutta to the King and his courtiers showering upon them the treasures of the Dhamma. Having listened to that discourse on the Dhamma by the Elder those 500 women realized the fruit of Stream-Entrantship.
Succession of Teachers

All those men who had seen the Elders on the Missaka mountain the previous day, spoke of the virtues of the Elders at various places. Hearing their words a large multitude of people gathered at the royal courtyard and made a big uproar. The King asked, "What noise is this?"

"Sire, the townspeople lament that they have not been able to see the Elders," was the reply. Thinking that there would be no room if they were all to enter there, the King ordered, "Go, my men, prepare the elephants' stall,\(^5\) strewing white sand and flowers of the five colours \(^6\) and setting up an awning, and prepare seats for the Elders in the place occupied by the state elephant." The King's ministers carried out the command. The Elder went there, sat down and preached the Devadūta Suttanta.\(^7\) At the end of the discourse a thousand people were established in the fruit of Stream-Entrantship. Later,\(^8\) finding that the elephants' stall was overcrowded, they prepared a seat in the Nandana Pleasure-grove \(^9\) in the direction of the southern gate. Seated there, the Elder preached the Āsīvisopama Sutta.\(^10\) Hearing this too a thousand beings \([81]\) received the fruit of Stream-Entrantship. Thus there resulted the realization of the Dhamma to 2,500 people on the day after his arrival.

84. While the Elder was exchanging greetings with the women, maidens, and girls of the noble families who visited the Nandana Grove, it became evening. Considering what time of day it was, the Elder rose thinking of returning to the Missaka mountain. The ministers asked, "Where would you go, Sirs?"

"To our place of abode."

They informed the King of this and with the King's approval said, "It is not the time now, Sirs, to go there. May the Venerable Ones make this Nandana Pleasure-grove itself their place of abode."

"Not so, we will go."

Again they said on the King's behalf, "Sirs, the King says that the park known as Meghavana \(^1\) which belonged to his father is situated neither too far nor too near the city and is within easy access; he wishes the Elders to take up their abode there." \(^2\)

And the Elders lived in the Meghavana Park.\(^3\) When that
night was spent the King himself visited the Elder and, having asked him whether he had slept well, inquired, "Sir, is an ārāma permissible (for the use of) the Order of monks?" The Elder replied, "Great King, it is permissible," and further cited this sutta, 4 "O monks, I sanction the use of an ārāma." The King was pleased, and taking a golden water-jar he poured the water of dedication on the Elder's hand and gave the pleasure-grove Mahāmegha. Simultaneously with the pouring of the water of dedication the earth trembled. 5 This was the first occasion when the earth trembled at the Mahāvihāra. The King was frightened and asked the Elder, "Sir, why did the earth tremble?"

"Fear not, Great King, the Dispensation of the Lord of Ten Powers will be established in this Island; and this is the place where the first monastery will be. This is the prognostication of it."

The King was exceedingly delighted. Even on the following day, the Elder took his meal in the palace itself and preached the Anamataggiyas (the Inconceivable Ends) 6 in the Nandana Grove. The day after that he preached the Aggikkhandhopama Sutta. 7 In this manner he preached for seven days, bringing about the realization of the Dhamma to 8,500 people. Thenceforth [82] the Nandana Grove received the name Joti Grove as it became the centre from which the radiance of the Dispensation became manifest.

85. And on the seventh day the Elders preached the Mahā-Appamāda Sutta 1 to the King in the inner apartments of the palace and returned to Cetiya-giri 2 itself. Thereupon the King asked the ministers, "The Elder gives admonition of deep meaning. Is it that he is ready to go?" The ministers replied, "Sire, the Elder came of his own accord without being invited by you and it may be that he will go away without your permission." Thereupon the King, mounted on his chariot and with his two Queens made to sit with him, journeyed to Cetiya-giri in great regal splendour. Arriving there greatly fatigued, he himself went up to the Elders, making the Queens retire aside. The Elder asked him, "Wherefore, Great King, do you come being so fatigued?"
"Sir, it is in order to find out whether it is your intention now to go away; for the last admonition you gave us was of great significance."

"Great King, it is not our intention to go; but, Great King, the time is now come for entering upon the Rains-residence, and with reference to it a monk should know where he should spend the Rains-residence."

86. On the same day, the minister named Ariṭṭha with fifty-five elder and younger brothers, stood near the King and said to him, "Sire, we wish to enter the Order under the Elders." The King gave them his consent saying, "Very well, my men, enter the Order," and entrusted them to the Elder. The Elder admitted them into the Order the same day. All of them attained arahatship even while in the hall of tonsure. And that very instant the King too ordered work to begin on the erection of sixty-eight cells around the courtyard of the Kanṭakacetiya, and returned to the city. [88] Those Elders too converted the royal family including the ten brothers and spent the Rains-residence at Cetiyagiri giving admonition to the people. At that time there were sixty-two Arahants spending the first Rains-residence at Cetiyagiri.

87. And now the venerable Mahāmahinda having spent the Rains-residence and performed the Invitation ceremony (at the end of the rains), on the uposatha day of the full moon of Kattikā, said to the King, "Great King, it is a long time since we have last seen the Perfectly Enlightened One, we have lived as destitutes. We wish to go to Jambudīpa." The King asked, "Sir, I have provided you with the four requisites and these people are established in the Three Refuges on account of you. Wherefore are you dissatisfied?"

"Great King, it is a long time since we have seen the Perfectly Enlightened One; and there is no object here which we can show devotion and reverence to, pay respectful salutation and homage to; therefore are we disappointed."

"But Sir, have you not said that the Perfectly Enlightened One has passed away in perfect Nibbāna?"
"Great King, even though He has passed away in perfect Nibbāna, his bodily relics, however, remain."

"I now realize, Sir, that you are greatly eager for the establishment of a thūpa. I will build a thūpa; may you first select a suitable site. Yet, Sir, where shall we obtain relics?"

"Discuss it with Sumana, Great King."

"Good, Sir," said the King, and going up to Sumana he asked him, "Where shall we now obtain relics?" Sumana replied, "Great King, do not be anxious, have the streets cleaned and decorated with banners, streamers, full pitchers, and such articles and take upon yourself the uposatha vows in the company of your retinue and go towards the Mahānāga Pleasure-grove in the evening, attended by your full train of musicians, together with the state elephant adorned with all its paraphernalia, with the white parasol of state hoisted above it. Assuredly you will obtain the relics there." The King agreed saying, "So be it."

The Elders returned to Cetiyagiri. Thereat the Elder Mahinda told the novice Sumana, "Novice, return to Jambudīpa, go to your grandfather Asoka the righteous monarch and tell him on my behalf, 'Great King, your friend Devānapīyatissa who has gained faith in the Dispensation of the Buddha wishes to erect a thūpa; and it is known that you have relics in your possession. Give me some of them.' Taking these you next go to Sakka, the king of the deities, and tell him, 'Great King, it is said that you possess two relics, the right eye-tooth and the right collar-bone. Of these you continue to honour the tooth-relic, but give me the collar-bone.' And tell him further, 'Great King, why do you remain indifferent having sent us to the Island of Tambapāṇī?'" Accepting the words of the Elder saying, "So be it, Sir," and taking his bowl and robe, Sumana immediately rose into the air and descending at the gate of Pāṭaliputta went to meet the King and conveyed the message to him.

88. The King was pleased, and taking the bowl from the novice's hand smeared it with perfumes and returned it to him filling it with relics which resembled lovely pearls. Taking it
along with him he went to Sakka, the king of the deities. No sooner did he see the novice than Sakka, the king of the deities asked him, "Why O venerable Sir, Sumana, do you roam about?"

"Great King, why do you remain indifferent when you yourself have sent us to the Island of Tambapanī?"

"I am not indifferent, Sir; tell me what I should do."

"It is well known that you have in your possession two relics, the right eye-tooth and the right collar-bone; of them the right eye-tooth you may continue to honour, but give me the right collar-bone."

"So be it, Sir," said Sakka the lord of the deities and un-fastening the gem-built thūpa ¹ that was a yojana in extent, he brought forth the relic of the right collar-bone and gave it to Sumana. Taking this he alighted at Cetiyagiri itself. Thereupon all those great nāgas (sinless sages) led by Mahinda [85] deposited there at Cetiyagiri itself the relics given by Asoka the righteous monarch, and at eventide, the time when long shadows are cast, they repaired to the pleasure park of Mahānāga Pleasure-grove taking with them the right collar-bone.

89. The King too who had performed the rites and ceremonies as instructed by Sumana, arrived at the Mahānāga Grove mounted on a lordly elephant and himself bearing the white parasol of state above the state-elephant. Then this thought struck him, "If this is a relic of the Perfectly Enlightened One, then let the parasol sway aside and let the state-elephant fall on its knees on the ground and let the casket of relics place itself on my head." Even as this thought passed in the King's mind the parasol swayed aside, the elephant went down on its knees and the casket of relics placed itself on the King's head. Overcome by supreme joy and fervour, like one whose body was sprinkled with nectar, the King asked, "What, Sir, shall I do with the relic?"

"For the time being, replace it on the elephant's frontal, Great King."

The King took the casket of relics and placed it on the elephant's forehead. In its great joy the elephant trumpeted. A large raincloud arose and burst forth into a "lotus-shower".¹
There was a mighty earthquake right to the ocean-limits (to celebrate the fact) that a relic of the Perfectly Enlightened One should be enshrined in a border country. Deities and men were overjoyed. Thus producing joy in deities and men by the splendour of supernatural power,

The Great Hero ² came here from the world of the deities on the full moon day of the fourth month (of Kattikā) ³ and was established on the elephant's frontal.

Then this great elephant, surrounded by a band of numerous musicians and honoured with exceedingly magnificent offerings, walked backwards facing the west as far as the eastern gate of the city, and entering the city by the eastern gate, [86] left the city by the southern gate while great homage was paid to it by the entire city, and arriving at the place called Mahejavatthu ⁴ situated to the east of the Thūpārāma, stopped there again facing the Thūpārāma.⁵

90. By this time there was already at Thūpārāma a site where sacred objects used by three previous Perfectly Enlightened Ones were enshrined.¹ It is said that in the past, this Island was known as Ojadīpa: the king was called Abhaya and his city Abhayapura. The Cetiyaapabbata was known as Devakūta-pabbata and the Thūpārāma as Paṭiyārāma. At that time the Exalted One Kakusandha had appeared in the world. His disciple named Mahādeva, together with a thousand monks, established himself on Devakūta as did the Elder Mahinda on Cetiyaapabbata. At this time the people in Ojadīpa met with utter disaster and ruin through a fever. And the Exalted One Kakusandha, as he surveyed the world with his eye of enlightenment saw those beings brought to utter disaster and ruin; and when he had seen this, he went there attended by 40,000 monks. By his supernatural power the fever was allayed instantaneously. When the epidemic subsided the Exalted One preached the Dhamma and there resulted the realization of the Dhamma to 84,000 beings. The Exalted One gave his sacred water-pot (with strainer) and departed. Enshrining it they built a cetiya at Paṭiyārāma. Ministering to the Island with his counsel, Mahādeva lived there.
Succession of Teachers

91. Again, during the time of the Exalted One Koṇāgamana this Island was known as Varadīpa: the king was called Samiddha and his city Vaḍḍhamāna. [87] The mountain was called Suvaṇṇakūṭa. At that time in Varadīpa there was a drought resulting in famine and failure of crops. People met with utter disaster and ruin through disease consequent on hunger. And the Exalted One Koṇāgamana, as he surveyed the world with his eye of enlightenment saw those beings brought to utter disaster and ruin; and when he had seen this he went there attended by 30,000 monks. By the supernatural power of the Buddha there arose a torrential downpour of rain and there was an abundance of food. The Exalted One preached the Dhamma and there resulted the realization of the Dhamma to 84,000 beings. The Exalted One stationed on the Island the Elder named Mahāsumana together with a following of a thousand monks and departed, presenting his belt. Enshrining it they built a cetiya.

92. Again, during the time of the Exalted One Kassapa this Island was known as Maṇḍadīpa ¹: the king was called Jayanta, his city Visāla, and the mountain Subhakūṭa. At this time in Maṇḍadīpa there was a great dispute. Involved in quarrels and controversies many people met with utter disaster and ruin. And the Exalted One Kassapa, as he surveyed the world with his eye of enlightenment saw those beings brought to utter disaster and ruin; and when he had seen this, he went there attended by 20,000 monks, and settling the dispute he preached the Dhamma to them. There resulted the realization of the Dhamma to 84,000 beings. The Exalted One stationed on the Island the Elder named Sabbananda together with a following of a thousand monks and departed, presenting his bathing mantle. Enshrining this too they built a cetiya.

Thus at Thūpārāma stood the cetiyas to the three previous Buddhas.² They perish with the disappearance of the Teaching, the site only remains. Therefore it is said: Already by this time at Thūpārāma was the site where sacred objects used by the three previous Perfectly Enlightened Ones were enshrined. When the cetiyas have perished the spot [88] remains, by the power of the deities, concealed with various shrubs having
branches covered with thorns, so that no one may desecrate it with rubbish, impurities, dirt, and filth.

93. Thereupon the King's officers went in front of the elephant and cleared the ground cutting down all the shrubs and making it as even as the palm of the hand. The elephant went up and stood facing that spot at the place of the Bodhi tree situated to the west of it. Then they attempted to take down the relic from the elephant's forehead. The elephant did not allow it to be taken down. The King asked the Elder, "Wherefore, Sir, does not the elephant allow the relic to be taken down?"

"Great King (it thinks that) it is not proper to take down what has been once placed upon it."

At that time the Abhayavāpi had gone dry, the earth around it was caked and lumps of clay could be easily removed. The people quickly brought clay from there and made a heap to the height of the elephant's frontal globe. And at the same time they began making bricks for building the thūpa. Until all the bricks were ready the great elephant spent a few days standing in the elephant-stall at the place of the Bodhi tree by day, and walking around the place of the construction of the thūpa at night. Having had the site filled in, the King asked the Elder, "In what manner, Sir, should the thūpa be built?"

"Great King, in the shape of a heap of paddy."

"So be it, Sir," said the King, and having had the thūpa constructed knee-high (to the level of the platform), he held a great festival in honour of taking down the relic. The whole city and the country assembled to witness the ceremony in honour of the relic. When that large multitude had assembled, the relic of the Lord of Ten Powers rose into the sky from the elephant's frontal, to the height of seven palm trees and performed the twin-miracle. From the different sides of the relic streams of water of six colours and columns of fire issued forth. There took place a miracle which resembled the one performed by the Exalted One at the foot of the Gaṇḍambha tree at Sāvatthi. Indeed, this was not by the power of the Elder, nor by the power of the deities, but by the power of the
Buddha alone. For in His lifetime, He had made a resolution of will: "Let the twin-miracle take place after I have passed away in perfect Nibbāna on the day of the enshrining of my right collar-bone at the place where cetiyas have been built over the sacred objects used by three previous Enlightened Ones, and which lies to the south of Anurādhapura in the Island of Tambapāṇi."

Thus inconceivable are the Buddhas and inconceivable are the ways of the Buddhas; inconceivable are the results to those who have confidence in those who are thus inconceivable.

94. In His lifetime, the Perfectly Enlightened One came thrice to this Island. First, He came alone to tame the Yakkhas, and having done so went round the Island thrice securing protection for the Island of Tambapāṇi, knowing that after He had passed away in perfect Nibbāna the Teaching would be established in the Island. The second time He came by Himself in order to pacify the two Nāga Kings, uncle and nephew, and returned having pacified them. The third time He came with a retinue of 500 monks and entering the attainment of cessation, sat down at the sites of the Mahācetiya, the Thūpāramacetiya, the place where the Great Bodhi tree was to stand, the Mutiyanganacetiya, the Dīghavāpicetiya, and the Kalyāṇicetiya. This fourth visit of His was paid physically by means of a (bodily) relic. And there was no region of the entire land of Tambapāṇi which was not moistened by the sprays of water that issued forth from the surface of this (bodily) relic. Thus this (bodily) relic of His allayed the heat of the land of Tambapāṇi with the sprays of water, performed a miracle for the people, descended (from the sky) and placed itself on the King's head. Thinking that his birth as a human being had proved fruitful, the King had the relic deposited, paying great homage to it: and simultaneously with the depositing of the relic there was a mighty earthquake. The King's brother, the Prince named Abhaya gaining faith at heart at that miracle performed by the relic, entered the Order together with a thousand men. Five hundred youths from Cetāligāma also entered the Order. Similarly, groups of
500 youths each, coming from villages such as Dvāramanḍala. All those from within and without the city who entered the Order numbered 30,000. When the thūpa was completed, the King, the King's brothers, and the Queens each severally made offerings causing astonishment even to the deities, Nāgas, and Yakkhas. When the ceremony of paying homage to the relic was over and the wonderful relic enshrined, the Elder Mahinda returned to the Mahāmegha Pleasure-grove and took up his residence there.

95. At that time the Princess Anulā became desirous of entering the Order and told the King about it. On hearing her words the King spoke thus to the Elder, “Sir, the Princess Anulā wishes to enter the Order, admit her into the Order.”

“Great King, it is not permissible for us to admit womenfolk into the Order. But there lives at Pāṭaliputta my sister the Elder(-nun) Saṅghamittā. Send for her. Further, Great King, the Bodhi of three previous Perfectly Enlightened Ones has stood in this Island and it is meet that the Bodhi of our Exalted One which diffuses clusters of dazzling rays should be established here. Therefore despatch a message so that Saṅghamittā will come here bringing with her the Bodhi.”

“So be it, Sir,” said the King, and accepting the word of the Elder, and holding a conference with his ministers, he said to his nephew Arittha, “Will you be able to go to Pāṭaliputta and bring the venerable Elder(-nun) Saṅghamittā together with the Bodhi?”

“I will be able, Sire, if you will approve of my entering the Order.”

[91] “Go, my dear, and bring the Elder(-nun) and (afterwards) enter the Order.”

Bearing the messages of the Elder and the King, he went to the port of Jambukola, embarked in a ship, crossed the ocean, and arrived at Pāṭaliputta all in one day by virtue of the resolution of will of the Elder. And the Princess Anulā herself, together with 500 maidens and 500 ladies of the court, took up their abode in a convent which they had had erected in a certain quarter of the city, having taken upon themselves the ten precepts and wearing yellow robes.
The self same day Ariṭṭha went and presented the King's message. He added, "Sire, your son, the Elder Mahinda has charged me with this message, 'The Princess Anulā, wife of the brother of your friend King Devānampiyatissa wishes to enter the Order: send the venerable Elder(-nun) Saṅghamittā to admit her into the Order, and with the venerable lady send the Great Bodhi.'" And thus having conveyed the Elder's message he went to the Elder(-nun) Saṅghamittā and said, "Venerable lady, your brother the Elder Mahinda sends me to you with the message that the Princess Anulā the wife of King Devānampiyatissa's brother, together with 500 maidens and 500 ladies of the court, wishes to enter the Order, and he requests you to go there and admit them into the Order." She immediately went before the King in great haste and said, "Great King, my brother the Elder Mahinda and my grandson the novice Sumana have gone to the Island of Tambapanni reducing me to the plight of a man with hands cut off. [92] The grief that arises in me because of not seeing them is allayed when I look at your face. Please, my dear, do not go."

"Great King, I hold my brother's words dear. And Anulā the royal princess, accompanied by a thousand women, greatly anxious to enter the Order, eagerly awaits me. Great King, I will go."

"If that be so, my dear, take the Great Bodhi when you go."

97. How did the King come to possess the Great Bodhi?

Some time prior to then, even before Sumana's visit for the purpose of removing the relics, the King was eager to send the Great Bodhi to the Island of Laṅkā. Debating within himself as to how he should send the Great Bodhi which it was not fitting to cut with a weapon, and not being able to find a method, he asked the minister named Mahādeva. He replied, "Sire, there are many wise monks." On hearing this the King offered a meal to the Order of monks, and at the end of the
meal asked the Saṅgha, "Sirs, should the Bodhi of the Exalted One go to the Island of Laṅkā or not?" The Saṅgha referred the question to the Elder Moggaliputta Tissa. The Elder replied, "Great King, the Great Bodhi should go to the Island of Laṅkā;" and related the five great resolutions of will of the Exalted One. What are the five?¹

Lying in His death-bed prior to passing away in perfect Nibbāṇa, it is said, the Exalted One made the first resolution of will, "The great King Asoka will go to remove the Great Bodhi in order to have it established in the Island of Laṅkā. Then let the southern branch of the Great Bodhi sever of itself and plant itself in a golden vase." This was His first resolution of will. He next made the resolution of will, "Even at the time of planting itself there, let the Great Bodhi enter a bank of snowy clouds and remain there." This was the second resolution of will. He next made the resolution of will, "On the seventh day, when it plants itself again in the golden vase, having descended from the bank of snowy clouds, let it emit the six-hued rays from its leaves and fruits." This was the third resolution of will. He also made the resolution of will, "Let the right collar-bone, on the day of its enshrining in the cetiya at Thūpārāma perform the twin-miracle." This was the fourth resolution of will. He finally made the resolution of will, "Let a dona measure² of my relics, at the time of their enshrining in the Mahācetiya in the Island of Laṅkā, [98] assume the form of the Buddha, rise into the air and perform the twin-miracle." This was the fifth resolution of will.

When he heard of these five great resolutions of will, the King was pleased in mind and, clearing the road from Pāṭaliputta to the Great Bodhi,³ he had brought to him a large quantity of gold for making a golden vase. At the same time the deity Vissakamma, knowing the King's thoughts, appeared before him disguised as a smith. Seeing him the King said, "My man, take this gold and make a vase."

"Have you in mind its size, Sire?"

"Make it as you know best, my man."

Saying, "So be it, Sire, I will make it," he took the gold and fashioning it with his hand, by his supernatural power, made a golden vase nine cubits in circumference, five cubits in height,
three cubits in diameter, eight inches thick, with the outer rim the size of an elephant’s trunk.

98. Then the King set out from Pāṭaliputta with a large army seven yojanas long and three yojanas deep, and went to the vicinity of the Great Bodhi accompanied by the worthy Saṅgha. The army stood around the Great Bodhi which was dressed with banners and streamers, decked with various gems, adorned with divers ornaments, covered with various kinds of flowers, and resounding with the music of divers instruments. Taking with him about a thousand great Elders who were the leaders of groups, and surrounding himself and the Great Bodhi with a thousand consecrated kings from the whole of Jambudīpa, he stood at the foot of the Great Bodhi and gazed upon it. The whole of the Great Bodhi, except for the trunk and a portion of the great southern branch four cubits long, became invisible. With joy and fervour arisen within him as he beheld this miracle, the King said to the Order of monks, “Sirs, so am I pleased on beholding this miracle that I offer to the Great Bodhi the entire kingdom of Jambudīpa,” and he consecrated it. [94] Then, making offerings of flowers, perfumes, and so on (to the Bodhi tree), and going round it thrice with veneration, worshipping it at eight places, rising, standing with clasped hands, wishing to remove the Bodhi by an act of asseveration of truth, having the golden vase placed upon a stool inlaid with all precious gems and elevated from the ground to the height of the southern branch of the Great Bodhi, himself climbing upon the jewelled stool and taking a golden pencil and drawing a line with red arsenic, he made the following asseveration of truth, “If the Great Bodhi should be established in the Island of Laṅkā and if I should be rid of doubts as to the Dispensation of the Buddha, let the Great Bodhi plant itself in this golden vase of its own accord.” With this asseveration of truth the branch of the Bodhi tree broke away at the place marked with red arsenic and stood above the golden vase which was filled with perfumed muddy-soil.

Its trunk was ten cubits in height. There were five large branches each four cubits in length, adorned with five fruits; of small twigs it had a thousand. Then the King marked another
circular line on the stem three inches above the marking at the bottom. Then instantaneously appearing as bumps ten large roots emerged. Again, at intervals of three inches above it he made nine other circular markings. From them too ninety roots emerged (each) having become ten bumps. The first ten large roots grew to a length of four inches only and the others emerged interwoven like the netting over a gabled window. Seeing the extent of those miracles, the King, standing on the jewelled stool itself, clasped his hands together and cheered aloud, the many thousands of monks shouted approval with cries of "Bravo!", the entire royal army cheered vehemently and waved a thousand garments aloft, the devas, from the terrestrial deities right to the hosts of Brahma, [95] applauded with cries of "Bravo!" As the King stood there with clasped hands, his body completely pervaded with joy on beholding this miracle, the Great Bodhi with its hundred roots planted itself in the golden vase. The ten large roots remained touching the surface of the golden vase, the other ninety, growing in due course, embedded themselves in the perfumed muddy-soil.²

99. Thus even as the Great Bodhi planted itself in the golden vase, the mighty earth trembled, loud peals of thunder roared in the sky, and it was one tumultuous uproar resounding from the surface of the earth as far as the world of Brahma, with the dancing of the mountains, the shouts of approval of the deities, the exclamations of the Yakkhas, the incantations of praise of the Asuras, the clapping of hands of the Brahas, the roar of the rain-clouds, the cries of four-footed animals, the songs of birds and the display of the individual skill of each one of the musicians. From each of the fruits on the five branches the six-hued rays emitted making the universe appear as though covered with roof-beams made of jewels and reached as far as the world of Brahma. From that instant, for seven days, the Great Bodhi remained concealed in a bank of snowy-clouds and no one was able to see the Great Bodhi. Descending from the jewelled stool, the King, for seven days, caused offerings to be made to the Great Bodhi. On the seventh day, the snow and the six-coloured rays from all the quarters turned
Succession of Teachers

85

back and entered the Great Bodhi itself. When the snowy-clouds had disappeared and the vault of heaven become clear, the Great Bodhi, \[96\] complete with trunk, branches, and twigs, adorned with the five fruits and standing in the golden vase became visible.

On beholding the Great Bodhi, the King, with joy and rapture arisen within him through those miracles, consecrated it thinking of honouring the young Great Bodhi with the sovereignty of all Jambudīpa and remained for seven days in the vicinity of the Great Bodhi. The Great Bodhi first planted itself in the golden vase in the evening of the Invitation day \(^1\) in the bright fortnight of the month of Pubbakattikā. \(^2\) Seven days having passed (while the Great Bodhi was) in the snowy-cloud and seven days for its consecration, the uposatha day of the dark fortnight arrived and the King, in one day only, entered Pāṭaliputta and placed the Great Bodhi at the foot of the Eastern Great Sāla tree \(^3\) on the first day of the bright fortnight of Kattikā. On the seventeenth day of its planting itself in the golden vase fresh shoots sprouted on the Great Bodhi. The King, pleased on seeing them too, again consecrated the Great Bodhi honouring it with the sovereignty of all Jambudīpa. The novice Sumana who had gone there on the full moon day of Kattikā to obtain relics saw the Kattikā festival offerings to the Great Bodhi.

100. Thus it was with reference to the Great Bodhi which was brought from its platform and placed at Pāṭaliputta that he said, "If that be so, my dear, take the Great Bodhi and go." She agreed to it saying, "So be it."

For the purpose of guarding the Great Bodhi the King gave eighteen families of royal clan,\(^1\) eight families each of ministers, brahmins, wealthy householders, herdsmen, Taracchas,\(^2\) and natives of Kāliṅga,\(^3\) and for the purpose of sprinkling water he gave eight golden and eight silver vessels; and placing the Great Bodhi together with its retinue, on board a ship in the Ganges, \[97\] and himself departing from the city and crossing the Viṅjhā forest \(^4\) he arrived in due course at Tāmalitti \(^5\) in seven days. On the way, deities, Nāgas, and men paid the highest homage to the Great Bodhi. The King too,
keeping the Great Bodhi on the sea-shore for seven days, offered to it the great sovereignty of all Jambudīpa. This is the third time that he dedicated the rulership of Jambudīpa.

101. Having thus offered the great sovereignty the righteous monarch Asoka, on the first day of the bright fortnight of the month of Maggasira,¹ raised the Great Bodhi and placed it on board the ship, wading into the water up to his neck. Telling the Elder(-nun) Saṅghamittā to embark with her retinue, he spoke thus to the minister Ariṭṭha, "I have, my dear, thrice honoured the Great Bodhi with the sovereignty of all Jambudīpa, and descended neck-deep into the water whilst sending it to my friend; let him too honour the Great Bodhi in the self-same way." Thus he gave his message to his friend, and lamenting, "Behold, there goes the Great Bodhi-tree emitting a glow of glorious rays of the Lord of Ten Powers!" he stood there with his hands clasped and shedding tears. And the ship too, with the Great Bodhi placed upon it, even while the great King was looking on, sped over the surface of the great ocean. The waves of the mighty ocean became calm to the distance of a yojana all round, lotuses of the five colours blossomed, heavenly music resounded in the sky, and exceedingly splendid offerings were made from the sky by the tutelary divinities of the waters, the highlands, trees, and the like. The Elder(-nun) Saṅghamittā, in the guise of a supaṇṭā ² scared away hordes of Nāgas in the great ocean. Those Nāgas who were terrified came back again, and beholding its splendour begged of the Elder(-nun) and carried the Great Bodhi to the abode of the Nāgas, and for seven days [98] made an offering of the Nāga kingdom and placed it on the ship again. The same day the ship arrived at the port of Jambukola. And the great King Asoka who was overcome by the pangs of separation from the Great Bodhi, weeping and lamenting gazed on as long as it was within his range of vision and then turned back.

102. And the Great King Devānampiyatissa, acting in accordance with the words of the novice Sumana, beginning on the first day of the bright fortnight of the month of Maggasira, had the road from the northern gate to the port of Jambukola cleared and decorated; and on the day of setting
out from the city, as he stood on the site of the Samuddasālā ¹ situated near the northern gate, he saw by the supernatural power of the Elder, the Great Bodhi coming on the high seas in all its glory; and glad at heart he set out, causing the whole length of the road to be strewn with flowers of the five colours,² placing flower-altars at intervals: and arriving at the port of Jambukola on the same day he descended neck-deep into the water attended by his whole train of musicians and making offerings of flowers, incense, perfumes, and so on, and overcome with great joy that the Bodhi tree had indeed come sending forth a glow of glorious rays of the Lord of Ten Powers, he raised the Great Bodhi and setting it respectfully upon his head with great devotion and coming out of the sea accompanied by sixteen noble families ³ who had come in attendance upon the Great Bodhi, he placed the Great Bodhi on the sea-shore and for three days honoured it with the sovereignty of the whole Island of Tambapāṇī ⁴ and entrusted the duties of state to the sixteen families of noble birth.

Then on the fourth day, taking the Great Bodhi with him, making splendid offerings to it, he gradually reached Anurādhapura. At Anurādhapura too, he paid great homage to it, and on the fourteenth day, at eventide, the time when long shadows are cast, he made the Great Bodhi enter the city by the northern gate; and carrying it through the middle of the city, [99] he left through the southern gate and deposited the Great Bodhi at the gateway to the precincts of the Royal Grounds, a place situated 500 bow-lengths from the southern gate, where the ground had been first prepared at the request of the novice Sumana and had become the symbol of beauty to the pleasure park within the Mahāmegha Pleasure-grove, and where our Enlightened One once sat in the attainment of cessation, where the three previous Perfectly Enlightened Ones had sat while reaching the attainments, and where stood the Great Sirīsa Bodhi of the Exalted One Kakusandha, the Udumbara Bodhi of the Exalted One Koṇāgamana, and the Nigrodha Bodhi of the Perfectly Enlightened One Kassapa. How? The members of these sixteen noble families who came in attendance upon the Bodhi took upon themselves the duties of state. The King stationed himself as the gate-keeper. The
Inception of Discipline

sixteen families took the Great Bodhi and reverentially placed it on the ground. Scarcely had the Great Bodhi been released from their hands than it rose into the sky to a height of eighty cubits and emitted the six-hued rays. The magnificent rays spread over the entire Island and penetrated as far as the world of Brahma above.

103. Ten thousand people with faith kindled at the sight of the miracle performed by the Great Bodhi developed insight in gradual order, gained arahatship, and entered the Order. Until sunset the Great Bodhi remained in the sky; after sunset it established itself upon the earth, under the asterism of Rohini. With the establishing of the Bodhi, the great earth shook to its ocean-limits. Once it had established itself, the Great Bodhi, for seven days, remained enclosed within a bank of snowy clouds hidden to the view of the people. On the seventh day the sky was clear of clouds. The six-hued rays flashed radiant and dazzling. The trunk of the Great Bodhi, the branches and [100] the five fruits were visible.

The Elder Mahinda, the Elder(-nun) Saṅghamittā, and the King, accompanied by their retinues, went to the place of the Great Bodhi. Inhabitants from all parts of the Island gathered there in large numbers. Even while they were looking on, one fruit on the northern branch ripened and fell from the branch. The Elder held out his hand and the fruit came to rest on his hand. The Elder gave it to the King saying, "Plant it, Great King." The King accepted it; and scattering scented earth in a golden vase and filling it with perfumed muddy-soil, he planted it and placed it near the Great Bodhi. Even while every one was looking, eight Bodhi-tree saplings four cubits high sprang up. Seeing this wondrous happening the King made an offering of his white parasol of state to the young Bodhi-trees and consecrated them. They planted one of these Bodhi-trees at the port of Jambukola in the place where the Great Bodhi had been set down at the time of its arrival, one at the entrance to the village of the brahmin Tavakka, one at the Thūpārāma, one at the Issaranimmaṇa Monastery, one at the place of the Paṭhamacetiya, one at Cetiya(pabbata), one at Kācaragāma in the province of Rohaṇa, and the eighth at
Candanagāma likewise in the province of Rohaṇa. From the seeds of the remaining four fruits they planted thirty-two Bodhi saplings in āramas situated at intervals of a yojana from one another.

When the Great Bodhi of the Lord of Ten Powers, which was like a banner of the Dhamma, was thus established for the benefit and well-being of inhabitants throughout the Island for generations from son to grandson, the Princess Anulā together with a thousand womenfolk consisting of 500 maidens and 500 ladies of the court entered the Order under the Elder(-nun) Saṅghamittā, and before long, together with her followers, gained arahatship. The King’s nephew Ariṭṭha too, together with 500 men entered the Order under the Elder, and before long, together with his followers attained arahatship.

104. Then one day, the King, when he had venerated the Great Bodhi, was going on his way to the Thūpārāma with the Elder. When he reached the place where the Lohapāśāda was to stand, people brought him flowers. The King gave the flowers to the Elder. The Elder honoured the site of the Lohapāśāda with flowers. No sooner did the flowers fall on the ground than there was a great earthquake. The King asked, “Wherefore, Sir, did the earth tremble?”

“In this place, Great King, in the future, there will arise an uposatha hall for the Saṅgha. This is the prognostication of it.”

Continuing his journey with the Elder, the King reached a place called the Ambaṅgaṇa where a mellow, sweet-smelling, and succulent ripe mango of exceedingly delightful taste was brought to him. The King offered it to the Elder so that he might partake of it. Then and there, the Elder ate it and said, “Have this planted just here.” The King took the mango stone and having had it planted in that very place, sprinkled water over it. Simultaneously with the planting of the mango-seed the earth shook. The King asked, “Wherefore, Sir, did the earth tremble?”

“In this place, Great King, in the future, there will be a place of assembly for the Saṅgha named Ambaṅgaṇa. This is the prognostication of it.”

The King scattered eight handfuls of flowers there and
venerated (the place); and continuing his journey with the Elder arrived at the place of the Mahācetiya. Champak flowers were brought to him there, and these the King gave to the Elder. The Elder honoured the site of the Mahācetiya with the flowers and paid homage, and immediately the great earth shook. The King asked, "Wherefore, Sir, did the earth tremble?"

"In this place, Great King, in the future, a unique and mighty thūpa will be erected in honour of the Buddha, the Exalted One. This is a prognostication of it."

"I myself will build it, Sir."

"Not so, Great King, you have much work other than this, but your descendant, the King named Duṭṭhagāmanī Abhaya, will have it erected.

105. The King then replied, "If my descendant, Sir, will build it, it is as good as done by me," and he had a stone pillar twelve cubits high brought to him, and having the words, "Let Duṭṭhagāmanī Abhaya, the descendant of Devānampiyatissa, build a thūpa at this spot," inscribed, he set it up there, venerated the place and asked the Elder, "Is the Dispensation, Sir, now established in the Island of Tambapanni?"

"The Dispensation, Great King, is established, but its roots have not yet descended deep."

"When, Sir, will the roots have descended?"

"When, Great King, a youth born in the Island of Tambapanni, of parents belonging to the Island of Tambapanni, enters the Order in the Island of Tambapanni, learns the Vinaya in the Island of Tambapanni itself and teaches it in the Island of Tambapanni, then indeed, will the roots of the Dispensation have descended." ¹

"But, is there, Sir, such a monk?"

"There is, Great King, the monk named Mahā-Ariṭṭha who is capable of carrying out this task."

"What, Sir, should be done by me in this matter?"

"Great King, it behoves you to build a pavilion."

"So be it," said the King, and at the spot where Meghavaṇṇabhaya the minister was to build a parivena,² by means of his royal powers, he caused the erection of a pavilion resembling that built by the great King Ajātasattu at the time
of the Great Convocation; and engaging a complete orchestra, each one to display his own art, he arrived at the Thūpārāma surrounded by many thousands of men, thinking, "I will see the roots of the Dispensation descend."

106. And at this time 68,000 monks assembled at the Thūpārāma. A seat facing the south was made ready for the Great Elder Mahinda, [108] and the preacher’s seat facing the north was prepared for the Elder Mahā-Ariṭṭha. Thereupon the Elder Mahā-Ariṭṭha, requested by the Elder Mahinda, sat in the preacher’s seat which he deserved for his merit and assigned to him by order of precedence. The sixty-eight great Elders with the Elder Mahinda at the head sat down around the preacher’s seat. The Elder Mattābhaya, the King’s younger brother, taking the rôle of the chief in office 1 and thinking of learning the Vinaya sat down with 500 monks, likewise, surrounding the preacher’s seat of the Elder Mahā-Ariṭṭha. The remaining monks, and the people together with the King sat down in the seats that each one of them was assigned. Thereupon, the Elder Mahā-Ariṭṭha preached the occasion of the Vinaya with the words, 2 "And at that time the Buddha, the Exalted One was living at Veraṇjā at the foot of the Nalerupucimanda.” When the occasion of the Vinaya was preached by the venerable Elder Ariṭṭha the sky resounded with loud peals of thunder, lightning flashed out of season, the deities shouted applause and the great earth shook to the ocean-limits. Whilst many wondrous happenings were thus taking place, on the Invitation day, the first day of the month of Kattikā, within the precincts of the Thūpārāma Monastery the Venerable Ariṭṭha, surrounded by sixty-eight great Elders who were canker-waned and were each a leader of a group, with the great Elder Mahinda at their head, and also surrounded by 68,000 other monks, proclaimed the Vinaya Piṭaka which reveals the Teacher’s quality of benevolence and dispels the bodily and verbal transgressions of those who act in accordance with the admonition of the Teacher. He preached it and remaining till the end of his life, he taught it to many and established it in the hearts of many and passed away in the element of perfect Nibbāna with no material substrate
remaining. And they indeed, in that assembly with the Great Mahinda at their head:

[104] The sixty-eight great Elders, disciples of the King of the Dhamma, each one the leader of a separate group, who had reached pre-eminence were gathered together.

They who had destroyed their cankers, gained mastery over themselves, were endowed with the threefold higher knowledge, skilled in psychic phenomena, and had realized the highest end gave admonition to the King.

Showing him the light and illuminating this earth, the great sages flamed forth like columns of fire and were extinguished.

After their passing away in perfect Nibbāna, others too, the pupils of those Elders, Tissadatta, Kālasumana, Dighasumana, and others as well as the co-resident-pupils of the Elder Mahā-Ariṭṭha and the co-resident pupils of those co-resident pupils—the successive generation of teachers thus mentioned above,3 have handed down this Vinaya Pitaka to the present day.4 Therefore it is said: Starting from the time of the Third Convocation, it was first brought to this Island by Mahinda and others; learning it under Mahinda it was, for a short period, handed down by the Elder Ariṭṭha and others, and from that time to the present day it was handed down by the succession of teachers who were their successive generations of co-resident pupils.

107. Where was it established? It should be known that it was established among individuals who were intent on training and were endowed with great mindfulness, courage, and endeavour, were modest and scrupulous, by whom it is retained to perfection both as regards the text and as regards its meaning, like oil poured into a crystal vessel, even a drop of which does not flow out. Therefore, in order to establish the Vinaya, a monk who is intent on training should consider the advantages arising from the learning of the Vinaya and the complete study of the Vinaya. Here are the advantages arising from learning the Vinaya: A person who is proficient in Vinaya-learning stands in the relationship of a father or mother to clansmen who have gained faith in the Dispensation; for on
them depend their ordination and higher ordination, the discharge of the major and minor obligations and their skill in good conduct and resort (for alms). Besides, on account of his Vinaya-learning his code of moral precepts will be well guarded and protected, he becomes an arbiter to those who by nature are scrupulous, he goes about amidst the assembly of monks with confidence and checks firmly his adversaries in accordance with the Dhamma. [105] He is faring along for the persistence of the Good Teaching. Therefore has the Exalted One said 2: "These O monks, are the five advantages accruing to a person adept in the Vinaya: His own code of moral precepts is well guarded and protected and so on and finally he is faring along for the persistence of the Good Teaching." And besides, whatever good qualities which have restraint as their basis that have been declared by the Exalted One, a person adept in the Vinaya is heir to them, on account of the fact that these qualities are based on the Vinaya. And so it has been declared by the Exalted One 3: "Vinaya leads to restraint and restraint to absence of remorse, the absence of remorse leads to delight, and delight to joy, joy leads to impassibility and impassibility to ease, ease leads to concentration and concentration to knowledge and insight with correct perspective, knowledge and insight with correct perspective leads to revulsion and revulsion to detachment, detachment leads to emancipation, emancipation to knowledge and insight into emancipation, knowledge and insight into emancipation leads to perfect Nibbāna free from the material substrata. Discussion, deliberation, intensive study and lending attentive ear are for this purpose, namely, the emancipation of mind without the material substrata." Therefore, one should strive hard for learning the Vinaya.

In so far as whatever tabulation has been laid down for the purpose of the exposition of the Vinaya, therein as 4:

By whom it was said, when, for what reason, held by whom, handed down by whom, where it was established: having thus explained this procedure, the meaning of the above stanza has been so far explained. The account of the External Story connected with the Vinaya has been fully explained as intended.

Here ends the Account of the External Story.
**LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS**

The Pali Texts referred to are the editions of the Pali Text Society. The references to the text and translation of this edition are by paragraph numbers and when the P.T.S. edition is referred to, the page number is followed by the letters P.T.S.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>Aṅguttara Nikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA.</td>
<td>Aṅguttara Nikāya Aṭṭhakathā (Manorathapūraṇī)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGI</td>
<td>Cunningham’s Ancient Geography of India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASC</td>
<td>Archaeological Survey of Ceylon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bdgh.</td>
<td>Buddhaghosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BI</td>
<td>Buddhist India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJSc</td>
<td>The Ceylon Journal of Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cp.</td>
<td>Cariyāpiṭaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cvg.</td>
<td>Cullavagga Vinaya (Vin. ii)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Dīgha Nikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA.</td>
<td>Dīgha Nikāya Aṭṭhakathā, see Sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desid.</td>
<td>desiderative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dh.</td>
<td>Dhammapada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DhA.</td>
<td>Dhammapada Aṭṭhakathā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhs.</td>
<td>Dhammasaṅgaṇī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DhsA.</td>
<td>Dhammasaṅgaṇī Aṭṭhakathā (Althasālinī)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPPN</td>
<td>The Dictionary of Pali Proper Names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dpv.</td>
<td>Dīpavamsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divy.</td>
<td>Divyāvadāna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EHBC</td>
<td>The Early History of Buddhism in Ceylon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It.</td>
<td>Itivuttaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JA.</td>
<td>Jātaka Aṭṭhakathā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JCBRAS</td>
<td>Journal of the Ceylon Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPTS</td>
<td>Journal of the Pali Text Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kh.</td>
<td>Khuddakapāṭha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KhA.</td>
<td>Khuddakapāṭha Aṭṭhakathā (Paramatthajotikā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kv.</td>
<td>Kathāvatthu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>Majjhima Nikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MA.</td>
<td>Majjhima Nikāya Aṭṭhakathā (Papañcasūdāni)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mhv.</td>
<td>Mahāvamsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mvg.</td>
<td>Mahāvagga Vinaya (Vin. i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miln.</td>
<td>Milinda Pañha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pj.</td>
<td>Paramatthajotikā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLC</td>
<td>The Pali Literature of Ceylon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTS</td>
<td>The Pali Text Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.T.S.</td>
<td>The Pali Text Society’s Pali–English Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pv.</td>
<td>Petavattthu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.</td>
<td>Samyutta Nikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA.</td>
<td>Saṃyutta Nikāya Aṭṭhakathā (Sāratthappakāsinī)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBB</td>
<td>Sacred Books of the Buddhists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBE</td>
<td>Sacred Books of the East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinh.</td>
<td>Sinhalese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smp.</td>
<td>Samantapāśādikā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn.</td>
<td>Sutta Nipāta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnA.</td>
<td>Sutta Nipāta Aṭṭhakathā (Paramatthajotikā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>st.</td>
<td>stanza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subst.</td>
<td>substantive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum.</td>
<td>Sumañgalavilāsni, see DA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th. 1</td>
<td>Theragāthā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Th. 2</td>
<td>Therīgāthā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thūp.</td>
<td>Thūpavamsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCR</td>
<td>The University of Ceylon Review</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES TO THE TRANSLATION

[The references to Smp. in these notes are by paragraph numbers.]

1. Pubbâcariyā were the exponents of the Vinaya who preceded Bdhgh. and for whom he had the highest regard. The reference here may be to the succession of teachers commencing with Upāli (Smp. 63) and the other early teachers of Ceylon whose tradition remained unbroken up to the time of Bdhgh. (cp. ajjāpi tu abbhocchinno pubbâcariya-vinicchayo—Pj. i, 11). The Poranā, often quoted in Smp., the Sihala-aṭṭhakathā (st. 10 ff.) and the Tradition of the Elders (st. 11) are evidently to be included among the pubbâcariyā. See EHBC, 21 ff., and PLC, 92, n. 1.

2. The highest claims are made exclusively for the Vinaya in Smp., but not in Vinaya Cullavagga, xi; cp. vinayo nāma sāsanassa āyu, vinaye thite sāsanam thitam hoti. "The Vinaya is the very life of the Dispensation of the Enlightened One, so long as the Vinaya endures, the Dispensation endures"; vide Smp. 3, 13. This affords a contrast to the Buddha's own statement which makes no distinction between the Dhamma and the Vinaya in this respect: Yo vo Ānanda mayā dhammo ca vinayo ca desito paññatato so vo mam'acayena satthā. "O Ānanda, the Doctrine and the Discipline I have declared to you and laid down before you (respectively) that it will be your Teacher after my demise" (D. ii, 154, also quoted at Smp. 3). This, however, is preceded by the statement "As long as the Dhamma and the Vinaya endure so long will the Sacred-word be such that its Teacher has not passed into oblivion."

3. Lit. "The Great Minster," the seat of Theravāda Buddhism in Ceylon, s.v. DPPN. Also see C. W. Nicholas, JCBRAS, New Series, vi, The Historical Topography of Ancient and Medieval Ceylon, pp. 129 ff.

4. The allusion is to the Sihala-aṭṭhakathā, traditionally ascribed to Mahinda, which went out of use after the writing of the Pali Commentaries. The most important of these are mentioned in the next stanza in their order of importance, while there were others like the Andhaka, Sāṅkhēpa, and Vinaya Aṭṭhakathā in addition to several others of lesser importance dealing with various sections of the Canon. The Mahā Aṭṭhakathā is also called the Mūla Aṭṭhakathā, "The Basic Commentary"; while the Andhaka, probably originating from the Andhra Country in the Deccan, is generally cited to point out its erroneous interpretations. Vide PLC, 91 ff., EHBC, 10 ff., s.v. DPPN.

5. The colophon of the Smp. says that Bdhgh. studied the three Sinhalese Commentaries, Mahā Aṭṭhakathā, Mahāpaccariya, and Kurundī under an Elder called Buddhamiṣṭa (Smp. 1415, P. T. S. ed.), who is to be identified as the above. The first part of Buddhamiṣṭa's name is evidently used with the honorific suffix -siri; cp. the Pali usage in Kaṇha-sirivihaya for Asita—Sn. 689, Jambusirivihaya dipa for Jambudipa—Smp. 35. Buddhamiṣṭa may have found Bdhgh. to be an excellent pupil when he taught him the Sihala-aṭṭhakathā so that he was compelled to make this special request of him. This type of request by a senior Elder or a veteran scholar is a special feature of the literary tradition of Ceylon and may be but an expression of a mere formality.


7. Lit. "The Great Raft", so called because it is said to have been compiled on a raft; vide EHBC, 12.
Inception of Discipline

8 So named as it was compiled at Kurundivelu Vihāra in Ceylon; vide PLC, 92; EHBC, 12. Mhv. xlii, 15, refers to a Kurunda Monastery in Aggabodhi I's reign, and it may probably be the same, but different from Kurundavāsoka Vihāra built by Kallāṭanāga; Mhv. xxxiii, 32, S.v., DPPN.

9 The Theravāda (as opposed to the Ācariyavāda, "The Tradition of the Teachers," i.e. heresy), was held in high esteem and was the absolute authority. See st. 14. It traces its ācariyaparampara, "Succession of Teachers" to Upāli, the first of the Vinayadharas. See Smp. 63.

10 The Sakyaputtīyā samaṇā, "Ascetics of the Sakyān Order"; i.e. the Saṅgha.

11 This may even include the commentaries of Canonical antiquity such as the Nīdesas, etc., but essentially the works recognized as Commentaries extant in Bdhgh.'s day are meant here. Bdhgh. generously dismisses the wrong interpretations as clerical errors—pāmādalekha.

12 Sikkhā also may refer to the sikkhāpādāni, the precepts embodied in the Vinaya Code.

13 i.e. different from the language of the Texts.

14 The terms suttta and suttanta are used indiscriminately as may be seen from this stanza and Smp. 30. The longer suttas, however, are usually given the name suttanta, and often the term sutta refers to a type of discourse as given in the Navanga division, (Smp. 31), while generally speaking, individual suttas and groups of suttas are called suttantas. The teachers versed in the suttas, i.e. implying the Sutta Piṭaka, are called Suttantikā.

2. 1 i.e. Tena samayena Buddhno bhagavā Verañjāyaṃ viharati. See Smp. 2, n. 2.

2 The opening words of Pārājikapāli, Vin. iii, 1.

3 Vin. ii, 284 ff.

3. 1 The Sinhalese month of Vesak. See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 2, n. 3.

2 The Malla Country was divided into two separate provinces with capitals at Kusināra and Pāvā respectively, situated not very far from each other, and the two branches of Mallas were looked upon as two distinct groups. They were separate claimants to Buddha's relics—D. ii, 165. Malla, though small, was included in the sixteen Mahājana-padas. See also Rhys Davids, BI, 26; Cunningham's Ancient Geography of India (AGI), 493 ff., 497 ff., 712.

3 Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta, Vin. i, 10 ff., S.v, 420 ff.

4 The last disciple converted by the Buddha shortly before the Parinibbāna, D. ii, 148 ff.

5 See Mhv. Tīkā i, 142, for explanation.

6 Better known as Buddhāpabbajita and different from the earlier Subhadda.

7 D. ii, 162; Vin. ii, 284.

8 Not at Vin. ii, XI.

9 D. ii, 154.

10 S. ii, 221.

11 See also Etadaggapāli A. i, 23 ff., where he is described as the highest among those disciples of the Buddha who inculcate punctiliousness.

12 The six branches of higher knowledge or supernormal insight are enumerated at D. iii, 281, and elsewhere in the Canon as:

iddhividdhi: psychic powers,
dibbasota: clairaudience,
cetopariyāna: knowledge of others' thoughts,
pubbe nivāsānussati: recollection of past lives,
dibbacakkhu: divine eye,
āsavakkhayañāna: knowledge leading to the destruction of the fluxes.
4. 1 This and the subsequent quotations are from the Vinaya Cullavagga account of the First Council; Vin. ii, 284 ff.
2 This refers to the section commencing with para. 2 at Vin. ii, 284.
3 ibid., 285, para. 1.
4 The traditional explanation of pure here is “before” and not “formerly”; and the trsl. then should read: Let us, friends, rehearse the Dhamma and the Vinaya before what is contrary to the Dhamma and the Vinaya shine forth and the Dhamma and the Vinaya are disregarded, before those who hold views contrary to the Dhamma and the Vinaya hold sway while those who profess the Dhamma and the Vinaya become powerless. See also Vin. ii, trsl. (The Book of the Discipline, 5; SBB xx, p. 394), which agrees with the traditional interpretation. To my mind pure here is a simple adverb of time meaning “in the past”; and besides, pure ... dippati and pure ... paṭibāḥfyati look more like the historic present rather than having the conditional meaning as forced by the traditional interpretation. Smp. is silent on this.
5 Their awakening of wisdom is spontaneous; cp. añña ārādhīta mayā, etc., and the spontaneous utterances of Theras and Therīs in Th. 1 and Th. 2. Khūṇāsavas are of two categories: sukkhavipassaka and samatha-yānikā. The latter category develop jhānapādakāviḍāsāna making use of the jhānas as a basis for the attainment of analytic insight whereas the former can dispense with the jhānas.
6 Vide Etadaggapāli, A. i, 23 ff.
7 Vin. ii, 285.

5. 1 A sekha (subst. from sikkhati, desid. of root śak “to be able”) is a trainee on the path to Arahatship, i.e. he is one among the first seven categories of the āṭṭha ariyapuggalā; an asekha is one who requires no further training as he has become an Arahant. He is described as katakicca, as opposed to sa-karanēya, “one whose task is yet unaccomplished.”
2 Sutta and Geyya are the first two āṅgas in the Navaṅga division explained at Smp. 31.
3 Vin. ii, 285.
4 These are the four agati, the wrong courses of action.

2 Capital of Magadha, s.v., DPPN, vide Rhys Davids, BI, 36 f. Cunningham, AGI, 535.
3 The observance of the Vassa was an institution common to all ascetic sects in India. The rainy months from Asāḷīhi to Kattikā (see Geiger, Mhv. trsl., 2, n. 3) were spent in quiet contemplation in peaceful surroundings. See Vin. i, 137 ff. The Book of the Discipline 4, SBB xiv; Dutt, Early Buddhist Monachism. See also Smp. 7, n. 2.
4 When the subject is of a more important nature it becomes ṣatti-catutthu, where the ṣatti gains formal ratification after the resolution has been passed thrice by unanimous assent.
5 See Vin. ii, 285: Atha kho āyasā Mahākassapo saṅghaṁ ānepesi ... etc. dealing with the First Council.

7. 1 i.e. to pay homage to the remains of the Tathāgata and perform the ceremonies connected with the cremation and other funeral obsequies.
Two days are prescribed for the vassūpanāyika: (1) purimikā, the day after the Ásāḥī full moon, and (2) pacchimikā, a lunar month later; Vin. i, 137. Here the former is meant, i.e. exactly two months after the Parinibbāna.

8. 1 Capital of Kosala, s.v., DPPN, vide BI, 25, 40; AGI, 467 ff.
2 His love for the Tathāgata prompted Ānanda to visit His residence which he left together with the Buddha when He undertook His last memorable journey.
3 Ānanda himself was quite advanced in years, and the lack of his normal exercise when he personally attended on the Buddha may have affected his health.
4 The name of the messenger was Todeyyaputta: vide Subha Sutta, D. i, 204 ff.
5 D. i, 204–210.

9. 1 Vin. ii, 286. The details that precede this paragraph are not found in the Cullavagga account.

10. 1 The Sattapāṇi Cave named after a sattapāṇi tree (Aristonia scholaris) growing nearby, was situated on the slope of Vehbāra Hill, one of the five main peaks on the range of mountains skirting the hill-girt city of Rājagaha. See AGI, 531, where Cunningham identifies it as the present Son Bhāṇḍār Cave, s.v., DPPN.
3 Lakkhi or Lacchlī, Skr. Lākṣmī, the goddess of Prosperity; Dowson, ibid., s.v. Lākṣmī.
4 The highest god of the Hindu pantheon; Dowson, ibid., s.v.
5 Prescribed by the Vinaya as permissible.

11. 1 Vin. ii, 286, para. 2.
2 D. ii, 144.
3 Not in Vin. ii, XI; cp. the parable of the lute, Vin. i, 182.

12. 1 There are various accretions in subsequent texts regarding this incident. The Chinese sources have greatly enlarged the story, while some of the bhāṇakas say that it was through the key-hole that Ānanda came in! See Mhv. iii, 29 (and Ṭīkā, i, 148), Jotipathena vā.

13. 1 See Smp. 1, n. 2. Even as early as the time of the finalizing of the Cullavagga account of the Council, the Vinaya appears to have been considered more important than the Dhamma though it is not explicitly stated there. This seems to be a special development in the Theravāda with its emphasis on paṭipatti, and whenever pariyatti gains precedence over paṭipatti, a period of decay in the Sāsana is generally reflected as may be seen from its subsequent history in Ceylon. Vide W. Rahula, History of Buddhism in Ceylon, 158 ff.
2 This apparently is different from dhuraggāha, Smp. 106, n. 1; cp. Mhv. iii, 30 (Ṭīkā, i, 148), dhurandhare.
3 A. i, 25.
4 Vin. ii, 286, para. 3.
5 Mahākassapa uses the appellative āvuso, “friends,” as he is the most senior Elder, while Upāli, though himself a very senior Elder, addresses the assembly as bhante, “Sirs,” as there were others senior to him present.
6 Not at Vin. ii, XI.
Notes to the Translation

14. 1 Vin. ii, 286, para. 3.
   2 See Vin. iii, 1 ff. Lit. Loss or Defeat; the four grave offences which merit immediate expulsion from the Order are enumerated in the uddāna verse at the end of the Pārājikakāṇḍa at Vin. iii, 109, as:
   Methunādinnadāna ca manusaviggha‘uttari
   pārājikāni cattāri chejjavatthu asaṃsaya:
   "Sexual intercourse, thieving, murder, and false claims to transcendental attainments are the four Defeats which undoubtedly lead to expulsion."
   3 Vesāli, the capital of the Vajjian Confederacy, a city of considerable importance to be reckoned among the six great cities. See Mahāparinibbāna Sutta, D. ii, 146. Also vide BI, 40; AGI, 507 ff.; s. v., DPPN.
   4 Vin. iii, 11 ff.
   5 Vide E. J. Thomas, History of Buddhist Thought, 16 ff., for a brief introduction to the Vinaya rules mentioned here. All of them are dealt with in the Sutta Vibhaṅga, Vin. iii, iv. See also I. B. Horner, Book of the Discipline I (SBB, x), Introduction.
   6 These rules are appended at the end of the Bhikkhuṇī Vibhaṅga and form a part of the Pācittiya-pālī; Vin. iv, 211 ff.
   7 The Mahā Vibhaṅga or Bhikkhu Vibhaṅga and Bhikkhuṇī Vibhaṅga together comprising Pārājika and Pācittiya, the Mahāvagga and Culla-vagga forming the Khandhaka and lastly the Parivāra.

15. 1 Vin. ii, 287.
   2 Not at Vin. ii, XI.
   3 From here again at Vin. ii, 287.
   4 D. i, 1 ff.
   5 Situated to the north of Rājagaha one yojana away. The ruins of the subsequent Buddhist University destroyed during the Moslem invasions are now excavated and preserved. See AGI, 536 ff.
   6 Vin. ii omits this question and answer.
   7 D. i, 47 ff.
   8 There is nothing in common with the Cullavagga account after this except Smp. 18.
   9 Here is an attempt to include the Abhidhamma Piṭaka under the Dhamma rehearsed by Ananda at the First Council. The account here repeats the words of Vin. ii, XI, but attempts to read a new meaning into the term Dhamma. Perhaps the special division of the entire teaching of the Buddha into five Nikāyas (Smp. 30) defining the Khuddaka Nikāya as: "The rest of the sayings of the Buddha including the entire Vinaya Piṭaka, the Abhidhamma Piṭaka, the fifteen divisions commencing with Khuddakapāṭha enumerated earlier (Smp. 20) leaving aside the four Nikāyas;" was intended to include the Abhidhamma Piṭaka under Dhamma. Bdgh. specifically states that Upāli explained the Vinaya found in the Khuddaka Nikāya and Ananda, the remaining sections of the Khuddaka Nikāya, and therefore necessarily including the Abhidhamma. This division has some historical basis, but where the Pali tradition is concerned it completely went out of use in due course, though some schools of the Sarvāstivādī group refer to the Khuddaka as a miscellaneous Piṭaka (not a Nikāya) giving it more or less the status of the Vinaya Piṭaka or the Abhidhamma Piṭaka, while they insist on the division of the Sutta into four Āgamas and not five. Elsewhere Bdgh. recognizes the tradition of the Four Āgamas (Sum. i, 2 st.) which is also reflected in Dvp. iv, 16:
   Vaggapaññasakam nāma saṃyuttan ca nipātakam
   āgama-piṭaka-kam nāma akāṃsau suttasammatam:
   "(They divided into) Vaggas (groups—D.), Paññāsakas (groups of fifties—M.), Saṃyuttas (kindred topics—S.), and Nipātas (sections—A.) and compiled the Piṭaka of Āgamas designated as Sutta." Perhaps here too,
he unwittingly reproduces the tradition in which the Khuddaka has no real status.

16. 1 cp. Ud. 56.

18. 1 This explanation too makes room for the inclusion of the Abhidhamma Piṭaka under Dhamma.
2 Somewhat parallel to the statement at Vin. ii, 285, but not identical. See Sm. 4.

19. 1 Dh. 153-4 ; cp. Th. 1, 183cd-4c.
2 Vin. i, 2, also Ud. 1.
3 D. ii, 156.

20. 1 Bdgh., on the one hand, recognizes that many sayings of the Buddha had escaped the attention of the Saṅgītikārakas, and, on the other, that many additions to the collections were made at a date subsequent to that of the Council.
2 Here the extant Khuddaka collection is given with no reference to the statement at Sm. 30: What is the Khuddakanikāya? The rest of the sayings of the Buddha including the entire Vinaya Piṭaka, the Abhidhamma Piṭaka, and the fifteen divisions commencing with the Khuddakapāṭha enumerated earlier, leaving aside the four Nikāyas. The Dīghabhaṅgās, however, include the Khuddaka Nikāya under the Abhidhamma. The whole problem has been carefully analysed by J. Dhīrasekera in UCR, xv, 3-4, in his paper: Buddhaghosa and the Tradition of the First Council.

2 Enumerated earlier at Sm. 14.
3 The tabulated summary of Vinaya rules.
4 i.e. additional enactments or supplementary rules.

23. 1 S.v, 80: Bojjhanga Sutta.
2 M. i, 20: Bhayabherava Sutta.
3 Sn. 553c; Sela Sutta.
4 Vin. i, 68; cp. Vin. i, 64; D. iii, 267; M. i, 472.
5 Vv. i, 9, 1.
6 Dhs. 97.
7 D. ii, 186.
8 Dhs. 27.
9 cp. Dhs. 184.
10 Dhs. 17; 23.
11 cp. Dhs. 185; 225.

24. 1 A. i, 189: Kāláma Sutta.
2 M. i, 127; Kakacūpama Sutta.
3 Threefold training (tisso sikkhā), threefold avoidance (tīṇi pahānāni) and fourfold profundity (catubbidho gambhirabhāvo) are discussed below at Sm. 26.

25. 1 The cpd. samvarāsamvara = saṃvara + saṃvara, like phalāphala.
2 Vide D. i, 12 ff. and trsl. (Dialogues of the Buddha, i, SBB). A brief summary of the sixty-two views is found in E. J. Thomas’ History of Buddhist Thought, 74 ff. Also see B. M. Barua, Pre-Buddhistic Systems of Indian Philosophy.

26. 1 This is different from Catupaṭisambhidā, the fourfold analytic insight discussed at Sm. 29.

27. 1 Vibh. 294 ff.
2 Vibh. 294 ff.
Notes to the Translation

28. 1 M. i, 133 f.; Alagaddūpama Sutta.
     2 The division into nine Āgās is enumerated here. See explanation
        at Smp. 31.
     3 M. i, 134.

29. 1 Vin. iv, 170 ff.
     2 M. i, 130: Alagaddūpama Sutta.
     3 A. ii, 85 ff.
     4 M. i, 133.
     5 A. ii, 80.

30. 1 S. iii, 137.
     2 At Smp. 20.
     3 See Smp. 15, n. 9.

31. 1 All these are given as examples of Sutta, as representative of a type
     of discourse coming under this particular description. They cannot be
     classified under a precise division as pīṭaka, nikāyas, vagga, khandhaka,
     or bhaṇavāra. The texts mentioned here are (1) Vin. iii, iv; (2) Culla
     and Mahā Niddeśas forming the eleventh book of the Khuddaka Nikāya
     (according to the Ceylon division); (3) Vin. i, ii; (4) Vin. v; (5) Sutta.
     Notes Nos. 16, 13, 37, and 52 respectively, representing no uniform class of
     teaching except that the entire Vināya Piṭaka is included. The better
     known suttantas of the Dīgha and Majjhima Nikāyas find no mention
     here, though individual pieces from a "Nipāta of Suttas" (Sn.) are
     included here. Judging from these examples and those that follow for
     the other eight Āgās, it appears that the real significance of the early
     Nāṇa Division, whose existence is echoed even in the words of the
     Tathāgata (M. i, 133; A. ii, 103, etc.) has been lost by the time Bdhgh.
     began to record the Theravāda commentarial tradition. The more precise
     division into Piṭakas and other subdivisions has ousted all the other
     divisions and classifications.
     2 The opening chapter of S. Geyya (from root gai "to sing"), judging
     from the explanation given here, seems to represent the "ākhyānas" with
     narrative prose. Unless there is an early confusion as to what geyya should be,
     the explanation here seems to be highly inadequate. If some discrimination is made against
     the narrative prose, restricting Canonical status to the stanzas only,
     there is some justification for the explanation.
     3 The phrase, "not included in the other eight Āgās," further points
     to the Commentator's lack of familiarity with this ninefold classification.
     4 There is perfect justification for Dīgha, Th. 1, and Th. 2 to be designated
     as gāthā, but the criterion for judging whether a particular piece in Sn.
     is sutta or gāthā is highly nebulous, except perhaps if Bdhgh. is taken
     very literally, when the Vattthagāthā of Nālaka and Rāhula Suttas and
     the whole of the Pāṇḍaya Vagga together with the Vattthagāthā and
     the epilogue are alone considered as gāthā. This appears to be highly
     unsatisfactory and is perhaps far from what Bdhgh. meant. There
     seems to be no clear line of demarcation between sutta and gāthā, except
     that prose is excluded from gāthā.
     5 The extant collections, perhaps unknown during the life-time of the
     Buddha, and probably finalized centuries later are conveniently identified
     with the Āgās bearing the same names. There are many udānas not
     only of the Buddha but also of his disciples and lay disciples, scattered
     all over the Pāli Canon outside this meagre collection of eighty-two
     suttantas. So also are the quotations from Buddha's words found repeated
     in other discourses often prefixed with the statement, "For it has been
     said . . ." (and sometimes with no such introduction), which have failed
     to find a place in the Itivuttaka collection of 112 suttantas.
As in the case of the Udāna and the Itivuttaka there is no justification for equating the Aṅga called Jātaka with the extant Jātakas numbering about 550 stories. Firstly, the stories themselves have no Canonical status, which is reserved for the Jātakapāli, the stanzas, only. Secondly, there is no reason why Jātakas of Canonical antiquity such as those incorporated in other suttantas, e.g. Kūtadanta and Mahāgovinda Suttas in D., should be excluded. The definition given here is highly arbitrary.

The example given here is not a suttanta by itself but a short discourse incorporated in the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta (D. ii, 145). Entire suttantas are hard to find though examples for abhutadhamma are plentiful in the Canon.

Two of the examples given have the title Vedalla and the explanation is based on the word veda which is very faithfully rendered as "wisdom" though one would rather prefer "ecstasy" or "exhilarating joy" for it; cp. vedajāta. It seems rather strange that the list of twelve Aṅgas at Mahāvyutpatti 62, has substituted Vedalla with Vaipulya. This is a clear indication that the Mahayanists had already lost the significance of the term and found it necessary to substitute it with a more familiar term. For the Theravādins, at least, the memory of the term remained, and by the time of the Commentarial epoch attempts were made to revive meanings of unfamiliar terms in the light of the then-current tradition. Hence a curious secondary derivative of veda (whether it be wisdom or ecstasy) is conceived of whereas even the method of subtle analysis found in the six suttas quoted as examples has not touched a familiar chord. To my mind vedalla means "subtle analysis" coming from an older vaidārya from vi and root āt to tear apart"; hence, "analyse or break down into fundamentals." Hence Vedalla should be rendered as "Analyses".

32. 1 Th. 1, 1024.

The fuller reading favoured by Burmese Texts: atthi antarāpatti, "there are secondary conditions of guilt," atthi āpatti, "there are the offences," atthi anāpatti, "there are the no-offences," makes better sense, but the pattern of the Vinaya rules in the Sutta Vibhaṅga to which the description applies, does not include āpatti here, whereas it is found along with the rule itself. After padabhājaniya comes antarāpatti followed by anāpatti.

The threefold category of offence pertaining to each ancillary Vinaya rule covered by antarāpatti is stated in the Vinaya; e.g. Pācittiya 36 on anatirittabhajana at Vin. iv, 84: Pavārite pavāritisānā ni anatirittena khaḍanflyena vā bojanflyena vā abhihaṭṭhum pavāreti āpatti pācittiya; pavārite vematik o ... āpatti dukkaṭassa; pavārite apavārita-sānā ḍ ... anāpatti. The tikapariccheda is to be seen in the three conditions pavāritisānā ni, vematiko, and apavāritisānā ni. This is the general pattern of the threefold delimiting factors or determining factors. Following the above rule is given the ancillary rule about yāmakkālika, etc., which is followed by apavārite pavāritisānā ni āpatti dukkaṭassa, apavārite vematiko āpatti dukkaṭassa, apavārite apavāritisānā ni anāpatti. Here too the tikapariccheda is observable. Next follow various conditions of anāpatti. Each of these categories comes under any one or more of the three dvāras, kāya, vač, and mano, and it is not necessary for all the three dvāras to function with regard to every offence.

34. 1 Vin. iii, 1.

35. 1 ibid.
36. **Co-resident pupil.** The two pairs of teacher-pupil relationship in Buddhist monastic life are (a) ācariya, "teacher" and antevāsika, "resident-pupil," and (b) upajjhāya, "preceptor" and saddhivihārika, "co-resident pupil." The terms ācariya and upajjhāya are explained later at Smp. 48. See also Vin. i, 44 ff.

38. 1 See the account of the Second Council at Vinaya Cullavagga XII (Vin. ii, 294 ff.). From here onwards the Smp. version, though it stops short with the episode of the bronze bowl is a slight expansion of the account in the Vinaya.

2 See Mhv. iv, 9 ff. and Ţīkā i, 156 f.

3 Uposatha (cp. Vedic upavasatha, the eve of the Soma sacrifice), the weekly sacred day even in pre-Buddhist times. Buddhists reckoned it from the phases of the moon, the new moon, the full moon, and each of the quarter moons. The day was generally set apart for expounding the Dhamma by the bhikkhus and for observing the uposatha vows by the laymen. The pātimokkha was recited by the monks on the new moon (cātuddaśī) and the full moon (paññarasī) during which every member present confessed to the transgressions he had committed. See Vin. i, 101 ff., I. B. Horner, The Book of the Discipline, 1 (SBB, xiv), Introduction, also s.v., PTS.

4 Simā, the limits of the parish defined at Vin. i, 106 ff. The bhikkhus living within a simā, usually delimited by a natural barrier, such as a forest, mountain range, or river, assembled together for their uposatha meetings and each group within this boundary was considered an independent unit. The special enclosure for any formal act of the Order is also called simā. See I. B. Horner, ibid.

5 Susunāga. See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xl ff., and the tables at xlii and xlv. See Mhv. iv, 1–8.

6 "A square copper coin weighing about 146 grains, and guaranteed as to weight and fitness by punch marks made by private individuals." Rhys Davids, BI, 100 ff.; Ancient Measures of Ceylon, Miln. trsl. i, 239; s.v., PTS.

7 A small coin of very low value (māsaka, lit. a little bean) made of copper, wood, or lac; DhA. i, 318; s.v., PTS.

8 The whole account at Vin. ii, 294 ff. is implied here and the sentence beginning with "At this rehearsal of the Vinaya . . ." bears a close resemblance to the concluding statement at Vin. ii, 307. Mhv. iv, 14 ff. continues the story in great detail.

9 At Vin. ii, XII.

10 See Vin. ii, 306 ff. The ten indulgences were pronounced unlawful by voting against them citing the Vinaya rules which were violated, thus: Sītiglonakappa involves the Pācittiya offence connected with the hoarding of food, Vin. iv, 86–7.

Dvāngulakappa involves the Pācittiya offence regarding the eating of food outside prescribed hours, Vin. iv, 85–6.

Gāmantarakappa involves the Pācittiya offence of eating a fresh meal again which is not the leavings of a meal, Vin. iv, 81–3.

Āvāsakappa involves a Dukkata offence of transgressing the Vinaya rule that two Uposatha halls within the same āvāsa cannot be permitted, Vin. i, 107.

Anumatikappa involves a Dukkata offence for transgressing the Vinaya rule on Vaggakamma, Vin. i, 318.

In Ācinnakappa, some precedents are accepted while others are not.

Amathitakappa involves the same Pācittiya offence as Gāmantaraka.
Jalogikappa involves a Pācittiya offence of indulging in spirits and liquors, Vin. iv, 108–110.
Adasaka-nisādana involves a Pācittiya offence pertaining to the use of rugs larger than those of prescribed dimensions, Vin. iv, 170–1.
Jātarūpapātīgāhana is a Nissaggiya-pācittiya offence involving the acceptance of gold and silver, Vin. iii, 236 ff.

11 The Cullavagga account ends with the judgment passed on the ten indulgences and refers to the whole Council as the Recital of the Vinaya at which 700 monks, neither less nor more were present; Vin. ii, 307. The First Council too is called a Recital of the Vinaya at Vin. ii, 292. There is no separate mention here of a rehearsal of the Dhamma and the Vinaya afresh, though this silence by itself provides no clue as to the proceedings of the Council after the ten indulgences were decided on. The concluding stanzas of Vin. ii are evidently later additions and the reference to the Rehearsal there has no bearing on the actual account.

12 Dpv. iv, 49cd–51, and Mhv. iv, 56 ff.

39. 1 The six deva worlds pertaining to the sensuous plane are enumerated as: Cātummahārājika, Tāvatīṃsa, Yāma, Tusita, Nimmānarati, and Paranīmitātavasavatti.

2 Lit. "take conception in."

3 "Sacred formulae," also "charms, hymns, incantations," etc. Vide Smp. 42.

40. 1 Lit. "passed away in Nibbāna," cp. khīnasnehapadīpā va, Smp. 38; nibbanti dhīrā yathāyaṃ padīpo, Sn. 235.

42. 1 This is the stereotyped formula describing the accomplishments of a learned brahmin, as explained at DA. i, 247, etc. by Bdhgh.

2 I.e. in his normal course of studies.

3 Yam. ii, 1.

43. 1 Kh. No. 3.

2 Evidently it is considered discourteous to mention one’s teacher’s name in his presence. As a rule, even at the present day, the teacher is never addressed by his name, nor is his name mentioned in his presence; cp. Miln. 14 f. for a similar instance. Also at Vin. i, 92, Ānanda refuses to mention Mahākassapa’s name on account of the esteem in which he held him, “guru me therō.”

44. 1 See Mhv. v, 19 ff. and Dpv. vii for parallels to Smp. 44–62. The tradition that he killed all his brothers but one is not supported by the edicts of Asoka which make reference to his brothers, e.g. RE, v. Also vide B. M. Barua, Asoka and his Inscriptions, i, 35 ff. The next statement regarding his consecration has confirmation in all the dated edicts of Asoka. P. H. L. Eggermont, The Chronology of the Reign of Asoka Moriya, 69 ff. has attempted to establish that Asoka underwent a second consecration after his conversion to Buddhism at the end of the vassa after the completion of the seventh year of his reign, i.e. eighth regnal year, in order to celebrate the event; ibid., 42, n. 3.

2 Vide Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xxii ff.; Eggermont, ibid., 4 ff.

3 Carrying poles.

4 Lake situated in the Himavat with ever cool water; an-ava-tap-ta, "never heated up."

5 PTS suggests that this is the same as the nāga-lātā-rakkha or nāgarukkha, "the iron-wood tree," out of which wood the Buddha’s tooth-stick was made, DhA. ii, 211. The description given above does not seem to agree with the rough, hard, and sap-free wood known as the iron-wood. Sinh. nā.
Notes to the Translation

6. The home of the "Six-tusked" (chad-danta) elephant, and one of the seven great lakes of the Himavat.

7. A wagon-load.

45. 1 s.v., DPPN.

2. See Lakkhaṇa Sutta, D. iii, 142 ff.

3. cp. the animisalo-canapūjā, JA, i, 77.

46. 1. The Brahmagiri Edict i, the Rūpnāth and Maski Edicts refer to his conversion and progress in the Sāsana, but they are themselves not dated by Asoka, unlike the majority of his other edicts. For reasons given by Hultzsch, Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum, xlv, Eggermont (ibid., 68) concludes: "So on the date of the Minor Rock Edicts there is only this certainty that they were engraved before the Rock Edicts, i.e. the annus ante quem of the Minor Rock Edicts is the 11th expired year of Asoka's reign. So the Minor Rock Inscriptions must have been engraved in the 10th year of Asoka's reign or before." Also vide ibid. 69 ff., 180 ff., for his full discussion on the date of Asoka's conversion and a summary of the chronology of Asoka's reign. Smp. is found to be in support of other evidence as regards the date of Asoka's conversion.

2. The balcony-window probably with a trellis work.

47. 1. Asoka's accession to the throne and Nigrodha's birth are more or less simultaneous, and on the evidence of Smp., Asoka's conversion took place in the eighth year of his reign. Northern Buddhist accounts state that it was the Elder Upagupta who converted Asoka.

2. Lit. a hall, Mhv. v, 42, has gharakam.

3. For want of a better word the Pali phrase is translated literally. The English "mistress" has deteriorated very badly semantically!

48. 1. See Smp. 47 beginning.

2. See Mhv. v, 49 ff.


4. Dh. 21 ff.

5. Dh. 21ab.

6. i.e. converted them as ordinary lay-disciples (upāsakā) with no pretensions to spiritual attainments; puthuijana, "common man, worldling."

49. 1. The four elementary needs of a bhikkhu: robes, food as alms, lodgings, and medicines; see Vin. i, 58 f.

2. See Smp. 31–2.

3. The word navakamma usually signifies khaṇḍaphullapatiṣaṅkharaṇa, "renovations," as at Smp. 10, but in this context it definitely means new works or new undertakings.

50. 1. s.v., DPPN.

51. 1. Asoka's uterine brother according to Smp. 44, 56.

52. 1. Apostle to Mahisasamāñḍala, see Smp. 64.

2. Apostle to Kasmira-Gandhāra, see Smp. 64.

3. The special enclosure meant for the ceremony. See also Smp. 38, n. 3.


53. 1. See Mhv. v, 212–227; also Smp. 71, n. 2. Can he be Kassapagotta's brother?

2. Bhikkhaṇīra-vatta probably refers to the third dhutanga the piṇḍa-pāṭikaṅga, and may include dhutaṅgas 4 and 7 as well. Vide Vism. 66 ff., but Mhv. v, 217 merely refers to it as piṇḍāya caram.
54. 1 There is no parallel passage corresponding to Smp. 54, beginning, to this place, in the Mhv. account. The narrative continues from here at Mhv. v, 228.
2 See Smp. 38, n. 2.
3 s.v., PTS. The "Invitation" ceremony performed at the termination of the Vassa. See Smp. 6, n. 2, also I. B. Horner, The Book of the Discipline 4 (SBB), Introduction.
4 Sanghakamma, "a formal act performed by the Order of Bhikkhus in solemn conclave" and generally sanctioned as niaddutiya or niatti-
catuṭṭha, the resolution gaining formal ratification by unanimous assent and preceded by one or three announcements respectively. See Vin. i, 123, and the explanation in trsl. SBE, xxii and SBB, xiv.
5 Gaṇakamma apparently is restricted to a smaller group "chapter" originally consisting of ten or more for an upasampadā ceremony (Vin. i, 58) and later modified to five, a vinayadara bhikkhu and four others (Vin. i, 197). The two groups saṅgha and gaṇa, and puggala (Vin. ii, 170) are in descending numerical order. In Vinaya terminology gaṇakamma does not play a significant part.

55. 1 Mhv. v, 233 says "further up the Ganges".
2 With four fires kindled in the four directions and the noonday sun overhead.
3 See Mhv. v, 236 ff.
4 Mhv. omits this conversation.

56. 1 The two episodes that follow are placed earlier in Mhv. See Mhv. v, 154–172.
2 The emphasis at Mhv. v, 155, is different:
   Migā pi evam kñāṇataraṅgini tinagocarā
   na kāliṣsanti kīm bhikkhū sukhāhāravihārino.
   Geiger renders it as, "Even the gazelles sport thus joyously, who feed on grass in the wild. Wherefore are not the bhikkhus joyous and gay, who have their food and dwelling in comfort?" I do not agree with the reading in T. kiṃvā nāma kālikām, "how much sport indeed."
3 Probably the same as Yonakadhammarakkhita who was despatched as the missionary to Aparanta (see Smp. 68), and not Mahādhamma-
rakkhita who was sent to Mahārāṭṭha. For Yona vide Smp. 64, n. 3; Mhv. trsl., 85, n. 5; 194, n. 3, with references. Mhv. v, 161, has Mahā-
dhammarakkhita.
4 Mhv. v, 171.
5 Named Sumana. See Mhv. v, 169 f.

57. 1 See Mhv. v, 241, to the end of the chapter which is more or less a summary of Smp. 57–62.

58. 1 Forbidden to monks and nuns; cp. Vin. i, 191; iv, 338 f., etc.
2 Used as rug, etc.; cp. Vin. i, 192 ff.

59. 1 Not at Mhv. v; cp. Queen Māyā's dream of a white elephant before she conceived the Bodhisatta, JA. i, 50.
2 This episode too is missing in Mhv.

61. 1 A. iii, 415. No parallel in Mhv. v from here to end of Smp. 61.
2 J. No. 319; JA. iii, 64 ff.
3 J. st. 580; JA. iii, 64 ff.
4 J. st. 581; JA. iii, 64 ff., cp. v, 264.

62. 1 The term samayaṁ means "philosophy or system of philosophy", but Mhv. v, 265, is more specific in referring to it as sambuddhasamayaṁ, "the teaching of the Perfectly Enlightened One," while Dpv. vii, 53, merely uses the word sāsana. Samaya can equally refer to the outside
systems of philosophy, especially in the context of the King being able
to recognize the titthiyas on account of his already having studied the
"samaya" under Mogaliputta Tissa.
2 cp. D. i, 12 ff., for a complete list of these theories. Also see introd-
uction to the Brahmagāla Sutta in Dialogues of the Buddha, i (SBE).
3 See Smp. 62, n. 1.
4 Asoka’s statement, "Whosoever monk or nun will divide the Saṅgha
shall be made to wear white garments and compelled to live in a non-
monastic dwelling," in the Minor Pillar Edicts of Sārnāth, Kosambi,
and Sāñcī affords a close parallel to this. The Sāñcī version further
prefaces it with the words, "The Saṅgha of monks and nuns has been
united to remain so to the time of my children and grandchildren and
as long as the sun and the moon endure." The uposatha (see Smp. 62, n. 6)
was one of the criteria for the unity of the Saṅgha (Saṅghasāmaggi)
and this has been brought about, according to our sources, after a lapse
of seven years, as a result of Asoka’s endeavours. Also see, A Reference
5 "The analytical system." Pali tradition refers to early Buddhism
by this term and it should not be confused with the later school of
Buddhism which was designated by the same name.
6 The uposatha is an essential feature in the unity of the Saṅgha;
hence the great emphasis laid on it. See also Smp. 38, n. 2 and n. 4 above.

63. 1 Dpv. iv and v record several traditions of the ācāriyaparamparā
which have been carefully analysed by Eggermont, ibid., 4 ff. See also
Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xlvii ff., and the chronological table at p. L.
2 Vin. v, 2.
3 This refers to the time when the Porāṇa tradition became crystallized.
This is the source material for the traditions recorded in Smp. as well as
the Chronicles right down to the works of the later Vamsa-literature.
The Āṭṭhakathā Mahāvamsa, no longer extant, can be presumed to
have contained all this information. Vide Geiger, Mhv. trsl. x f., and
PLC, etc. Also see EHBC, 87, for a discussion of the phrase yāva ajatanā.
Adikaram has shown that the list of teachers does not include any therā
after the first century A.C.
4 "The Ancients." See PLC, 92 n., EHBC, 16 ff. The Parivāra too
contains the identical list of theras (Vin. v, 2 f.), but it appears to be quite
out of place there, and is probably an interpolation. Both Smp. and
Parivāra lists go back to the same Porāṇa tradition.
5 i.e. Vinaya Piṭaka.

64. 1 See Dvp. viii, Mhv. xii regarding the missions described at Smp. 64 ff.
2 Cunningham, The Bihilsa Topes, 289, refers to an inscription, sapurisa
Mogaliputaśa on a relic casket from Tope No. 2 of the Sāñcī group which
contained the relics of Mogaliputta Tissa. See also Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xx.
3 Mahinda’s ācariya at the higher ordination, Smp. 52.
4 See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 82 ff. footnotes, for the place-names. Also
s.vv. DPPN and in Cunningham’s AGI.
5 Mahinda’s ācariya at the ordination, Smp. 52.
6 D. R. Bhandarkar, Asoka, identifies this as a Greek settlement
within the Empire near the north-west frontier between the Kophen
and the Indus where the Shāhābāzgarhī Edicts were located. He explains
the name as being derived from Old Iranian Yauna through Old Aryan
Yavana, the Ionians being the first people of Hellenic origin known
to the Indo-Iranians and that all Greeks were known by that name
subsequently. He dates this Ionian colony to pre-Alexandrian times.
It is, however, quite possible that the term Yonakaloka meant the
Hellenic Kingdoms beyond the north-west border, particularly the terri-
tories of Antiochos Theos of Syria, Ptolemy Philadelphos of Egypt,
Antigonus Gonatas of Macedon, Magas of Cyrene and Alexander of Epirus all of whom are mentioned in RE, xiii. There is every possibility that Asoka's dhamma-vijaya extended far beyond his immediate neighbours in the north-west, i.e. the Bactrian provinces of Arachosia and Kabul (see Mhv. xxix, 39—Yonanagara Alasandā), as in the case of the south. See also D. R. Bhandarkar, Asoka, 161 ff., where he adduces various reasons for the influence of Buddhism over Western Asia, and poses the question: Can there be the slightest doubt that the spread of Buddhism to Western Asia was due to Asoka's missionary activities?

Dpv. viii, 10, reads, Kassapagotto ca yo therō Majjhimo Dundubhissaro Sahadevo Mulakadevo Himavante yakkhaganam pasādayum, agreeing with Smp. 71 though there is a slight discrepancy in the exact spelling of the names. Cunningham, The Bhilsa Topes, 119 ff., 287 ff., 316–17, refers to inscriptions on relic urns which mention the names of Majjhima, Kassapagotta, and Dundubhissara (Dadabhisāra in the inscription, Durabhisara Dpv. Oldenberg's ed.). See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xx. Cunningham identifies Dadabhisara with the district and not the Elder.

Anuṇāṇāmi bhikkhave saṃbappaccantimesu janapadesu vinayadharmacana ganena upasampadāni, Vin. i, 197.

65. 1 The Aravāla episode cp. Mhv. xii, 9 ff.; cp. also the Mārayuddha, JA, i, 72 ff.
     2 Lit. created a rain called hail-rain.
     3 Lit. smoke him out.
     4 Mhv. xii, 16–18.
     5 Mhv. xii, 21, gives the yakkha's name as Paṇḍaka and his wife's Hāritā. All of them attained sotāpattipālā.
     6 Mhv. xii, 22–3ab.
     7 S. iv, 172 ff.; A. ii, 110 ff.
     8 cp. Dpv. viii, 4.

66. 1 See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 84, n. 5.
     2 M. iii, 178 ff.; A. i, 138 ff.
     3 cp. Dpv. viii, 5; Mhv. xii, 29.

67. 1 See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 84, n. 7.
     3 cp. Dpv. viii, 6; Mhv. xii, 31.

68. 1 Within Asoka's Empire. See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 85, n. 1.
     2 A. iv, 128 ff.
     3 cp. Dpv. viii, 7; Mhv. xii, 34.

69. 1 The Mahārāṣṭra.
     2 J. No. 544; JA. vi, 219 ff.
     3 cp. Dpv. viii, 8; Mhv. xii, 37.

70. 1 See Smp. 64, n. 4. There is sufficient corroborative evidence to establish the historicity of some at least of these missions though not all of them are in that happy position. The contents of RE, xiii, should be taken in conjunction with this tradition. See also Smp. 64, n. 6.
     2 A. ii, 24.
     3 cp. Dpv. viii, 9; Mhv. xii, 39.

71. 1 See Smp. 64, n. 6.
     2 The name is given as Kāsapagota Hemavatācāriya, Kotiputa Kāsapagota Hemavatācāriya, and Gotiputa Kāsapagota in three relic urn inscriptions. See Cunningham, Bhilsa Topes, 119 ff., 287 ff., 316–17. Cunningham takes Kotiputa and Gotiputa as two distinct Elders, not taking into account the change of g > k in north-western Pkr. dialects.
Notes to the Translation

3 Dpv. viii, 10 and Mhv. Tikā i, 317, give his name as Mulakadeva.
4 Dpv., loc. cit. (Oldenberg’s ed.) gives his name as Durabhisara, v.l. Dundubhissara, Mhv. Tikā i, 317, Dundubhissaratthera, and relic urn inscription, Dadabhisara.
5 Dpv. loc. cit., Sahadeva. Also see v. ll.
6 Vin. i, 10 ff., S.v, 420 ff.
7 cp. Dpv. viii, 10; Mhv. xii, 41.

72. 1 See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 86, n. 2.
2 i.e. adhiggahita, “taken possession of, possessed.”
3 D. i, 1 ff.
4 cp. Dpv. viii, 11; Mhv. xii, 44 ff.

73. 1 The fact that a lengthy independent account of the mission to Ceylon is given in all the Pali sources, by reason of its importance from the Ceylon point of view, does not necessarily imply that Moggaliputta had nothing to do with the mission though no reference is made to him in the fuller account. In fact, every one of the missions is described with an independent introduction with no particular reference to the Council nor to Moggaliputta Tissa after making, at the outset, the general statement that Moggaliputta Tissa requested each group of monks to go to their assigned country. The statement that several monks at Asokārāma reminded Mahinda that it was the time to establish the Sāsana in Ceylon (Dpv. xii, 7 ff.) and requested him to go, should be taken along with Dpv. viii, 1 ff. A short delay is inevitable prior to undertaking a journey of this nature as elaborate preparations were necessary for the despatch of each of the missions, and in the case of a journey overseas it is to be expected all the more. By taking Dpv. xii, 7 ff. with no reference to Dpv. viii, 1 ff. one would naturally fall into the error of dissociating the Ceylon mission from Moggaliputta Tissa, as Eggemann 36 ff. has done, as it presents a completely different picture. Smp. records here the request of both Moggaliputta Tissa and the Order of monks. Also see Mhv. xiii, 1.
2 According to Mhv. he reigned for sixty years (307–247 B.C.) and was responsible for the laying out of the Mahāmeghavana which came to play an important part in the history of the Sāsana in Ceylon. He ascended the throne in the fourteenth year of Candagutta’s reign in India. Devānampiyatissa was his second son.
3 i.e. the message of the Dhamma.
4 There seems to be a good deal of confusion regarding the location of this district, but the details here appear to be correct; also vide DPPN s.v. There is nothing at Mhv. xiii, 5, to justify Geiger’s identification of it as “a vihāra in Ujjenti” (Mhv. trsl. 88, n. 3), as the stanza that follows refers to Mahinda next going to Vedisa which is actually situated between Kosambi and Ujjenti. Hence Dakkhinagiri has to be located beyond Rājagaha on the way to Vedisa. Probably a trade route from Pātaliputta through Rājagaha and Dakkhinagiri connected the great southern trade route to Pātiṭhāna which ran through Vedisa, Ujjenti and Māhissatt. Mahinda and his companions naturally followed this route and arrived at Vedisa. According to Pj. II, 136 it is the hilly district south of Rājagaha.
5 Vedisa also called “the Forest City” (Sn. 1011), is identified as Bhilsa in Gwalior State. See Cunningham, The Bhilsa Topes, and Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 88, n. 4.

74. 1 Asoka was Viceroy at Avanti during his father Bindusāra’s reign. Its capital was Ujjenti not far from modern Ujjain in Gwalior State. See Geiger, Mhv. trsl., 29, n. 1.
2 Dpv. vi, 16, and Mhv. xiii, 9, do not give the name of the setithi, but mention the daughter’s name as Devi, as given below. Note the verb āgahesi, “seized,” in the text.
Inception of Discipline

3 This is consistent with the statement at Smp. 52 that at the time of Mahinda’s ordination at the age of twenty, the King was in the sixth year after consecration.

4 The second consecration of Devanampiyatissa is often looked upon as a “Buddhist” consecration. Eggermont, The Chronology of the Reign of Asoka Moriya, 25 ff., attempts to prove, on the evidence from Dpv. that Asoka celebrated his conversion to Buddhism by undergoing a second consecration. The interpolated stanza Dpv. vi, 24, according to him “suggests that the whole story of the conversion is a commentary on the second anointment of Asoka”. He next concludes, “This view has the advantage of making it conceivable why Asoka sent the necessaries for a second anointment to King Devanampiya Tissa…(whose)…double coronation is analogous to Asoka’s.” See also Smp. 78, n. 7.

5 The festival of the Jetthamulanakkhatta (see Smp. 77) or the Anurâdhajetthanakkhatta, according to Dpv. xi, 44, was celebrated as a public holiday. The King’s celebration of the festival took the form of a deer-hunt, but Mahinda purposely avoids mentioning it as he would be a party to the contemplated pâjavadhâ of the King if it forms a part of his resolution of will.

6 This was the earlier name of Mihintale which was changed to Cetiyapabbata or Cetiyagiri after Devanampiyatissa’s construction of dwellings for monks there. See Smp. 75. Mihintale is situated 8 miles to the east of Anuradhapura. See C. W. Nicholas, JCBRAS, New Series, vi, 1959. The Historical Topography of Ancient and Medieval Ceylon.

7 The name of the month is given here as Jetthamulu, “the commencement of Jettha,” though the usual name for the month following Vesâkha is Jettha (Sinh. month of Poson, now reckoned as May-June). Also cp. Mhv. xiii, 14.

8 cp. Dpv. xii, 12–13, 38–9.

9 The grandson of Mahinda’s mother, Devi’s sister. Mhv. xiii, 16.

75. 1 s.v., DPPN. See also C. Godage’s monograph: The Place of Indra in Early Buddhism, UCR, iii, 1.

2 See Mhv. xiii, 15; Dpv. xii, 17 ff., 29 f.

3 Dpv. xii, 20, byâkatañi c’assa nāgassa; Mhv. xiii, 15, Sambudhena pë viyâkato.

4 The stanzas are almost identical with Dpv. xii, 35–7; cp. Dpv. xii, 14; Mhv. xiii, 6 ff.

5 The reading at Dpv. xii, 35, Vedisagiriye (or -girimhi) ramme makes better sense. The translations, “in Vedisagiri in Râjagaha,” or “in Vedisagiri and in Râjagaha,” would both be wrong in the context. The older reading ramme in Dpv. fits in beautifully with the Anûstubbôloka metre of these verses in addition to giving the correct meaning. Or should Râjagaha here be taken as “royal mansion”?

6 Dpv. xii, 37, 41, have Missakakûtãmi for kûtãmhi. The name Missaka there serves the purpose of a gloss as it cannot be included in the metre. Mhv. xiii, 20, has Silakkûta. See footnote in text, and Smp. 77, n. 1.

7 All this embellishment is missing at Mhv. xiii, 19 f.

76. 1 Regarding problems of chronology see Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xxi ff. with references, G. C. Mendis, UCR, v, 1 (1947); Eggermont, chapter II; S. Paranavitana, UCR, xviii, 3–4 (1960).

2 cp. Dpv. xi, 8 ff., Mhv. iv, 1 ff. See tables, Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xli, xlvii.

3 Lit. “Abhaya the Crock”. Smp. consistently uses the name Pakunḍaka but Dpv. gives both Pakunḍa xi, 1 ff. (or Pakunḍaka xi, 12, etc.), and Paṇḍuka x, 9, while Mhv. has only Paṇḍuka. The earlier sobriquet may have been subsequently changed to a less pungent one, after his consecration, and, in the Mhv. he has become “Abhaya the Pale” (fair-skinned)?
Pakuṣṭakabhaya reigned for seventeen years without being consecrated, and the previous one year refers to the Vijaya-Paṇḍuvāsadeva inter-regnum. The consecration perhaps brought about the change in the name from Pakuṣṭaka to Paṇḍuka!

77. 1 The small tableland below the stony peak Silakūṭa at Cetiyapabbata (Mhv. xiii, 20; Dpv. xvii, 14, give Silakūṭa among other names as elsewhere. See Smp. 75, n. 6). Could it have been earlier known as Silākūṭa? The plateau below was named as Ambatthala, "the Mango Plateau," after the riddle of the Mango tree (Smp. 80). King Mahādāṭhika Mahānāga (66-78 a.c.) built the Ambatthala thāpa there, on the ruins of which now stands a cetiya of more recent date. See also C. W. Nicholas, JCBRAS, New Series, vi, p. 163 f.

2 cp. Bimbisāra's reflexion at JA, i, 66, on seeing the Bodhisatta Gotama.

3 Mhv. xiv, 8.

78. 1 Situated about two yojanas south-east of Anurādhapura. Later Saddhātissa (77-59 b.c.) built the Cetavihāra there. C. W. Nicholas, ibid., 157, suggests that this hill may be the present Gātalagam-kanda.

2 Dpv. xi, 15; cx, 16-17; Mhv. xi, 10-13.

3 Terminalia Arjuna.

4 Geiger, Mhv. trsl. (xi, 30) takes vaḍḍhamānaṃ as an epithet of kumārikaṃ and gives a colourful but erroneous translation "a maiden in the flower of her youth". See Mhv. Tīkā, i, 304.

5 Mhv. xi, 30, has saṃkhaṇa ca nandiyāvaṭṭaṃ, "a spiral shell winding in auspicious wise," Geiger. Also see Mhv. trsl. 80, n. 1.

6 It is usually a very young girl of Khattiya clan who does the anointing. See Mhv. Tīkā, i, 305 ff., for more details on the abhiseka.

7 The Smp. account has the requisite number of items (sixteen) mentioned in traditional lists in addition to the five insignia of royalty. The gifts sent by Tissa appear to be of immense value and share the nature of an extravagant expression of his friendship with Asoka. A gift of such magnificent proportions, as a token of friendship, is unthinkable except in terms of tribute paid in kind by a bhoja-raja to his cakkavatti. It is all the more striking when the five ensigns of royalty required for use on ceremonial occasions and the sixteen requisites for a consecration are sent in return, though nominally Asoka's gift in return was the gift of the Dhamma. However, there is no evidence to indicate that Tissa accepted Asoka's suzerainty. Besides, it may be on the suggestion of his artful ministers, who were perhaps schooled in Cānaka's tradition, (cp. sahā-maccehi mantetvā, Mhv. xi, 27), that the five ensigns of royalty and articles needed for a consecration were chosen as a return gift after Asoka himself on his own had conferred upon the members of the embassy various high honours (Mhv. xi, 25-6; also see Mhv. Tīkā, i, 302 ff.). The only influence of Asoka over Ceylon was his "Conquest by the Dhamma" of the Island as were the other border kingdoms won to the Faith as mentioned in his RE, xiii. The argument that Tissa underwent a second consecration to celebrate his acceptance of Buddhism (Smp. 74, n. 4) appears weak in the light of the typical brahmanical anointment as seen from the articles used at the consecration. It is difficult to explain why Tissa submitted himself to this second consecration, and further investigation is necessary to establish whether Tissa even nominally accepted Asoka's suzerainty, but one thing is certain, that Asoka may have looked upon Tissa as a very useful friend and ally from a strategic point of view, with the independent Drāviḍa Kingdoms of Colas, Pandyas, Keralaputras, and others situated between his southern borders and Ceylon.

8 Dpv. xi, 1-4; xvii, 83-86; cp. Mhv. xi, 28-32.
Inception of Discipline

9 Dpv. xii, 5-6; cp. Mhv. xi, 34-5.
10 See Asoka’s Brahmagiri Edict i, Râpnâth and Maski Edicts, which are now dated as having been issued in the tenth regnal year, in which he says that he has been a lay disciple for two and a half years and so on. Also vide A Reference to the Third Council in Asoka’s Edicts ?, UCR, xvii, 3-4.
11 See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xix.

79. 1 Mhv. xi, 40, refers to his first consecration as having taken place on the first day of the bright half of Maggasira while Dpv. xi, 14, refers to it in a different way: “under the asterism of Asâhi in the second winter month;” but in both cases it fell five months before the uposatha day of Vesâkha. See also Eggermont, 31 ff.; Geiger, Mhv. trsl. xxxi ff., who have attempted to fix the exact date with various kinds of data.
2 See last st. at Smp. 78.
3 Dpv. xii, 52; cp. Mhv. xiv, 10.
4 Mahinda awaited the arrival of the King’s followers to reveal the presence of the rest of his party lest the King be frightened at the sight of too many unfamiliar figures.
5 Dpv. xii, 56; cp. Mhv. xiv, 14.

80. 1 For Smp. 80-3, cp. Mhv. xiv, 15 to end of chapter.

81. 1 M. i, 175 ff., see also Dpv. xii, 57: “suttantam Hatthipadam.”
2 It is rather significant that the King knew that it was not permissible for monks to eat after midday. One who is totally unacquainted with the daily life of bhikkhus would not have known it. It is very unlikely that he would have learned all this from his envoys who had returned from Asoka’s court but recently. Also at Smp. 87 the King realizes that the Thera is eager to have a cetiya built when he merely mentions that Buddha’s bodily relics remain. These and several other stray references in the Pali accounts which their monastic authors have failed to suppress, point to the fact that Buddhism was not unknown in Ceylon prior to its official introduction by Mahinda. See EHBC, 46 ff. for further data. It is unsatisfactory to explain this minor detail as an anachronism.
3 Vin. iv, 85.
4 Vikâla is defined at Vin. iv, 86.
5 i.e. anâgâmipihala.

82. 1 Jhâna, s.v., PTS. See references where the jhânas are discussed fully as regards theory and practice.
2 cp. the description at the end of the preaching of the Dhammacakka, Vin. i, 11 ff.
3 A. i, 64 ff.

83. 1 A cetiya in Anuradhapura, untraced to date in the ruins, though popularly identified with the ruins now known as the Padhânacetiya. It is tentatively located in the map attached to Memoir I of the Archaeological Survey of Ceylon, along the ancient road from the eastern gate of the city to Mihintale, slightly south-east of Nakhâ Vehera and between Malvatu Oya (Kadambanadi) and the Hâlpânu Ala (D. T. Devendra).
2 Included in the dasasikkhâpada, Kh. No. 2.
3 The word in the text is taṭṭikā, and is explained at Smp. 357 (P.T.S.): tâlapanñhe vi vâkehi vâ katataṭṭikâ, i.e. woven from palm-leaf or fibrous bark.
4 S.v, 414 ff.
5 Hatthisâlā, not identified.
6 See Smp. 102, n. 2.
7 M. iii, 178 ff.; A. i, 138 ff.
8 See Mhv. xv, 1 ff. for parallels to Smp. from here.
The park situated outside the southern wall of the city and extending as far as the Mahāmeghavana. It is bounded on the west by the Abhayavāpī and on the east by the Kadambanadi. The Thūpārāma and the Mahāsthūpā are situated within this park. It was renamed Jotivana after the conversions effected there by Mahinda. See Smp. 84, Mhv. xv, 202. See also C. W. Nicholas, Historical Topography of Ancient and Medieval Ceylon, JCBRAS, 1959, New Series, vi, 127 ff.

85. S. iv, 172 ff.; A. ii, 110 ff., but Dpv. xiii, 13, Mhv. xv, 4 differ, and mention the Bālapañḍitasuttanta, M. iii, 163; S. ii, 23 ff.; A. i, 101 ff.

84. 1 Lit. The Grove of the Mighty Rain Cloud. It was laid out by Muṭasīva and named so on account of an unseasonal downpour at the time of the selection of the site; Mhv. xi, 2 f. It lay further south of the Nandavana (Smp. 83, n. 9). The Mahāvihāra was founded there by Devānampiyatiṣa. In dedicating the Mahāmeghavana to the Saṅgha it was renamed Tissarāma; Dpv. xiii, 33. For a full description of the dedication see Dpv. xiii, 18 ff., and for the religious edifices built there, Mhv. xv. See also Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 77, n. 1, and C. W. Nicholas, ibid.

2 cp. the full description of a sārūпpa senāsana at Vin. i, 39. The account of the dedication of Veluvana by Bimbisāra has been freely drawn upon, and is faithfully rendered into verse, with additions, in describing the dedication of the Mahāmeghavana at Dpv. xiii, 18 ff.; and Mhv. xv, 17, actually cites the acceptance of the Veluvanārāma.

3 Mhv. xv, 10, adds that the cetiya built at the spot where the Elders turned back was called the Nivatattacetiya. Also see C. W. Nicholas, ibid., p. 137.

4 Vin. i, 39.

5 So also in the description of the acceptance of the Veluvana at JA, i, 85.


7 A. iv, 128 ff.

Mhv. xv, 195 ff. states that on the fifth day, i.e. the day after he preached the Anamataggiya, the Thera preached the Khajjanīya Suttanta, probably the Sīha Suttanta of the Khajjanīya Vagga; S. iii, 86 ff. (See Geiger, Mhv. trsl., 111, n. 4); that on the sixth day, the Gomayapinḍi Sutta, S. iii, 143 ff., and on the seventh day, the Dhammacakkappavattana, Vin. i, 10 ff. In the first of the two independent accounts in Dpv. commencing at xiv, 8, the suttas that are said to have been preached by Mahinda at the Nandanavana are Aggikkhandha and Āśvisūpama, and in the second account at xiv, 41 ff., Āśvisūpama, Anamataggīya, Cariyā-piṭaka, Gomayapiṇḍi, and Dhammacakka which “he preached repeatedly there itself in the Great Nandana, and for seven days he preached with this suttanta”.

85. 1 There are several discourses called Appamāda Sutta and it is not easy to say which one was referred to as Mahā-appamāda Sutta. Vide Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 31, n. 3; s.v., DPPN. Smp. fails to mention that the Dhammacakkappavattana was preached on the seventh day at the Nandanavana. See previous note. Smp. and Mhv. xvi, 3 agree as regards Mahā-appamāda Sutta but not Dpv. xiv, 53 which mentions Mahāsamaya Suttanta.

2 Same as Cetiyaapabatta or Missakapabatta (Mihintale). See Smp. 74, n. 6.

86. 1 There are two Ariṭṭhas if we are to accept the sequence of the narrative in Smp. and the chronicles. See also Adikaram, EHBC, 53 f. Both Dpv. and Mhv. refer to the minister (Mahā) Ariṭṭha as Devānampiyatiṣa’s first envoy to the imperial court of Pātaliputta (Dpv. xi, 29 ff.; Mhv. xi, 20 ff.). Mhv. further refers to him as the King’s nephew. Both chronicles again refer to him as Mahā Ariṭṭha, the King’s nephew (Dpv. xiv, 68 ff.;
Mhv. xvi, 10 ff.) in describing his entry into the Order with fifty-five others who are described as his "brothers". It is, however, rather curious to note that Sm. omits the epithet Mahā and refers to him as Ariṭṭha here, though one of the two Ariṭṭhas is again referred to as Mahā-Ariṭṭha later on (Mhv. 105, 106). Further, he is not called the King's nephew at Sm. 86 and the King addresses him and his fifty-five brothers as bhāne, "my men", instead of the usual tātā, "my dears," as one would expect; see Sm. 95 where he addresses the other Ariṭṭha as tāta. The name of the second envoy who was despatched to bring Saṅghamittā and the Bodhi tree is consistently given as Ariṭṭha and not as Mahā-Ariṭṭha in all three sources: Dpv. xv, 82 ff., Ariṭṭho nāma khattiyo; Mhv. xvii, 1 ff., the minister Ariṭṭha, the King's nephew; Sm. 95, the King's nephew. On the evidence of Mhv. and Dpv. Adikaram's contention (ibid.), that the two ministers named Ariṭṭha were brothers and that the older of the two was called Mahā-Ariṭṭha and the younger plain Ariṭṭha may be accepted though the indirect evidence from the Sm. seems to make the issue highly complicated. In Sm. Ariṭṭha (1) was no relation of the King, while the reference to Mahā-Ariṭṭha as a mere bhikkhu at Sm. 105, when his name is suggested as a suitable candidate to receive the Vinaya and teach it in Ceylon, is intended to point to the more junior of the two Ariṭṭhas in the Sāsana. He is, however, referred to as an Elder in the next section. Ariṭṭha (1) was already an arahant according to the last sentence of Sm. 86. See note 4 below. All three sources agree that the envoy sent to bring Saṅghamittā was the King's nephew, who later entered the Order with 500 others and (not a mere fifty-five!) in keeping with his royal status. Further, in two instances in Mhv. (xviii, 13; xix, 12) it is the second Ariṭṭha who is referred to as Mahā-Ariṭṭha, while all other references either clearly point to Ariṭṭha (1) as Mahā-Ariṭṭha or can be interpreted as such. Evidently, the earlier chronic Dpv. (and Sm.) recognized the fact that there were two Ariṭṭhas while the author of Mhv. has forgotten the sequence of events in the narrative and confused one Ariṭṭha with the other. The two names cannot refer to one and the same individual if the above sequence is correct, but if not, the second envoy has to be identified with the first. If that be so, the suggestion that the story of the arrival of Saṅghamittā with the Bodhi tree and that of Mahinda refer to the first propagation of Buddhism in Ceylon (Eggermont, 56 ff.) will have to be taken seriously into consideration. On the other hand, from the evidence of Sm. there is nothing to prevent one from identifying Ariṭṭha (2) with Mahā-Ariṭṭha on the ground (1) that he alone was the King's nephew, (2) he was not a bhikkhu of long experience, and (3) that the important office of custodian-ship of the Vinaya is best entrusted to one connected with the royal family. Buddhaghosa appears to have been convinced that Ariṭṭha (2) was Mahā-Ariṭṭha though nowhere does he explicitly state so. The evidence from Sm. is of an inferential nature and may be even termed an argument from silence while the positive information in Dpv. and Mhv., in spite of the two discrepancies referred to above in the latter, appears to indicate that Ariṭṭha (1) was Mahā-Ariṭṭha.

On the Missakapabba. The ruins of some of these cells, some partly restored, are to be seen to the present day. The Kanṭakacetiya too is partly renovated by the Ceylon Archaeological Department. All this lies on a plateau further south-west of Ambatthala. See Sm. 77, n. 1.

The ten sons of Muṭasiva of whom Devānampiyatissa was the second. See list at Dpv. xi, 6; viii, 75, and Sm. 94, n. 7.

Dpv. xiv, 80; Mhv. xvi, 17 also agree with the number sixty-two. The number of monks was sixty-three and Bhanduka is earlier referred to as an āgataphala (Mhv. 81, n. 5), while Sumana was yet a novice as may be seen from Sm. 87.
87. 1 See Dpv. xv, 1 ff., Mhv. xvii, 1 ff. which take up the narrative from here to end of Smp. 89.  
2 The three sentences beginning with this are missing at Mhv. See Dpv. xv, 2-3.  
3 The King already knows what a thūpa is and that relics are enshrined in thūpas. See Smp. 80, n. 2.  
4 Situated outside the eastern gate of the city, probably beyond the Kadambanadi, with the road to Cetiyaapabbata passing through it, and also extending further south to the eastern boundaries of the Nandanavana and the Mahāmeghana.  
5 Mhv. xvii, 12 refers to the bowl relic as well.  
6 See Smp. 75.

88. 1 The Cūḷāmāni Cetiya, cp. Mhv. xvii, 20; s.v., DPPN.

89. 1 Those who wish to get wet get wet, while others who do not wish so remain dry "like water not adhering to a lotus leaf". See JA, i, 88.  
2 cp. Dpv. xv, 20,
Cātumāsāṁ komudiyaṁ divasaṁ puṇṇarattiyā ṛgato ca mahāvīro gajakumbhe patiṭṭhito.  
"And the great hero (i.e. the relic) arrived on the day of full moon of the month of Kattikā and established (lit.) himself on the frontal of the elephant." See next note.  
3 Cātumāsinī puṇṇamā is the full moon day of Kattikā commencing on the Uposatha day of Āsāḷhi, and marks the end of the later period for keeping Vassa, and thus the end of the fourth month of the Rains-period, usually in the phrase komudi cātumāsinī (Miss I. B. Horner).  
4 Pāndukābhaya built at this site, a shrine dedicated to the cult of the yakka Maheja (Mhv. x, 90). Perhaps Geiger is correct in translating Mahejāghara as the House of the Great Sacrifice: mahā + ij (from root yaj-) + ya). The reading at Mhv. xvii, 30, is the same as here, while there are many variants which are corruptions due to the term becoming unfamiliar quite early. See also JPTS, 1903, p. 46; JCBRAS, xxxi, p. 306 f.; s.v., DPPN.  
5 i.e. where the Thūpārāma was to be built.

90. 1 For Smp. 90-2, cp. Dpv. xv, 34-64; Mhv. xv, 56-159.

92. 1 Is it an echo of Maṇḍatīv off the Jaffna Peninsula?  
2 Belonging to this kappa.

93. 1 cp. Mhv. xvii, 32 ff.  
2 Mhv. xvii, 34, is different,  
3 Attano khandhasamake ṭhāne ṭhapanam icchati,  
"Wishes to place it at a height on an equal level with its shoulders."  
4 Built by Pāndukābhaya (Mhv. x, 88); its modern name is Abhayavāva or Basavak-kulama.  
5 Thūp. 50. Also see S. Paranavitana, The Thūpā in Ceylon.  
6 See Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 119, n. 3.  
7 The miracle of the double which consists of projecting the identical double image of the Buddha. Vide DhA. iiii, 206 ff.  
8 See JA, iv, 264 ff., s.v., DPPN.  
9 cp. Mhv. xvii, 50.  
10 Mhv. xvii, 56; cp. Divy. 79, 469.

94. 1 See Mhv. i, Dpv. i-ii.  
2 Mahodara and Ćālodara: Mhv. i, 45; Dpv. ii, 7.  
3 The Ruvanvālī Dāgoba, built by Duṭṭhagāmanī and completed by Saddhātissā. See Mhv. xxviii, 2 ff.; Dpv. xix, 10; xx, 1 ff.; Thūp. 66 ff.; C. W. Nicholas, ibid., 134 ff.; s.v., DPPN, Mahāthūpa.
Inception of Discipline

4 In Badulla, capital of the Uva. There is no reference to it in Dpv. and Mhv. in this connexion.
6 The places mentioned at Dpv. ii, 53 ff. are Kalyāṇi, the sites of the Dīghavāpicetiya, the Bodhi tree at Mahāmegha-vanāra, and the Megha-vanāra, and those at Mhv. i, 71 ff. are Kalyāṇi, Sumanakūta, the foot of the Sumanakūta (later called Divāghuḥā), Dīghavāpi, and the sites of the Mahāmegha-vanāra, the Mahābodhi, the Mahāthūpa, the Thūpāra, and the Silācetiya (the core of the Abhayagiri—Dpv. xix, 16 ?), while Smp. mentions three of the places common to both lists and Mahācetiya (ṭhūpā) and Thūpārāma in common with the Mhv. list, and Mutiyāṅgaṇa Cetiya is not found in either of the above.
7 Mhv. xvii, 57, refers to him as Mattābhaya, the King’s younger brother as distinct from his elder brother Abhaya who appears at the head of the list of ten brothers with two Tissas, Devānampiya and Sūra as second and ninth, and Mattābhaya comes fifth in the list. This is no other than Mattābhaya as he is referred to later by that name at Smp. 106 as having been the dharaggāha at Mahā Ariṭṭha’s Vinaya Recital. See also Smp. 86, n. 3.
8 Also called Cetāvīgāma, Mhv. xvii, 59, a village situated to the south of the city.
9 Other places mentioned at Mhv. xvii, 59 f. are Vihārabija, Galla-kapiṭha and Upaṭissagāma. Dvāramanḍala was a village near the Cetiya-pabbata, Mhv. xxiii, 23. There is at present a village called Dora-maṇḍoluwā in the Anurādhapura District. See also W. Rahula, ibid., p. 22.

95. 1 See Vin. ii, 271 ff.
2 See Smp. 102.
3 See Smp. 86, n. 1.
4 A seaport in North Ceylon, probably Sambulturu near Kankesanthurai in Nāgaḍipā (Jaffna Peninsula). See H. W. Codrington, JCBRAS, 1923. It appears to have been the principal port of the Anurādhapura Kingdom, especially in its intercourse with the countries in the Bay of Bengal. The earlier port of Mahātīṭṭha on the north-west carried on trade with the countries on the western seaboard of India and the lands on the Arabian Sea. It was often used by invaders from the Malabar Coast, e.g. Bhalluka—Mhv. xxv, 79, seven Damila usurpers—Mhv. xxxiii, 39. See also Mhv. xi, 23, 38. Jambukola was five days’ journey from Anurādhapura and seven days’ voyage to Pātaliputta (Mhv. Ṭikā, i, 303). See C. W. Nicholson, ibid., 83; s.v., DPPN.

96. 1 Additional line: And thus he informed her, “Your brother the Elder Mahinda has sent me here.” See footnote in text.

97. 1 cp. Mhv. xvii, 46 ff.
2 A dry measure made of wood for measuring corn, etc. Four añhakas = one dona. See Rhys Davids, Ancient Measures of Ceylon.
3 i.e. from Pāṭaliputta to Gayā. See Cunningham, AGI, 521 ff.

98. 1 Probably a reference to his bhoja-rājāno, “feudatory kings.”
2 The eight cardinal points.
3 It is perhaps due to the fact that the Bodhi tree is a cutting (and not a seedling) that it has not grown to the usual gigantic proportions of other Bo trees to be seen in India and Ceylon. In spite of its age of nearly 2,200 years it is a dwarf among Bo trees. See also Smp. 103, n. 1.

99. 1 The last day of the Vassa. See Smp. 54, n. 3.
3 s.v., DPPN.
100. 1 Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 128, translates it as, "eighteen persons from royal families and eight from families of ministers . . . etc.," though the text does not indicate it. See also Smp. 102, n. 3.

2 "The Hyena Tribe"—Geiger, Mhv. trsl. 128, n. 2. According to him both names Taraccha and "Kuliṅga", Mhv. xix, 2, are of totemistic origin. These two names appear quite out of place both in the shorter list of seven groups in Smp. and the longer list in Mhv. which adds weavers, potters, families representative of all the trade-guilds, nāgas, and yakkas. Mhv., in addition to changing Kaliṅga to Kuliṅga, replaces kutumbakakula with setthikila. Taraccha appearing after gopa may suggest that the name stood for some occupation (hunters?) while Kuliṅga, if the Mhv. rendering is correct, can mean "fowlers" who hunt with the kuliṅga or kuliṅka bird, like those who hunt with the falcon, a bird of the same family as the sparrow-hawk (kuliṅka).

3 All Smp MSS. and printed editions agree on the reading Kaliṅga.

4 Not to be confused with the Vindhya mountains which lie further west.

5 Identified with modern Tamluk, then situated on the Ganges estuary.

101. 1 November-December, Sinh. month of Unduvap.

2 A winged mythical creature, deadly foe of serpents, cp. garuḍa.

102. 1 Also called Samuddapanṇasālā, Mhv. xix, 26, with v. 11. Samuddāsannasālā, "Hall by the Sea," Samuddásanasālā, "the Hall by the Sea where it Reposed," and explained in the next stanza, "The edifice that was erected there to commemorate the miracle (referred to in the text, both Smp. and Mhv.) came to be known here (in Ceylon) as the Samuddapanṇasālā." But according to Smp. the Samuddasalā was outside Anurādhapura. Thāp. 53 agrees with Smp. If the Mhv. tradition is correct, it should refer to another edifice and not to this one. See also C. W. Nicholas, ibid., p. 83.

3 i.e. five flowers with lāja, "Dalbergia arboria" as the fifth in the usual phrase lāja-pañcamāni pupphāni, s.v. PTS lāja. The traditional Sinhalese explanation of lāja is puffed paddy.

3 Smp. 100 speaks of eighteen families of royal clan and eight each of six other groups while Mhv. xix, 1 ff. has a few more additions. See Smp. 100, n. 1. It is difficult to explain the number sixteen, given also at Mhv. xix, 31, and lower down in this section in Smp. Probably the two numbers reflect two different traditions, the smaller number representing the earlier one. Mhv. xix, 67, which refers to the eight setthī families only, presents still another problem.

4 As Asoka himself did. See Smp. 99, 100.

103. 1 Rohinī is the ninth asterism corresponding to the constellation Tauri with its five stars. From the above description it is to be inferred that the Great Bodhi was planted together with the vase. This perhaps may be another explanation of its stunted growth. See Smp. 98, n. 3.

2 See Smp. 97, 99.

3 Mhv. consistently gives the name as Tivakka. This village was situated along the road to Jambukola—Mhv. xix, 37.

4 In all other Pali sources the name occurs as Issarasamanārāma, "The Monastery for Monks from the Nobility," and not Issaranimnāga, "Built by the King (or Chieftains)," Mhv. xx, 14 f., also explains the two names Issarasamanārāma and Vessagiri. It is identified by S. Parānāvītana, CJSc (Sec. G), Vol. ii, 182, as the monastery now popularly known as the Vessagiriya though the set of ruins on the banks of the Tissavāpi (Tīsavāva) which Geiger too has mentioned in Mhv. trsl. 133, n. 2, at present bears the name Isurumuniya. Popular identifications of places in Anuradhapura are often liable to error in view of the jungle tide that
swept over the city for over six centuries prior to the commencement of restoration work in 1890. Paranavitana identifies the Issarasamaṇa Vihāra (also called Kassapagiri) from lithic records of the sixth century A.C. *in situ* (Vessagiriya Inscriptions Nos. 606-609). He also refers to rock inscriptions of about the first century A.C., found at Vessagiriya which refer to the place as Isiramaṇa, “Hermits’ Delight” which he thinks represents the earlier name whose learned but inaccurate restoration in the Chronicles is Issarasamaṇa, while modern Isurumuni is a natural development of the former. There, however, is still a possibility of the popular identification being correct if the sixth century inscription followed those of the first century in interpreting Isiramaṇa as Issarasamaṇa for the term Isiramaṇa is certainly a more elegant cpd. in Pali than Issarasamaṇa and the Chroniclers would certainly have preferred it if it was known to them. The sixth century inscription is more reliable as the term Issiramaṇa may have been an epithet and not a name. He next attempts to identify the other set of ruins, now known as Isurumuniya, as an ancient Megha-giri-vihāra (Artibus Asiae, Vol. xvi, 1953, pp. 181 f.). See also C. W. Nicholas, ibid., 148.

* Modern Kataragama on the right bank of the Mānik-gaṅga.
* Not identified (Handuṅgama ?).
* "See Smp. 86, n. 1.

104. 1 See Mhv. xxvii, with Geiger’s notes and references in trsl., C. W. Nicholas, ibid., 133 f., s.v. DPPN. The reference at Mhv. xv, 205, attributing a Lohapāsāda to Devānampiyatissa, also at Mhv. Tīkā, ii, 364, has led most secondary sources to state that this king built the first Lohapāsāda which was rebuilt several times afterwards after the many vicissitudes it underwent.

2 Lit. The Mango Courtyard, not identified; s.v. DPPN.
3 Lit. grandson. Mhv. xv, 169 also calls him nattā, but explains the relationship as Devānampiyatissa’s brother Mahānāga’s great-great-grandson.

105. 1 See EHBC, 56.
2 Parivena, perhaps in the later meaning of College. Meghavannabhaya was the faithful minister of King Mahāsenā (A.C. 325-352) who rebelled against him for destroying the Mahāvihāra but was later reconciled when the King undertook to restore it. Mhv. xxxvii, 29, refers to several parivenas built by Meghavannabhaya. In addition to the parivenas of his minister, the King built several edifices at the Mahāvihāra; see Mhv. xxxvii, 17 ff.

106. 1 Lit. “he who has taken the yoke upon himself,” i.e. the responsibility of handing down the Vinaya tradition.
2 Vin. iii, 1.
3 See the Account of the Succession of Teachers, Smp. 63, for the full list.
4 The list of Teachers is not brought up to date to the time of Bdhgh., but stops short at a point where the Porāṇa tradition and other sources of the Pali Commentaries, like the Sihaḷa-atṭhakathā were finalized. See Smp. 63, n. 3, and the Introduction.

107. 1 Lit. well-conducted.
2 cp. A. v, 2; 312.
3 Vin. v, 164.
4 See Smp. 2.
## INDEX I

### GENERAL INDEX

The numbers refer to paragraphs. The Index of Proper Names is appended at the end of this Index. The letter n after a number indicates that there is a note on it in the paragraph referred to. See the Index to the Pali Text for untranslated Pali words.

### A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abiding, the ninefold successive modes of,</td>
<td>3n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abolutions,</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act(s), bodily and verbal,</td>
<td>21, 106; misguided, 56, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act of the Chapter,</td>
<td>54n; of the Order, 6n, 38, 54n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action, consequent,</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admonition(s),</td>
<td>24, 27 (sāsana); 48, 85 (ovāda); 106 (anuṣīṭṭhi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aeon,</td>
<td>1, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggregates,</td>
<td>19, 28, 83, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alms,</td>
<td>38, 41, 46, 48, 53, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analysis, formal,</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analysis (Vedalla, the Āṅga),</td>
<td>31n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āṅga(s), the,</td>
<td>16, 31, 38, 49; the Nine, 4, 33, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annihilationists,</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application, unitary and multiple,</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approval,</td>
<td>13; see also sanction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arahat, see arahanta, Pali Index; dry-visioned,</td>
<td>4n; see also canker-waned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arahatship,</td>
<td>11, 12, 43, 47, 52, 86, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>army, the fourfold,</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artificers,</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascetic,</td>
<td>48, 61; naked, 46; white-robed wandering, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asoka's campaigns,</td>
<td>44; consecration, 44, 46, 52, 53, 56, 74; conversion, 48; revenue, 54; supernatural royal powers, 44; Asoka disrobes heretics, 62; ruler of Ujjain, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asseveration, act of,</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attainment(s),</td>
<td>1, 29, 94, 102; trans-cendental, 3n; see also cessation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authority,</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoidance,</td>
<td>24, 26, 27; the threefold, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>awakened,</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bamboo shoots, the three,</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banyan tree,</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Baskets and, the Three, 4, 16 passim; see pitaka, tipitaka ff., Pali Index
bathing mantle, 92
behaviour, repeated wrong, 48.
being, a pure, 42
belt, 83, 91
Birth Stories (Jātaka, the Āṅga), 31n
body and speech, the disciplining of, 21
bondage, to release from, 65, 66
border (country, district), 55, 64, 89
bowl, 48, 83, 88; bowl and robe, 8, 9, 12, 43, 47, 56, 87
Brahma, see Proper Names; brahmas, 45; cpdd. of brahma, see Proper Names and Pali Index
Brahmanism, 46
brahmin(s), 41, 42, 46, 48
brahmin youth, 8, 15, 42
brothers, the killing of (Asoka's), 44; the royal family including the ten (Devānampiyatissa's), 86; the ten sons of (Kāḷa) Asoka, 76
burden, to lay aside, 38

### C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calamity,</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>campaigns, Asoka's, see Asoka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>candāla (chieftain),</td>
<td>47; village, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cankers,</td>
<td>1, 11, 106; cankerless, 11, 38; canker-waned, 4, 28, 36-8, 40, 49, 50, 79, 106; the destruction of, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpets,</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carriage,</td>
<td>58; see chariot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casuists,</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causal modes,</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause,</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caves,</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cell,</td>
<td>9, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>censure,</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cessation,</td>
<td>28; the attainment of, 94, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter, the, 54, 55; of five, 64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chapters, the arrangement into, 30, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character, traits of,</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>characteristics, own,</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

119
Inception of Discipline

day, to the present, 63n, 65, 106
death, connected with in-breathing
and out-breathing, 56
dedication, festival of, 49; water of,
84
deer-hunt, 56, 77
defilements, the stains of, 1, 26, 28
deity (deities), 47 passim; assembly
of, 82; king of, 87, 88; lord of,
75, 87, 88; of the realm of Brahma,
98; terrestrial, 82; world of, 39,
89; see divinity and deva, devatā,
in Pali Index.
delight, 31, 107
delusion, 5
department in movements, 47, 48
desire, 5
destinutes, to live as, 87
detachment, 107
Dhamma, see Pali Index and Proper
Names; the fundamental tenets of
the, 23; the realization of the, 65
passim; Units of the, 16, 32, 33,
38, 49; the Wheel of the, 3n, 10, 71
digits, two, 38
diligence, 11, 19, 48, 53
disciple(s), 13, 77–9, 90, 106; the lay,
73, 74
Discipline, 1; adept in the purport
of, 21; amenable to, 22; the
Basket of, 18; see vinaya and
cpdd., Pali Index; the Code of, 1
discourse(s). 1, 5, 24, 25, 27, 31, 48,
61, 65 ff.; 81–3; see sutta ff.,
kathā and desanā, Pali Index;
doctrinal, 65; on transciency, 8
Discourse (Sutta, the Anga), 31n
Dispensation, 1, 3 passim; see
dāsana, Pali Index; the heir of the,
50, 51; the mainstay of the, 1n;
the roots of the, 105; of the
Buddha, 13, 39, 46, 48, 50, 98; of
the Lord of Ten Powers, 50; of
the Teacher, 53; the Ninefold, 4
dispositions, divers, 25
dispute, 38, 40, 55, 60, 92
distraction, 11
districts, border, see border
divan, 42 passim; see pallaṇāka, Pali
Index
divinity, tutelary, 77, 101
Doctrine, the Analytical, 62; see
Vibhajjavāda, Proper Names
dogma, philosophical, 39, 54
dona measure, 97n
doubt, 58, 60

charge, to place in, 13, 15
chariot, 81–3, 85; see carriage
chief in office, 37, 106
circumambulate, 43, 98
circumstances, adapted to, 25
cloisters, see caṅkama, Pali Index.
clouds, snowy, 97, 99, 103
collar-bone, 87, 88, 93, 97
collection, see compilation, -s, 16
command, the wheel of, 10
commentary, 2, 43; commentaries,
1, 52
compilation, 14 passim; see saṅgha
and saṅgīti (recital), Pali Index
composure, 41, 46
comprehension, 26
concentration, 1, 26, 29, 107
condition(s), 23; of innocence, 32;
secondary, of guilt, 32; pile of, 25;
transcendental, 23
conduct, virtuous, 72
crassification, 21–3
consecration; articles required for
the, 78; Asoka’s, see Asoka;
Devānampiyatissa’s, 74, 79; of the
Great Bodhi, 98, 99; of the young
Bodhi trees, 103
constructions, new, 49n
contact, 23
convent, 95
conversion, Asoka’s, see Asoka; of
the Border Kingdoms, 64 ff.; of
Ceylon, 73 ff.; Devānampiyat-
tissa’s, 81
convert, to, 67–72, 75, 86
(Convocation) of the Elders (Therīkā),
33; pertaining to the Five Hun-
dred, 33; pertaining to the One
Thousand, 62; of the Seven
Hundred, 38
Convocations, 33 ff., 38 ff., 62 ff.
Convocation(s), the, 38, 52, 53; the
(first), 5; the First, 20; the First
Great, 2, 3, 33, 34; of the Five
Hundred, the Section Dealing with,
2n; the Great, 105; the Second,
38, 40; Section dealing with the,
(i.e., the first), 6n; the Third, 35,
37, 62, 63, 64, 106
convocation hall, 12; see dhama-
sabhā
corollaries, 14, 21n
couch (of the brahmin youth), 42;
high and comfortable, 83
course, the wrong, 5n
court, ladies of the, 83, 95, 96, 103
criticism, hostile, 5
dream (Asoka's), 59
duty done, 38
dyad, 32

E
earthquake, 60, 64, 89, 94, 99, 103, 104, 106; see mahābhūmīcāla and pathavikampana, Pali Index
ease, 107
eel-wrigglers, 62
effort, 11
ego, 25
Elder(s), 1-12 passim; see therai, Pali Index; (Mahinda) 52, 55, 64, 73-7, 79-87, 90, 93-5, 103-7; (Moggalipurta), 37, 43, 50-2, 55, 58-64; leader of a group, 98; leading, in the Sangha, 3, 74; the sixty-eight Great, 106; the Tradition of the, 1, 52
Elder(nun), 51, 95 passim; (Sanghamittā) 95, 96, 101, 103
element, component, 19; of Nibbāna, 3, 17, 106
elephant, the state, 83, 87-9
elephant's frontal, 89
elephants' stall, 83, 93
emancipation, 1, 107; knowledge and insight into, 107; the taste of, 17; of mind, 107
Enlightenment, the Perfect, 17; the eye of, 75, 90-2
end, the highest, 106
eternalists, 62; the qualified, 62
ethics, popular, 25
etymology, 42
evil, 57, 61
evil-conduct, 29
exegesis, protracted, 1
exercises, preliminary, 43
exertion, 11
existence, theory of, (1) conscious, 62; (2) non-conscious, 62; (3) neither conscious nor non-conscious, 62
existence to existence, 1
expediency, 21-3
expert, 4 passim; see etadagga, Pali Index
exposition, 1, 2, 26, 27; method of, 1
Expositions, 31; (Veyyākaraṇa, the Anga), see Pali Index
eye-tooth, 82, 88

F
factions, 3
Factors, 16
faculties, 46

failure, 24, 28, 29
families, eight, of ministers, 100; eighteen of royal clan, 100n; sixteen noble, 102n
fan inlaid with ivory, 10, 13-15
fear, a factor among the four wrong courses, 5
festival, 74, 93; see dedication
festivities, 77; sacred, 7n
fifties, groups of, 33
finiteness, theory of, 62
fire, the sacrificial, 55
fires, the five, 55n
floor-carpets, 83
flowers of the five colours, 83, 102n
food, when permissible, 81
food and raiment, 54
form, the arising of, 23
friends who had not seen each other, 78
fruits, attained the, 81; of the Bodhi tree, 99, 103; of the First Stage, 65; of the path, 69-71; of Stream-Entrantship, 43, 83

G
gain and honour, 39, 54
garments, 29, 78; to wave aloft, 98; white, 62; yellow patch-work, 65, 77
gate-keeper (Devānampiyatissa as), 102
gaze, the offering of, 45
Gems, the Triad of, 1, 74
gifts, to Asoka from Devānampiyatissa, 78; of Asoka to D., 78; see dhammapaṇḍakāra, Pali Index
glossaries, 42
goblins, 72
gold and silver, the acceptance of, 38
Great Being, characteristics (32) of, 45; the minor marks (80) of, 45
group, leader of, 106

H
habitation, human, 76
habits, good moral, 72
hail-storm, 65
hall (of justice), 54; of meditation, 56; of tonsure, 47, 86
halo, 45
heresy, propounders of, 38
heresies, the refutation of, 25
heretical schools, the criticism of, 9; sects, outside, 46; theories, 62; the sixty-two, 25n; teachers born of the brahmin caste, 46
Inception of Discipline

heretics, 9, 39, 54, 55, 62
hide, the piece of, 58
humours, 8

I

ignorance, 1
ill-will, a factor among the four wrong courses, 5
immortality, 48
impassibility, 107
impermanence, 40
individual, undesirable, 6
indolence, 48
Indulgences, the Ten, 38
infinitude, the theory of, 62
influence, 37, see ānubhāva, Pali Index
injunctions, 21; authoritative, 25; the exposition of, 25
insight, analytic, 4, 29, 38-40, 42, 52, 62; in gradual order, 103; of a learner, 5; of one perfected, 5; the fourfold, 29
insight into the Dhamma, 66; into emancipation, 1
instruction, 17, 48; understood the, 81
intention(s), 22, 57, 61
intercourse, sexual, 14
intoxicants, drinking of, 72
Invitation, the (ceremony), 54n, 55; day, 87, 99n, 106
Island, the (i.e. Lāṅkā), 63, 75-7, 84, 94, 102, 103, 106

Jaṭaka, the Aṅga, 31n
joy, 48, 89, 98, 102, 107; and fervour, 50, 89, 98, 99
Joy, the Stanza of, 19
Joy, the Utterance of (Udāna, the Aṅga), 31n
judgment(s), 1, 39

K

kindred topics, 33; sections, 33
King, the (Asoka), 44-6, 48-62, 74, 87, 88, 96-101; (Devānampiya-tissa), 75, 77-87, 89, 93-5, 102-6
kings, consecrated, 98n
kinsmen, 61, 73; the question on, 80
knowledge, 27; analytical, 1, 4, 27, 29, 38-40, 42, 52, 62; the higher, 3n, 29, 55, 60, 82; see abhiññā, Pali Index; higher, the sixfold, 35;

L

labour, 10
language of the Island, 1n
lay-devotee, 47
Learner, 5n, 11; the analytic insight of a, 5; conditions pertaining to a, 23
Learning, 4, 13, 24, 28, 29; the divisions of, 28, 29; men of, 1; the three modes of, 28; of the Three Pitakas, 62; of the Vinaya, 13, 107
legacy, 36
life, the higher, 1; the destruction of, 72
lineage, 36; the protector of the, 3
lion-window, 46n-8
liquor, unfermented, the indulgence in, 38
lists, of contents, 33; stanzas containing, 33
lore, traditional, 42
lotus-shower, 89n
love, 23, 48, 65
lust, 25

M

mango, ripe, 104
mango-tree, the riddle of, 80
Marvellous Phenomena, 31n; (Abhutadhamma, the Aṅga), see Pali Index
mastery, 40, 106
mat, 83n
Mātikā, 21n, see Pali Index
meal, to subsist on one, a day, 72
meaning, 22, 26, 27; differentiated, 24
means, the diversity of, 21
medicaments, 53
medicines, 54
meditation, topics of, 43
mendicants, religious, 46
merit, 11, 45, 48, 78, 106; the field of, 1; flow of, 1
meritorious deed, 27
Message, 83; see sāsana, Pali Index
metrical compositions, 32
mind, pacified, 47, 48; concentrated, 82; the emancipation of, 107
mindfulness as to the body, 11
ministrations, 8
minor marks, eighty, 45
miracle, 50, 60, 61, 93, 94, 98, 99, 102, 103, 106; see also twin-miracle
misdeeds, 21, 25
missions, the despatch of, 64 ff.
monastery, the first, 84
monastery, monasteries, see vihāra, Pali Index
monasteries of Rājagaha, 9, 10
monk(s), 1, 4–10 passim; see bhikkhu and samana, Pali Index; the
assembly of, 11, 13, 55, 57, 107; the Order of, see Saṅgha and bhikkhusaṅgha, Pali Index;
attentand, 8; overseas, 1
morality, 1, 26; see also sīla, Pali Index
moral precepts, the aggregate (or the code) of, 28, 83, 107; eightfold, 49; the five, 48; see precepts
moral training, 1, 24, 26, 27, 107
mutability, 28

N
Nāga King(s), 44, 45, 65; the two, uncle and nephew, 94
Nāga Kingdom, the offering of, 101
Name and Form, the distinction between, 25
Nibbāna, see nibbāna f. and parinibbāna f., Pali Index; of this life, the theory of, 62
Nikāya(s), 15, 16, 30, 38; the five, 15, 16, 63; the four, 15
Nissagāryapācittiya, 14
Non-Returner, 36, 37
novice, 43, 47, 48, 73 passim; (Sumana), 73, 74, 82, 87–9, 96, 99, 102
nun, 50, 52; see also Elder(-nun)

O
object, visual and auditory, 23
objective, 22
obligations, major and minor, 107
oblivion, 3
obstacles, 1
occasion, 2, 14, 15, 34, 35; of the Vinaya, 106
offence(s), 14, 25; the demarcation of the threefold delimiting factors of, 32
office, chief in, 37, 106
Omniscience, 19
Once-Returner, 36, 37
Order, the, 1, 6, 13, 15, 38, 49, 52, 54, 62, 78, 97, 98, 104; of monks, see bhikkhu saṅgha, Pali Index; to admit into the, see pabbājeti, Pali Index; to enter the, see pabbajati, Pali Index
ordination, 42, 43, 48, 51, 54, 107; aspirant for, 81; the higher, 48, 52, 64, 107; of womenfolk, 95

P
Pācittiya, 14
paddy, a heap of, 93
palace, inner apartments of the, 46, 48, 85
pālanquin, 58, 78
Pārājika, 20, 21n
parasol of state, 45, 48, 78, 87–9, 103
partridge, 61
past, in the, In
path, developed the, 28; the fruits of, 69–72; skilled in the, 63
Pātīdesanīya, 14
Pātimokkha, 20, 21n
pavilion, 10, 83, 105
pearl, eight varieties of, 78
perfected, the man, 23
perfection, 5
person, the, 14, 15, 34
phantoms, 72
phenomena, of excellence, 23, 27; psychic, 106
phonology, 42
pillar, stone, 105
pitaka, the Three, 4, 38, 40, 43, 44, 52, 62, 63; see tipiṭaka f. and pitaka, Pali Index
pleasures, sensual, 3
Porāṇa, 63n, 74, 75
postures, 11 passim; see iriyāpatha, Pali Index
potentialities, latent, 47
power, psychic, 40, 49, 65–7, 72, 74, 79, 89, 106; and see cpdd. of iddhi, Pali Index
powers, royal, 44, 105; supernatural (or potency), 12, 44, 45, 47, 49, 56, 78, 91–3, 97, 102; see ānubhāva, Pali Index
practices, manifold distinctive modes of, 21
praise and blame, 15
precedence, the order of, 106
precedent, to follow (the indulgence), 38
preceptor, 43, 47, 48, 52, 73
precepts, 28, 48, 49, 72; see moral
precepts (āśīra), the ten, 95
pre-eminence, 13
pregnancy, 47
principles, 48
profundity, 24, 26, 27; the fourfold,
26n, 27
pupils, resident, 52, 59, 63, 106;
co-resident, 36n-8, 64, 106
purgative in milk, 8

Q
qualifications, sufficing, 55; inherent
sufficing, 51
Queens, the two (Devānampiya-
tissa's), 85
questions, the settlement of, 14

R
Rains-residence, 6n, 7n, 8, 43, 85–7
raw-flesh, the smell of, 11
rays, the glorious, 101, 102; six-
hued, 97, 99, 102, 103
reality, in accordance with, 25
realization, 27; unequivocal, 27; of
the Dhamma, 65, 67, 72, 82–4,
90–2
recital, see santī and cpdd., Pali
Index
Recital, the Second, 38, 39
Recitation (Geyya, the Aṅga), 31n; see
Pali Index
recluse, 41, 42, 46; shaven-headed,
65, 77
Recluse, the Great, 3
reflexion, 17
refuge, to seek, 78
Refuges (The Three), 48, 65, 72, 78,
81, 82, 87
regions, the six heavenly, 39n
rehearsal, see sangaha, Pali Index
Rehearsal, the Third, 64
release, 28
religion(s), 87–9, 93, 94, 97; the casket
of, 89; the ceremony in honour of,
93, 94; pay homage to, 7
remissness of conduct, 21, 25
remorse, the absence of, 107
repairs, 8; of dilapidations, 9, 10
repetitions, 33
reproach, 28
requisites, 28, 51, 53, 87; the four,
49n, 54; the giver of, 50, 51
resort (for alms), 107
restraint, 25, 107
revulsion, 107
ritual, 42
robe(s), 43, 56, 83; the outer, 83;
upper, 56; yellow, 54, 94, 95
aglow with the yellow, 65, 79; to
arrange over one shoulder, 13, 15;
to wear yellow (i.e. heretics), 54
royal grounds (rājavatthu), 102
royalty, ensigns of, 78
ruddy-deer, 77
rugs, 10n, 38
rule, 14; -s, rigid, 21
rulers, the succession of, 76

S
Sacred-word, 3
sacrifice, 50, 51
sage(s), 69, 70, 106; breeze hallowed
by, 65, 79; sinless (nāga), 63, 65, 74,
88
Sage of great stability, 1
salt in horn (the indulgence), 38
sanction, 38
Sanghādīseha, 14
saplings (the three bamboo-), 78;
Bodhi-tree, 103
Saviour, 50; see World
screens, an enclosure of, 62
seat, preacher's 10, 13–15, 106;
president's, 10, 14
Sekhiya, 14
self-controlled, 47, 48
seniority, the order of, 12
sensations, 23
sense-data, 23
senses, controlled, 48; guarded, 47,
48
sentiment, uniformity in, 16, 17
service, 50
sīma, 38n, 52n; see Pali Index
Sons of the (Buddha), In
sooth-sayers, 83
sovereignty of Jambudīpa, the dedi-
cation of the, 99–101; of Tamba-
pāṇi, the dedication of the, 102
speech, see body and speech
stains (of the Dispensation), 62
Stanzas (Gāthā, the Aṅga), 31n, see
Pali Index
state, immortal, 40; -s, waxed great,
immeasurable, incomparable, 23
statements, incorrect, 1
Stream-Entrant, 4, 36, 37, 43, 83
striving, 11
General Index

subject (vatthu), 14, 15, 32, 34
subjective, 22
substratum, free from the material, 3, 11, 17, 106, 107
success, 24, 28, 29
sun-worship, 55
Sutta, Suttanta, see Pali Index; versed in the, 1
sword-bearers, 59

T

tabulation, 2, 21, 32, 34, 107
tanks filled with medicaments, 53
task yet unaccomplished, 5, 11
teacher, 42, 43, 47, 48, 52 (Pali, ācariya); -s, heretical, see heretics, ff.; of yore, 1n; the succession of, 35, 37, 63, 106
Teacher, the (Satthā), see Proper Names
Teaching(s), the, 1, 3–5, 55, 92, 94; see also sāsana, Pali Index (samaṇa), 62; the Exalted Universal Monarch of the Good, 45; the Good, 1, 3, 38, 40, 63, 107; of the Master, 55
teachings, 28; adapted to circumstances, 25; the exposition of popular, 25; necessitated by transgression, 25; set out in accordance with reality, 25
tendencies, latent, 27
terms, the analysis of, 32
Texts, Sacred, 1, 14, 26; and meaning, 107
thought-process, 32
Thus Saids (Itivuttaka, the Aṅga), 31n; see Pali Index
tongue, different, In
tooth cleaner, 43, 44; stick, 43
tour, missionary, 8
tradition, textual, 1
training, see sikkhā, Pali Index
training, the methods of, In; individual intent on, 107; the three-fold, 26
transgressions, 25, 26; physical and verbal, 21, 106
treasurer, the mode of learning of a, 28
treasures (Devānampiyatissa’s), 78; of the Dhamma, to shower upon, 83
Treatises, the seven (Abhidhamma), 63

truth, the absolute, 25; ultimate, 25; he who had visioned the, 74
Twin-miracle, 93, 97

U

undertaking, gigantic, 6
upheavals in the Dispensation, 55
uposatha, 38n passim; see Pali Index; -hall, 104; the day of the, 87, 99
uprising, frontier, 55
Utterance, mixed prose and verse, 5n passim; see Recitation, and geyya, Pali Index

V

vase, golden, 97–9, 103
Viceroy (Prince Tissa), 51, 56
views, divergent, 62; perverse, 25; wrong, 29; see also heretical
Vinaya and cpdd., see Pali Index; the essential rules of the (abhi-vinaya), 23; the learning of the, 13, 107; the legacy of the, 36; the lineage of the, 36; the perfection of knowledge in the, 36, 37; the retention of the, 13; tradition, 36; in the Khuddakanikāya, 15n virtues, 1, 29; transcendental, 48
volition, 61

W

water-snake, the simile of the, 28
water-strainer, 90
whey, the indulgence in, 38
will, to, 61; resolution of, 42, 60, 77, 82, 93, 95, 97; the five great resolutions of, 97; determination of, 42, 95, 97
wisdom, 1, 26, 31
wish, the express, 5
womenfolk, to admit, into the Order, 95
World of Brahma, see Brahma, Proper Names
world of men, 39
World, the Lord of the, 3; the Saviour of the, 50; the Unveiling of the, 50

Y

yellow-robe, see robe
### INDEX II

#### INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

**A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abhaya (1)</td>
<td>Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abhaya (2)</td>
<td>king of Ceylon, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abhaya (3)</td>
<td>king of Ojadipa, 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abhaya (4)</td>
<td>Devānampiyatissa’s brother, 94n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abhaya (5)</td>
<td>see Duṣṭṭhāgamāṇī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abhayaapura</td>
<td>capital of Ojadipa, 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abhayavāpi</td>
<td>93n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abhidhammapiṭaka</td>
<td>20, 24–6, 30, 31, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggibrāhmaḥ</td>
<td>Asoka’s son-in-law, 51, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggikkhandhūpama</td>
<td>Suttanta, 68n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahoganāṇa</td>
<td>55n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajātasattu</td>
<td>10, 15, 76, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alakadeva</td>
<td>missionary to the Himalayan region, 71n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaravatī</td>
<td>50n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambalaṭṭhiṇa</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambaṅgana</td>
<td>104n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambatthala</td>
<td>77n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anamatagga</td>
<td>-ggiya, 67, 84n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ånanda, the Elder</td>
<td>3, 5, 7, 8, 11–13, 15, 18, 31, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Åṅguttaranikāya</td>
<td>15, 20, 30, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anotatta</td>
<td>the lake (Anotattadaha), 44n, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anulā, the Princess</td>
<td>Anulādevī, 83, 95, 96, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anurādhapura</td>
<td>75, 83, 93, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anuruddha (1)</td>
<td>the Elder, 7, 8, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anuruddha (2)</td>
<td>king of Magadha, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apāṇānaśīla</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apannakajataka</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aparanta</td>
<td>64, 68n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appamādavagga</td>
<td>48; see Diligence, the Chapter on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aravāḷa (1)</td>
<td>the lake, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aravāḷa (2)</td>
<td>the Nāga King, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ariṭṭha (1)</td>
<td>63, 86n, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ariṭṭha (2)</td>
<td>95, 96, 101, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Åsandiṃiṭṭā</td>
<td>Asoka’s Queen, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Åsīvīpama Suttanta</td>
<td>65n, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asoka (1)</td>
<td>44, 46–8, 51–3, 74, 76, 78, 79, 87, 88, 97, 101; see also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asokamahāvihāra</td>
<td>Dhammāsoka, the King and General Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asoka Monastery</td>
<td>the Great (Asokamahāvihāra), 49, 55, 56, 62, 73; see the next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asokārāma</td>
<td>48, 49, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āyupālli</td>
<td>the nun, 52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bhadda</td>
<td>Mahinda’s companion, 63; same as the next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhaddasālā</td>
<td>64, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhagavā</td>
<td>see Exalted One</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhandukāsa</td>
<td>the lay companion of Mahinda, 73, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhikkhunivibhānaga</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bindusāra</td>
<td>44, 46, 47, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodhi</td>
<td>the Bodhi Tree, 75, 93, 95, 97, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodhi</td>
<td>the young Bodhi-trees, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodhi</td>
<td>the Great, 94–104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahama</td>
<td>10n, 39–42, 45, 51, 82, 98, 99, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahama</td>
<td>the abode of, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahama</td>
<td>the world of, 39–42, 51, 82, 99, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahma</td>
<td>the deities of the hosts of, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmadatta</td>
<td>the brahmin youth, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmadājala</td>
<td>15n, 20, 30, 72; see the next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmadājala Suttanta</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhā</td>
<td>1, 2, 10, 11, 32, 34, 35, 45, 54, 78, 79, 91, 104, 106; see also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhā</td>
<td>Enlightened One</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhā</td>
<td>the Dispensation of the, 13, 39, 46, 48, 50, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhā</td>
<td>the form of, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhā</td>
<td>the power of the, 90, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhā</td>
<td>the word of the (or sayings of), 15, 16, 18, 19, 29–33, 39–41, 43, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhásis</td>
<td>11, 45, 92, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhāvaṁsa</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**C**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Candaṭṭutta</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candanaṇāmahāsa</td>
<td>103n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candavajji</td>
<td>the Elder, 40, 43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index of Proper Names

Cariyāpiṭaka, 20
Cetaka, the Elder, 8
Cetāḷīgāma, 94n
Cetiyagiri, 85–8; see the next
Cetiyapabbata, 75, 90, 103; see Missaka
Chaddantaka lake, 44n
Chāṭaka(k)a mountain (Chāṭakapabbata), 78n
Cittapariyādāna Sutta, 20, 30
Cittayamaka, 42n
Cūḷābhaya, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Cūḷadeva, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Cūḷahathipadopamaka Sutta, 81n
Cūḷanāga, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Cūḷavedalla Sutta, 31n

D
Dakkhinagiri, the district (-jana-pada), 73n
Dāsaka, the Elder, 35, 36, 63
Death (Maccu), 48
Deva (1), Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Deva (2), the Alderman, 74
Devadūta Sutta(nta), 66n, 83
Devakutapabbata, 90
Devānampiyatissa, 73–8, 87, 96, 102, 105; see also Tissa (5) and the King, in the General Index
Devatāsāmyutta, 30
Devī, Mahinda’s mother, 74
Dhamma, the, 1, 3–6, 9, 13, 15, 19, 26, 28, 29, 32, 33, 35, 38, 49, 52, 54, 55, 62, 78, 81, 90–2, 107; the banner of, 105; the compilation of, 10, 35; discourse on, 65, 83; the eye of (insight into), 66; the gift of 78; the King of, 77, 79, 106; listening to, 82; the nectar of, 68; the noble, 1; preachers of, 58; the realisation of, 65, 67, 72, 82–4, 90–2; the rehearsal of, 5, 64; shower of the treasures of, 83; Units of, 16, 32, 33, 38, 49; versed in, 54; wheel of, 10.
Dhamma, the Turning of the Wheel of the, 71
Dhamma and Vinaya, 3, 16, 18, 33, 43, 55; the compilation of, 10
Dhammacakkappavattana Suttanta, 71n
Dhammapada, 20, 31, 48
Dhammapālī, the nun, 52
Dhammapālīta, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Dhammarakkhitā, the Yona, 56n, 64, 68
Dhammasaṅgani, 20
Dhammasoka, 39; see Asoka (1)
Dhātukathā, 20
Dīgha, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Dīghanikāya, 8, 15, 20, 30, 33
Dīghasumana, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63, 106
Dīghavāpicetiyā, 94n
Diligence, the, Chapter on, 48
Dīpavamsa, 78
Divine Messengers, see Devadūta Sutta
Dundubhissara, missionary to the Himalayan region, 71n
Duṭṭhagāmāni Abhaya, 104, 105
Dvāramsānda, 94n

E
Enlightened One, 1, 3, 13, 102; see Buddha; the functions of, 3; the Perfectly, 13, 45, 62, 75, 76, 87, 89, 94, 102
Enlightened Ones, three previous, 93; Perfectly, 90, 92, 95, 102
Exalted One, 2, 3, 5, 8–11, 14, 17, 25, 29, 34–6, 38, 75, 76, 90–3, 95, 97, 102, 104, 106, 107; see Bhagavā.

F
Fragrant Chamber (Gandhakuti), 8

G
Gabled Hall (Kūṭāgārasālā), 38
Gaṇḍamba, 93
Gandhāra, see Kasmīra-Gandhāra
Ganges, 58, 59, 78, 100
Gotama, the Recluse, 9
Great Wood (Mahāvana), 38

H
Himalayas, 44, 65, 71; the districts bordering the, 64, 71

I
Iddhiya, see Iṭṭhiya
Inda, 23; see also Sakka
Indagutta, the Elder, 49
Issaranimmāna Monastery, 103n
Inception of Discipline

Itivuttaka, 20, 31
Iṭṭhiya, Mahinda's companion, 63, 64, 73-5

J

Jambudīpa, 35, 37, 39, 44, 48, 50, 63, 75-7, 79, 87, 98-101; see Jambusiri
Jambukola, 95n, 101-3
Jambusiri, the (is)land of (Jambusirivhaya dīpa), 35, 63; see Jambudīpa
Jātaka, 20, 31
Jayanta, king of Manḍapīpa, 92
Jeta Grove, 8; see the next
Jetavana Monastery, 8
Jetṭhamūla, the month, 74; the asterism (nakkhatta), 77
Jivaka's Grove (-van'uy-ya), 64, 65
Jotī Grove (-vana), Nandanavana renamed, 84

K

Kācaragāma, 103n
Kākanḍakaputta, see Yasa
Kakusandha, the Buddha, 90, 102
Kāla, the Nāga King, 45
Kālakārāma Suttanta, 70n
Kāḷāsoka, 38, 76; see Asoka (2)
Kālasumana, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63, 106
Kālin āga, the natives of (Kālin āga-kula), 100
Kalyāṇicitīya, 94n
Kaṇṭakacitīya, 86n
Kasmīra-Gandhāra, 64, 65
Kassapa, the Buddha, 92, 102
Kassapa, the Elder, see Mahākassapa
Kassapagotta, missionary to the Himalayan region, 71n
Kathāvatthu, 20, 62
Kattikā, the month, 87, 99
Khandhaka, 14, 19, 20, 31
Khattiya, 56, 68
Khema, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Khuddakanikāya, 15, 20n, 30, 33
Khuddakapāṭha, 20, 31
Khujiyasobhita, Ananda's saddhi-vihārika, 38
Konāgamana, the Buddha, 91, 102
Kontiputtatissa, the Elder, 53
Kurundi, 1n
Kusinārā, 3n, 4
Kūṭāgārasālā, see Gabled Hall

L

Laṅkā, the Island of, 74, 83, 97, 98; see also Tambapāṇi and the Island (General Index)
Lohapāsāda, 104n
Lord of great compassion, 1; of Ten Powers, 5 passim; see dasabala in Pali Index; of the World, 3
Lands, the Western, 64, 68n; see Aparanta

M

Maccu, see Death
Maggasira, the month, 101, 102
Mahā-appamāda Sutta, 85n
Mahā-ariṭṭha, 63, 86n, 105, 106; see also Ariṭṭha (1)
Mahā-āṭṭhakathā, 1n
Mahābodhi, see Bodhi and Bodhi, the Great
Mahābrahmā, see Tissa (6)
Mahācetiya, 94n, 97, 104
Mahādeva (1), Mahinda's ācariya at ordination and missionary to Mahimsakamaṇḍala, 52n, 64n, 66
Mahādeva (2), companion of Majjhima (v.1., Sahadeva), 71n
Mahādeva (3), Buddha Kukṣusandha's disciple, 90
Mahādeva (4), Asoka's minister, 97
Mahādhammarakkhita, missionary to Mahāraṭṭha, 64, 69
Mahākassapa, the Elder, 3-8, 13-5, 33-5, 38, 62
Mahā-Mahinda, 87, 106; see Mahinda
Mahāmegha Pleasure-grove (-van'uy-yāna), 84, 102; see Meghavana
Mahānāga, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Mahānāga Grove (-vana), 89; see the next
Mahānāga Pleasure-grove (-van'uy-yāna), 87, 88, 102
Mahānaraddakassapa Jātaka, 69n
Mahāpaccheri, 1n
Mahāpupunama Sutta 31n
Mahārakkhita, missionary to the Yonaka Kingdoms, 64, 70
Mahāraṭṭha, 64, 69
Mahāsāṅgīti, see Convocation, the Great (General Index)
Mahāsirisabodhi, see Sirisabodhi, the Great
Mahāsiva, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Mahāsūman, disciple of Buddha Konāgamana, 91
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mahāvaruṇa, the Arahant, Nigrodha's acāriya</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahāvibhaṅga</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahāvedalla Sutta</td>
<td>31n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahāvihāra, 1n</td>
<td>84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahēvataṭhū, 89n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahinda, 51, 52, 55, 63, 64, 73-7, 82, 83, 87, 88, 90, 94, 103, 106; see also Mahā-Mahinda and the Elder (General Index)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahīsa, Mahīsaka, Mahimsaka- (maṇḍala and raṭṭha)</td>
<td>64, 66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majjhantika</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mahinda's acāriya at higher ordination and missionary to Kasmira-Gandhāra, 52n, 64, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majjhima, missionary to the Himalayan region, 64n, 71</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majjhimanikāya</td>
<td>15, 20, 30, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mallā, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maṇḍadīpa, 92n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maṅgāla Sutta, 31n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mattābhaya, Devānampiyatissa's brother; see Abhaya (4)</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meghavāna Park, 94; Pleasure-grove, 94; see Mahāmeghavāna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meghavānābhaya, the minister, 105 Missaka mountain (-pabbata), 74, 75, 77, 83, 84; see Cetiya-pabbata and Cetiyagiri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moggali, the brahmin, 39-41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moggaliputta Tissa, the Elder, 35, 37, 43, 50-2, 55, 58, 62-4, 97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulakadēva, see Alakadēva</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulaparīyāya Sutta, 20, 30n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mnūḍa, king of Magadhā, 76</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūṭasīva, king of Ceylon, 73n, 75, 76 Mutiyāṅganacetiya, 94n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naggā, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63 Nāgadāsaka, king of Magadhā, 76 Nālandā, 15n Nālaka Sutta, 31n Nalurupucimanda, 106 Nandana Grove (-vana), 83, 84; see the next Nandana Pleasure-grove (-van'yāna), 83, 84; see Joti Grove Nāndas, Nine, 76 Niddesa, 20, 31 Nigrodha, the novice, 47, 48, 54 Nigrodha Bodhi, 102</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oghatarana Sutta</td>
<td>20, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ojadīpa, 90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**P**

Pācīnamahāsāla, see Sāla, Eastern Great Pakunḍaka, Pakunḍakāabhaya, 76n Paṇḍaka (v.l., Paṇḍaka), 65 Paṇḍuvāsadeva, 76 Pārājika, the Chapter on (-kaṇḍa), 14 Pariyāra, 14, 20, 31 Pātaliputta, 39, 50, 59, 65, 87, 95, 97-100 Pāṭhamakacetiya, 83n, 103 Pāṭhamakattikā, 106; see also Pubbakattikā Pāṭisambhidāmaggā, 20 Pātiyārāma, 90 Pāṭṭhāna, 20 Pāvā, 4 Petavatthū, 20, 83 Phussa, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63 Phussadeva, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63 Pubbakattikā, 99; see Pāṭhamakattikā Puppha, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63

**R**

Rājagaha, 6n, 7-9, 15, 73, 75 Rakkhita, missionary to Vanavāsi, 64, 67 Ratana Sutta, 31 Revata, the Elder, 38 Rohana, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63 Rohana, the province of (-jānapada), 103 Rohinī, the asterism (-nakkhatta), 103

**S**

Sabbakāmī, the Elder, 38, 40 Sabbananda, disciple of Buddha Kassapa, 92 Saccasanyutta, 83 Sagātha-vagga, 31 Sahadeva, see Mahādeva (2) Sakka, lord of the deities, 75, 87, 88; the king of the d., 87, 88 Sakkapāḷha Sutta, 31 Sakyaṇ Clan, 5 Sakyas, the Son of the, 78 Sāḷa, Eastern, Great (Pācīnamahāsāla), 99 Sāḷha, Ānanda's saddhivāhīrika, 38 Samacītta Suttanta, 82n Sāmaṇāphalā Sutta, 15
Sambala, Mahinda's companion, 63, 64, 74
Sambuddha, the Enlightened One, 1, 76
Sumiddha, king of Varadipā, 91
Sammādiṭṭhi Sutta, 31n
Samuddāsā, 102n
Samyutta Collection (-sāṅgaha), classification into groups of kindred topics, 33
Sānasambhūta, Ānanda's saddhivihārika, 38
Sāṅgha 1, passim; see Saṅgha ff., Pali Index, and Order, General Index
Saṅghamittā, the Elder (-nun), 51, 52, 56, 73, 95, 96, 101, 103
Saṅkhārabhājaniya Sutta, 31n
Sāriputta, the Elder, 82
Sattapāṇi Cave, 10n
Satthā, see the Teacher
Sāvatthi, 8n, 93
Siggava, Vinaya teacher of India, Moggaliputta's preceptor, 35, 37, 40, 41, 43, 63
Sīha, Vijaya's father, 76
Sīhāla, the Island of (-dīpa), 1
Sīri, 10n
Sīrīsa Bodhi, the Great, 102
Sīva, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Sonaka (1), Vinaya teacher of India, 35-7, 63
Sonaka (2), missionary to Suvannabhumi, 65, 72
Saṇḍa and Uttara (Sonuttara), missionaries to Suvannabhumi, 72
Subha, the brahmin, 8
Subhadda (1), the wandering ascetic, 3n
Subhadda (2), the Buddhapabbajita, 3n; the Section dealing with (Subhaddakaṇḍa), 4n
Subhakkita, 92
Subha Sutta, 8n
Sudinna, son of Kalandaka (K-putta), 14
Sumana (1), Anuruddha's saddhivihārika, 38
Sumana (2), Asoka's brother, 47
Sumana (3), the novice, 73, 74, 82, 87, 88, 96, 97, 99, 102
Sumana (4), Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Sumana (5), another Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Sumāna, wife of Sumana (2), 47
Suppiya, the wandering ascetic, 15
Susunāga, 38n, 76
Suttanipāta, 20, 31
Suttantapiṭaka, 20; see the next
Suttaṭiṭaka, 24-6, 33
Suvannabhūmi, 64, 72
Suvannakūta, 91

T
Tāmalitti, 100n
Tambapāṇi, 63, 64, 73-8, 82, 83, 87, 88, 93, 94, 96, 102, 105; see Laṅkā
Taraccha, 100n
Tathāgata, 1, 5, 7, 31, 35, 38, 44, 50; the sayings of the T., 31
Tavakka, the village of the brahmin, 103
Teacher, the (Satthā), 3, 4, 7-9, 48, 106
Theragāthā, 20, 31
Theravāda, 1, 52
Therigāthā, 20, 31
Thūpārāma, 89, 90, 92, 94, 97, 103-6
Tipiṭaka, 4 passim; see Pali Index, s.v., and Baskets, General Index
Tissa (1), Asoka's brother, 44, 51, 56, 57
Tissa (2), Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Tissa (3), another Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Tissa (4), still another Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Tissa (5), 77; see Devānampiyatissa
Tissa (6), the Great Brahma, 39-41
Tissa (7), see Moggaliputta Tissa
Tissadatta, Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63, 106
Tittirā Jātaka, 61
Tuvaṭaka Sutta, 31

U
Udāna, 20, 31
Udayabhadra, king of Magadha, 76
Udumbara Bodhi, 102
Ujjeni, 47, 74n
Upāli (1), the Elder, 2, 13, 14, 18, 34-6, 63
Upāli (2), Vinaya teacher of Ceylon, 63
Upatissa, king of Magadha, 76
Upavattana, the Sāla Grove, 3
Uttara, missionary to Suvannabhūmi, 64, 72
Uttiya, companion of Mahinda, 63, 64, 74
List of Untranslated Pali Words

V

Vadhamāna, city of Samiddha, 91
Vajji, 38
Vajjivuttaka, 38
Vālukārāma (in Vesālī), 38
Vanavāsi, 64, 67
Varadīpa, 91
Vāsabhagāmi, Anuruddha’s saddhi-vihārika, 38
Vehhāra mountain (-pabbata), 10n
Vedas, the three, 42
Vedisa, 73, 74
Vedisagiri, 75; the Great Monastery of, 74
Vedisa mountain (-pabbata), 75
Vediya, see Vedisa
Verañjā, 2, 34, 35, 106
Vesālī, 14n, 38
Vibhajjavāda, 62
Vibhangā (in Abhidhamma), 20
Vibhangā (in Vinaya), 14, 20, 21, 31
Videhan Princess, the son of (Vedehe-putta), 15
Vijaya, first king of Ceylon, 76

Vimānavatthu, 20, 83
Vinayapitaka, 2, 14, 18, 20, 24-6, 30, 33-5, 37, 43, 63, 106; see also vinaya ff. in Pali Index, Discipline, and Basket of Discipline, in General Index.
Viñjhā forest (Viñjhātavi), 100n
Visākha, the month, 3n, 79
Visāla, city of Jayanta, 92
Vissakamma, 10n, 97
Vuttiya, see Uttiya

Y

Yamaka, 20
Yasa, son of Kākaṇḍaka, 38, 62
Yona, Yonaka, 70
Yonaka Kingdom (Yonakaraṭṭha), 70n; see the next
Yona World, 64n, 70
Yonakadhammarakkhita, see Dhammarakkhita, the Yona
Yonakamahādhammarakkhita, 56n; see Dhammarakkhita, the Yona

INDEX III

LIST OF UNTRANSLATED PALI WORDS

Abbhutadhamma
Abhidhamma
Āga
Aniyata
Arahant(a)
Ārāma
Brahma
Buddha
Cetiya
Deva
Dhamma
Dōpa
Gāthā
Geiya
Itivuttaka
Jātaka
Jhāna
Kahāpaṇa
Manta
Māsaka
Nāga
Nāgalatā
Nībbāna
Nīkāya
Nissaggiyapācittiya
Pācittiya
Pāraṇika
Pariveṇa
Pātidesanīya
Piṭaka
Saddhivihārika
Sambuddha
Sāṁsāra
Saṅgha
Saṅghādisesa
Sekhiya
Sīmā
Supaṇṇa
Sutta
Suttanta
Tathāgata
Thūpa
Udāna
Uposatha
Vagga
Vāha
Vedaḷa
Veyyākaraṇa
Vinaya
Yakkha
Yojaṇa
BUDDHAGHOSĀCARIYASSA SAMANTAPĀSĀDIKĀ
NĀMA VINAY'ĀṬṬHAKATHĀYA BĀHIRANIDĀNĀM
ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE NOTES


Ay. Vinaya Samantapāsādikāy’atthayojanā, Paññāsekhara Mahā Nāyaka Thera, Colombo, 1924.

Sp. Siamese printed text of Samantapāsādikā.


SAMANTAPĀŚĀDIKĀ NĀMA VINAYAṬṬHAKATHĀYA
BĀHIRANIDĀNAṀ

Namo tassa bhagavato arahato sammāsambuddhassā.

SAṂVĀṆṆANĀYA ĀRAMBHO

1. Yo kappakoṭihi pi appameyyaṃ
kālaṃ karonto atidukkarāṇi,1
khedaṃ gato lokahitāya nātho:
namo mahākāruṇikassa tassa.

Asambudham 2 buddhanisevitam yaṃ
bhavābhavam gacchati jīvaloko,
namo avijjadikilesajāla- 3
vidhamsino dhammavarassa tassa.

Guṇehi yo sīlasamādhipāññā-
vimuttīnāṇappabhuṭihi yutto,
khettam janānaṃ kusalathikānaṃ
tam ariyasaṅgham sirasā namāmi.

Icc’ evam accantanamassaneyyaṃ 4
namassamāno ratanattayaṃ yaṃ,
puṇñābhisandaṃ vipulaṃ alattham;
tassānubhāvena hat’antarāyo.

1 T. karāṇi; all other texts read dental n.
2 T. -buddham; all other texts agree on -budham, explained as abhisambujjhanto in Ay.
3 Differences in orthography from T. and O. will not be noted down here. In this text long vowels are transliterated as ā, ī, ū, except when they are sandhi-products when they are represented as ā, ī, ū. The niggahita alone is represented as m and the nasal followed by a letter of the guttural class as n. The apostrophe is not used when the initial i of iti coalesces with the final vowel of the preceding word. T. uses the macron for all long vowels including sandhi-products while O. uses the circumflex mark throughout. O. does not use the symbol n at all, while T. is not uniform. The variation in the use of the cerebral letters n, ū, will also not be noted unless there is a special reason for noting it down.
4 P. -niyāṃ.
Yasmīṃ thīte sāsanam aṭṭhitassā
patīṭhitam hoti susaṇṭhitassā,
tam vaṇṇayissām vinayāṃ amissām
nissāya pubbācariyāṇubhāvām.

Kāmaṇ ca pubbācariyāsabhehi
nāṇambuniddhotamāśavehi
visuddhavijjāpaṭisambhidehi
saddhammasaṃvaṃṇanakovidehi,

Sallekhiye no sulabhūpamehi
Mahāvihārassa dhajāpamehi,
saṃvaṃṇito 'yāṃ vinayo nayehi
cittehi sambuddhavaranvayehi.

Saṃvaṃṇanā Sīḥalādīpakena
vākyena esā pana saṅkhaṭṭā, na kiṃci atthāṃ abhisambhunāti
dipantare bhikkhuṣanassa yasmā,

Tasmā imaṃ pālinayānurūpaṃ
saṃvaṃṇanaṃ dāni samārabhissāṃ,
ajjhesanāṃ Buddhāsirivhayassa
therassa sammā samanussaranto.

Saṃvaṃṇam taṃ ca samārabhanto
tasmā 2 Mahā-aṭṭhakathāṃ sarīraṃ
datvā Mahāpaccarīyaṃ tath’eva
Kurundināmādisu vissutāsu,

Vinicchayo aṭṭhakathāsu vutto
yo yuttam atthāṃ apariccajanto,
tato pi antogadhatheravādaṃ
saṃvaṃṇanaṃ samma 3 samārabhissāṃ.

1 T. Sihara-; all texts agree on Sīhala-.
2 P.E.V. tassā.
3 metri causa.
Arambho

Tām me nisāmentu pasannacittā therā ca bhikkhū navamajjhīmā ca dhammappadīpassa Tathāgatassā sakkacca dhammaṁ patimānayantā.¹

Buddhena dhammo vinayo ca vutto yo tassa puttehi tatheva ñāto, so yehi tesāṇ matim accajantā yasmā pure aṭṭhakathā akeṣu,

[3] Tasmā hi yaṁ aṭṭhakathāsu vuttaṁ tāṁ vajjayitvāna pāmādalekham, sabbam pi sikkhāsu sāgāravānam yasmā pāmānaṁ idha paṇḍitānam. ¹²

Tato ca bhāsantaram eva hitvā vīthāramaggaṁ ca samāsayitvā, vinicchayaṁ sabbam asesayitvā tantikkammaṁ kañci avokkamitvā,

Suttantikānaṁ vacanānam atthaṁ suttānuṟūpaṁ paridīpayantī, yasmā ayam hessati vannanā pi sakkacca tasmā anusikkhitabba ti.²

2. Tattha : tāṁ vanṇayissam vinayan ti vuttattā vinayo tāva vavattapetabbo, ten'etāṁ vuccati : vinayo nāma idha saka- laṁ Vinayapiṭakaṁ adhippetaṁ. Saṁvanṇanattham pan'assa ayam mātikā :

Vuttaṁ yena yadā yasmā dhāritaṁ yena cābhataṁ, yatthapatiṭṭhitaṁ c'etam etām ³ vatvā vidhiṁ tato.

¹ T. paṭi-.
² T. p. 3, n. 3, observes : The Chinese translation, A.D. 498, omits the verses 6–16 chiefly referring to the Śīhaṅa aṭṭhakathā, while it adds six other verses which are not found in Pali. The general purport is something like this: (I expound the meaning of Vinaya) "so that the Good Law may long remain in the world and all beings fully enjoy its benefit. By the merit of this I desire to dispel all evils (hat'antarāyā). If one wishes to keep the precept (sīla) one should keep it (until one is) freed from all sufferings." As to vv. 4 and 5, only the first half of 4 and the second half of 5 are reproduced in Chinese, though not precisely.
³ T. Differences due to errors in printing will not be generally pointed out.
Tenāti ādipāṭhassa attham nānappakārato
dassayanto karissāmi vinayass' atthavanaṇṇanam ti.

Tattha: vuttaṃ yena yadā yasmar ti idam tāva vacanām
tena samayena Buddho bhagavā Veraṇṭṭayaṃ viharatīti evam
ādivacanāṃ sandhāya vuttaṃ. Idaṃ hi Buddhassā bhagavato
attapaccakkhavacanānaṃ na hoti, tasmā vattabbam [4] ev’etaṃ,
idaṃ vacanāṃ kena vuttaṃ, kāda vuttaṃ,2 kasmā ca vuttan
ti. Āyasmatā Upālittherena vuttaṃ, tāṃ ca pana paṭhama-
mahāsaṅgītikāle. Paṭhamaṃmahāsāṅgītīti nāma c’esa kiṃcāpi
Paṇicasatikasaṅgītikkhandhake suvutta,3 nidānakosallattham
pana idhāpi iminā nayena veditabbā.

Paṭhamaṃmahāsaṅgītīvanṇanā

3. Dhammacakkappavattanām 4 hi ādimm katvā yāva Subhad-
daparibbājakavinayanā katabuddhakicce Kusinārāyaṃ Upa-
vattane 5 Mallāṇaṃ sălavane yamakasālānam antare Visākha-
puṇṇamadivase paccūsasamaye anupādisesāya nibbānadhātuyā
parinibbute bhagavati lokanāthe bhagavato parinibbāne 6
sannipatīnaṃ sattannāṃ bhikkhusatasahassānaṃ saṅghat-
theroḥ yasmar Mahākassapo, sattāhapaśivibhute bhagavati Subh-
addena buddhāhappabbajitenā: alamī avuso mā socitha mā
paridevittā, sumuttā mayamā tena mahāsamaṇena, upaddutā ca
homa, idam vo kappati idam vo na kappatīti, idāni pana mayam
yam icchissāma tāṃ karissāma, yam na icchissāma na tāṃ 7
karissāmāti vuttavacanānaṃ anussaranto, ṭhānaṃ8 kho pan’etaṃ
vijjati yam pāpabhikkhū: atītasatthukam pāvacanānu
maññamānaṃ pakkham labhitvā na cirass’eva saddhammaṃ
antaradhāpeyyum. Yāva ca dhammavinayo tiṭṭhati tāva
anatītasatthukam eva pāvacanāṃ hoti. Vuttaṃ h’etaṃ

1 P.E.V. omit ev’.
2 T. omits.
3 P.E.V. vutta.
4 O. commences here and proceeds as far as ācariyaparampara�ā ābhatan
ti at Smp. 106, but omits the lengthy discussion on the division and classifica-
tion of the pāvacana, Smp. 19–33.
5 Sum. Upavattham.
6 Sum. dhātubhājanadivase.
7 T. taṃ na for na taṃ.
8 Sum. adds here: edisassa ca saṅghasannipātassa puna dullabhabhāvaṃ
maññamāna.


Bhikkhū āhaṁsu: tena hi bhante therō bhikkhū uccinatūti. Therō sakalanavaṅgasatthusaṅnapariyattidhare puthujjana-sotāpannasakadāgāmi-anāgāmisukkhavipassakakhiṅasavabhi-

1 T.O. yathā.
2 T. tvam me for me tvam.
3 T. sāṇāni.
4 T. anuggahito instead of c’eva.
5 P.E.V. -abhiṅnāppabhide.
6 E. janesīti.
7 Sum. adds: atthaṁ pan’assa mahāparinibbānāvasesē āgataṭṭhāne eva kathayissāma.
8 T. saṅgāyāma agrees with Vin. ii, XI.


Thero hi āyasmanṭe Ānande ativiya vissattho ahosi, tathā hi nam sarasmīṃ palītesu jātesu pi : na vʿāyam kumārako mattaṃ aṇṇāsīty kumāraṇakāvādena vadati. Sakyakulappasuto cāyam āyasmā Tathāgatassa bhātā cūlapīpututo, tatra hi bhikkhū chandāgamanam viya maṇīnaṃna bahū asekhapaṭi-sambhidāppatte bhikkhū ṭhapetvā Ānandaṃ sekhapaṭisambhidāppattam thero uccinīti upavadeyyum. Tam parūpavādaṃ parivajjento : Ānandaṃ vinā saṅgīti na sakkā kātuṃ, bhikkhūnaṃ yevānumatiyā gahessāmīti tam na uccini.

Atha sayam eva bhikkhū Ānandaṃ ātthaya theram yācimṣu. Yathāha : bhikkhū āyasammente Mahākassapoṇaṁ etad avocum : ayaṃ bhante āyasmā Ānando kiṃcāpi sekho abhabbo chandā dosā bhayā mohā agatim gantum, bahu cʿānena bhagavato

1. P.Sp.V. sekkho.
2. P.E.V. sahāpi.
3. T. suttam geyyādikam.
4. Sum. omits up to paṭīggahitaṃ and has apaccakkhaṃ instead and adds after nāma natthi : yathāha,
   dvāṣṭīṃ Buddhato gaṇhip dvesahassāni bhikkhuto, caturāsīti sahassāni ye ʿme dhammā pavattino.

See Smp. 32.
5. T.O. ovdati.
6. T.O. cūla-.
7. P.E.V. asekha-.
8. P.E.V. sekkha-.
santike dhammo ca vinayo ca pariyatto. Tena hi bhante therō ayasmantampi Ānandaṁ uccinatūti. Atha kho āyasmā Mahākassapo ayasmantam pi Ānandaṁ uccini. Evaṁ bhikkhūnaṁ anumatiyā uccinitena tenāyasmatā saddhim paṁca therasatāni ahesuṁ.


1 T.O. add ca.  
2 T.O. aniccatāpati-.  
3 P.E. papphotetvā.
thero bhagavato parinibbānattopabbhuti ThanOrEqualTosaajabahulattā
ussannadhātukaṃ käyaṃ samassāsetum dutiyadivase khīra-
virecanaṃ pivitvā vihāre yeva nisīdi. Yaṃ sandhāya Subhena
māṇavena pahitam māṇavakam etad 1 avoca: akālo kho māṇavaka, atthi me aja bhesajjamattā pīṭa, app’eva nāma
sve pi upasaṅkameyyāmāti. Dutiyadivase Cetakaṭtherena
pacchāsamaṇena gantvā Subhena māṇavena puṭṭho Dīghani-
Kāye Subhāsuttaṃ nāma dasamaṃ suttam abhāsī. Attha kho 2
thero Jetavanavihāre khaṇḍaphullapatisaṅkharaṇāṃ kāra-
petvā upakaṭṭhāya vassūpanāyikāya Rājagaḥama gato. Tathā
Mahākassapathero Anuruddhatthero ca sabbāṃ bhikkhu-
saṅghaṃ gahetvā Rājagaḥama eva gato.

9. Tena kho pana samayena Rājagahe aṭṭhārasa mahāvihārā
honti. Te sabbe pi chaḍḍitapatita-uklāpā ahesun. Bhagavato
hi parinibbāne sabbe bhikkhū attano attano pattacīvaram
gahetvā vihāre ca parivene ca chaḍḍetvā agamāmū. Tattha
therā bhagavato vācanaṃ kāṇḍaphullapatisaṅkharaṇāṃ karomātī cintesun. Tītiyā hī evaṃ vadeyyuṃ: samaṇassa
Gotamassa sāvakā sattthi thite yeva vihāre paṭijaggīṃsu,
parinibbute chaḍḍesun ti, tesamaṃ vādaparimocanatthaḥ ca
cintesun ti vuttam hoti.

[10] Vuttam pi c’etāṃ: atha kho therānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ
etad ahosi: bhagavatā kho āvuso khaṇḍaphullapatiṣaṅkharaṇāṃ
vaṃṇitaṃ, handa mayaṃ āvuso paṭhamamaṃ māsaṃ
khaṇḍaphullapatiṣaṅkharaṇāṃ karama, majjhimaṃ māsaṃ
sannipatitvā dhammaṃ ca vinayaṃ ca saṅgāyissāmāti.

10. Te dutiyadivase gantvā rājadvāre aṭṭhamu. Ajātasattu
rāja āgantvā vanditvā, kim bhante āgata’thāti attanā
kattabbakiccam paṭipucchi. Therā aṭṭhārasamahāvihāra-
patiṣaṅkharaṇatthāya hatthakammaṃ paṭivedesun. Sadhu
bhante ti rāja hatthakammakārake manusse adāsi. Therā
paṭhamamaṃ māsaṃ 3 sabbavihāre paṭisaṅkhārāpetvā 4 rañño

1 T.O. etāṃ.
2 P.E.V. omit.
3 T.O. pathamamaṃsaṃ.
4 E. sabbavihārapaṭisaṅkhārānaṃ kārāpetvā.


Atha kho āyasma Ānando : sve sannipāto, na kho pana 9 me tam patirūpaṁ yvāham 10 sekhā 8 samāno sannipātam

1 T.O. -bhittithambha-
2 T.O. avahasantam iva.
3 P.E.V. -nipatātitham.
4 T.O. -vibhaṅgānaṁ.
5 P.E.V. -viniggilanta-.
6 P.E.V. add c'ettha.
7-7 P.E.V. omit this passage and begin with : Bhikkhū āyasmantaṁ Ānandaṁ āhamsu.
8 P.V. sekkho.
9 Vin. ii, XI, omits.
10 P.E.V. sv 'āham, Vin. ii, XI, yo 'haṁ
gaccheyyan ti bahud eva rattim kāyagatāya satiyyā 1 vītinā-
metvā rattiyā paccūsamayaṃ caṅkamā 2 orohitvā vīhāram
pavisitvā 2 nipajjissāmiti kāyaṃ āvajjesi, dve 3 pāda bhūmito
mutta, appattaṅ ca sīsām bimbohanam, 4 etasmīṃ antare
anupādāya āsāhehi cittamā vimucci. Ayaṃ hi āyasamā [12]
caṅkamena bahi vītināmetvā visesaṃ nibbattetum asakkonto
cintesi : nanu maṃ bhagavā etad avoca : katapuṇño 4 'si
tvam Ānanda padhānām anuyuṅja, khippaṃ hohisi anāsavo
ti. Buddhānaṃ ca kathādoso nāma n’atthi, mama accāraddham
virīyaṃ, tena me cittam uddhaccāya saṃvattati. Handhāṃm
virīyasatamā 5 yojemiti caṅkamā orohitvā pādadhovanat-
thāne ṭhatvā pāde dhovitvā vīhāraham pavisitvā, mancaka
nisiditvā thokamā vissamissāmiti kāyaṃ mancaka upanāmese.
Dve pāda bhūmito mutta, sīsām bimbohanam asampattamā.
Etasmīṃ antare anupādāya āsāhehi cittamā vimuttamā ; catu-
iriyāpathavirahitaṃ therassa arahattam ahosi. 6 Tena imasmīṃ
sāsane anippano anisinno atṭhito acaṅkamanto ko bhikkhu
arahattaṃ pattio ti vutte, Ānandatthero ti vuttam vatttati.

12. Atha therā bhikkhu dutiyādīvase katabhattachikcā patta-
civaram paṭisāmetvā dhammasabdhāyaṃ sannipatitā. Ānandat-
thero pana attano arahattappattim nāpetukāmo bhikkhuhi
saddhīm na gato. Bhikkhu yathābudḍham attano attano
pattasane 7 nisīdantā Ānandattherassa āsanaṃ ṭhapetvā nisin-
nā. Tattha kehe’api 8 etam āsanaṃ kassāti vutte, Ānandassāti.
Ānando pana kuhiṃ gato ti. Tasmīṃ samaye thero cintesi :
dassento paṭṭhaviyām nimujjitvā attano āsane yeva attānām
dassesi. Ākāsenāgantvā 9 nisiditi pi eke.

13. Evaṃ nisinne tasmiṃ āyasmane Mahākassapathero
bhikkhu āmantesi : āvuso kiṃ paṭhamam saṅgāyama dham-
maṃ vā vinayaṃ vāti. Bhikkhu āhamṣu : bhante Mahākas-
sapa, vinayo nāma Buddhāsaśanassa āyup, vinaye thite sāsanam

1 P.E.V. kāyagatāsatiyyā. 2-3 Vin. ii, XI, omits.
4 T. -pañño evidently a printer’s devil, all others -puñño.
5 T.O. -samathamaṃ.
6 P.V. omit.
7 T.O. āsane.
8 T.O. kehic pi.
9 T.O. ākāsena gantvā.


Athā kho āyasma Mahākassapo āyasmantāṃ Upālīṃ paṭhamaśa pārajīkassa vatthum pi pucchi, nidānam pi pucchi, puggalam pi pucchi, paññattim pi pucchi, anupaññattim 7 pi pucchi, āpattim pi pucchi, anāpattim pi pucchi. Yathā ca paṭhamassā tathā dutiyassa tathā tatiyassa tathā catutthassa pārajīkassa vatthum pi pucchi pe anāpattim pi pucchi. Puṭṭho puṭṭho Upālīthero vissajjesi.

Tato imāni cattāri pārajīkāni Pārajīkakaṇḍaṃ naïma idan ti saṅgahām āropetvā ṭhapesum 8 terasa saṅghādisesāni terasakan ti ṭhapesum, dve sikkhāpadāni aniyatāni ṭhapesum, tiṃsasikkhāpadāni nissaggiyapaccittiyāni ṭhapesum, dvenavutisik-

1 Vin. ii, XI, omits. 2 P.E.V. add attāna va after evam. 3 T. omits. O. generally agrees with T. in most readings and will be referred to when only he differs from T. 4 As at Vin. ii, 286. The next sentence is a summary of the rest of Vin. ii, XI, 1, 7. 5 T. adds bhagavatā. 6 P.E.V. Kalandaputtam. 7 T. anuppaññattim. 8 T. omits.
khāpadāni pācittiyanīti thapesum, cattāri sikkhāpadāni pāṭidesanīyanīti thapesum, pañcasattatisikkhāpadāni sekhiyānīti thapesum, satta dhamme adhikaraṇasamathāti thapesum.


1-1 P.E.V. (also Vin. ii, 287) omit this question and answer.
kho āyasmā Mahākassapo āyasantaṃ Ānandaṃ Brahmajālassa nidānam pi pucchi, puggalam pi pucchi.


Pañca nikāyā nāma Dīghanikāyō Majjhimanikāyō Samyutta-nikāyō Aṅguttaranikāyō Khuddakanikāyō ti. Tattha Khuddakanikāyō nāma cattāro nikāye ṭhapetvā avasesam Buddhavacanam. 2 Tattha vinayo āyasmatā Upālitheraṃ vissajjito, sesa-Khuddakanikāyō cattāro ca nikāyā Ānandatherena.

16. Tat etam sabbam pi Buddhavacanam rasavasena ekavidham, dhammavinayayayasena duvidham, paṭhamamajjhimapacchimayasena tividham, tathā piṭakayasena, nikāyayasena pañcavedham, aṅgavasena navavidham, dhammakkhandhayayasena caturāsītisahassavidhan ti veditabbam.


19. Kathaṃ paṭhamamajjhimapacchimayasena tividham. Sabbam eva h’idam paṭhamabuddhavacanan magjhima-bud-

1 P.E.V. Vin. ii, XI, omit. 2 O. omits from here.
dhavacanan pacchimabuddhavacanan ti tippabhedam hoti. Tattha:

Anekajāti saṁsāraṁ sandhāvissam anibbisam, gahakārakaṁ gavesanto, dukkhā jāti punappunaṁ. Gahakāraka diṭṭho 'si puna gehāṁ na kāhasi, sabbā te phāsukā bhaggā gahakītaṁ visaṁkhitaṁ, visaṁkhāragataṁ cittaṁ taṁhānaṁ khayaṁ ajjhagāti;


Dhammasaṅgāni, Vibhaṅgo, Dhātukathā, Puggalapaṇñatti, Kathāvatthu, Yamakāṁ, Paṭṭhānaṁ ti idam Abhidhammapiṭakaṁ nāma.

¹ P.E.V. add ti. ² P.E.V. Theragāthā.
21. Tattha:

Vividhavisesanayattā vinayanato c'eva kāyavācānaṃ, vinayatthavidūhi ayāṃ vinayo vinayo ti akkhāto.

Vividhā hi ettha pañcavidha-Pātimokkh'uddesa-Pārājikādi-satta - āpattikkhandha - Mātikā - Vibhaṅgādippabhedanayā ;

Videsabhūtā ca dahīkammasithilikaraṇaprakarmā anuppaṇā[19] nattinayā, kāyikavācasika-ajjhācāranisedhanato c'esa kāyaṃ vācaṅ ca viniṭi, tasmā vividhanayattā videsanayattā kāyavācānaṅ ca vinayanato vinayo ti akkhāto. Ten' etam etassa vacanathakosallaṭṭham vuttaṃ:

Vividhavisesanayattā vinayanato c'eva kāyavācānaṃ, vinayatthavidūhi ayāṃ vinayo vinayo ti akkhāto ti.

22. Itaram pana:

Atthānaṃ sūcanato suvuttato sasanato ca sūdanato suttaṇaṃ suṭtasabhāgato ca suttaṁ ¹ suttan ti akkhātaṃ.

Taṃ hi attattha paratthādibhede atthe sūceti, suvuttā c'ettha atthā veneyyajjhāsayāṇulomena vuttattā,² pasavati c'etam atthe sassam īva phalaṃ, pasavatī ti vuttaṃ hoti; sūdati c'etam dhenu viya khīraṃ, paggharatī ti vuttaṃ hoti; suṭṭhu ca ne tāyati, rakkhatī ti vuttaṃ hoti; suttasabhāgaṅ c'etam,³ yathā hi tacchakānaṃ suttaṃ pamāṇaṃ hoti evam etam pi viṅjunāṃ, yathā ca suttana saṅgahātī na vikirīyanti na viddhamśiyanti ⁴ evam etana saṅgahītā atthā. Ten' etam etassa vacanathakosallaṭṭham vuttaṃ:

Atthānaṃ sūcanato suvuttato sasanato ca sūdanato, suttaṇaṃ suṭtasabhāgato ca suttaṁ ⁵ suttan ti akkhātaṃ ti.

23. [20] Itaro pana:

Yam ettha vuddhimanto salakkhaṇā pūjitā paricchinnā, vuttādhiṅkā ca dhammā abhidhammo tena akkhāto.

Ayaṃ hi abhisaddo vuddhisalakkhaṇaṇaḥpūjitaparicchinnādhi-kesu dissati. Tathā h'esa : bālhā me dukkha vedanā abhikkamanti no paṭikkamantīti ⁶ ādisu vuddhiyāṃ āgato. Yā tā rattiyo abhiṁnāṭā abhilakkhitāti ādisu salakkhaṇe. Rājābhirājā manujindo ti ādisu pūjitā. Paṭibalo vineṭum abhidhamme

¹ E. omits.
² T. vuttoṭa.
³ T. ca naṃ.
⁴ T. viddhamśiyanti.
⁵ E. omits.
⁶ P.E.V. omit no paṭikkamanti.
abhivinaye ti ädisu paricchinne; aññamaññaśaṅkaravirahite ¹ dhamme ca vinaye cāti vuttaṁ hoti. Abhikkantena vannenāti ädisu adhike. Ettha ca rūpūpappattiya maggam bhāveti, mettāsahagatena cetassā ekam disam pharitvā viharatiti ādinā nayena vuddhimanto pi dhammā vuttā. Rūpārammaṇāṃ vā saddārammaṇāṃ vāti ādinā nayena ārammaṇādīhi sallakkhaṇiyattā ² salakkhanā pi. Sekhā dhammā asekhā dhammā lokuttara dhammāti ādinā nayena pūjitā pi pūjāra-hāti adhippāyo. Phasso hoti vedanā hotiti ādinā nayena sabhāvaparicchinnattā paricchinnā pi. Mahaggata dhammā appamāṇā dhammā anuttarā dhammāti ādinā nayena adhikā pi dhammā vuttā. Ten’ etam etassa vacanakosallattham vuttaṁ:

Yaṁ ettha vuddhimanto salakkhanā pūjitā paricchinnā, vuttādhikā ca dhammā abhidhammo tena akkhāto ti.

24. Yaṁ pan’ ettha avisīṭṭham ³ tam
Piṭakaṃ piṭakaṭṭhaviddū pariyaṭṭhibhājanatthato āhu, tena samodhānetvā tayo pi vinayādayo neyyā.

[21] Pariyatti pi hi : mā piṭakasampadānenāti ādisu piṭakaṇ ti vuccati. Atha puriso āgaṭṭheyya kuddālapaṭikākan ādāyāti ādisu yaṁ kiċci bhājanam pi. Tasmā :

Piṭakaṃ piṭakaṭṭhaviddū pariyaṭṭhibhājanatthato āhu, tena samodhānetvā tayo pi vinayādayo neyyāti.

Tena evam duvidhatthena piṭakaṇasaddena saha samāsaṃ katvā vinayo ca so piṭakaṃ ca pariyaṭṭhibhāvato tassa tassa atthassa bhājanato cāti Vinayapiṭakaṃ. Yathāvutten’ eva nayena suttaṇ ca tam’ piṭakaṃ cāti Suttapiṭakaṃ. Abhidhammo ca so piṭakaṃ cāti Abhidhammaṭi piṭakaṇ tena, evam ete tayo pi vinayādayo neyyā. Evam ṅatvā ca puna pi tesv eva piṭakesu nāṇappakārakosallattham :

Desanāsāsanakathābhededam tesu yathārahaṁ, sikkhāppahāṇagambhirabhāvaṇ ca paridipaye.

Pariyattibhedam sampattiṃ vipattiṃ cāpi yam yahim, pāpuṇāti yathā bhikkhu tam pi sabbaṁ vibhāvaye ti.

¹ T. aññamañña-
² E. salakkhaṇiyattā ; T. lakkhaṇiyattā.
³ P. avasiṣṭṭham.


Tathā paṭhamam ajjhācārapatiṭṭhipakkhbhūto saṅvarā-saṁvaro ettha kathito ti saṅvarā-saṅvarakathā, dutiyāṁ dvāsaṭṭhiḍīṭṭhipatipakkhābhā ḍīṭṭhiviveṭhanā ettha kathitāti ḍīṭṭhiviveṭhanakathā, tatiyāṁ rāgādiṭṭhipakkhabhūto nāmarūpaparicchedo ettha kathito ti nāmarūpaparicchedakathāti vuccati.


1 T. câti.  2 T. tīni.  3 T. omits.  4 T. pāli-  5 T. avatthāpitāya.
dhavammatthadesanāpaṭivedhā ¹ yasmā sasādihi viya mahā-
samuddo, mandabuddhihi dukkhogahā alabhaneeyapatiśṭhā
tasmā gambhirā. Evam ekam ekasmīṁ ettha catubbidho pi
gambhirabhāvo veditabbo.

27. Aparo nayo: dhammo ti hetu; vuttaṁ h'etaṁ: hetumhi
nāṇam dhammapaṭīsambhidāti. Attho ti hetuphalam; vuttaṁ
h'etaṁ: hetuphale nāṇam athpathīsambhidāti. Desanā 'ti
paññatti; yathādhammanāṃ dhammābhilāpo ti adhippayo.
Paṭivedho ti abhisamayo; so ca lokiyō lokuttaro visayato
asammohato ca athānurūpāṃ dhammesu dhammānurūpāṃ
atthesu paññatti, pathānurūpāṃ paññattāsi avabodho.

Idāni yasmā etesu piṭakesu yaṁ yaṁ dhammadātām attha-
jātām vā yō cāyaṃ yathā yathā nāpetaabbo attho sotūnaṃ
nāṇassa abhimukho hoti tathā tathā tadathajotikā desanā,
yo c'ettha aviparītavabodhasaṅkhāto paṭivedho sabbam p'etaṁ
anupacitakusalasambhārehi duppaṅñehi sāsādihi mahāsamuddo
viya dukkhogahām alabhaneeyapatiśṭhāṅ ca, tasmā evam
pi ekam ekasmīṁ ettha catubbidho pi gambhirabhāvo
veditabbo.

[24] Ettavata ca:
Desanāsāsanakathābhedaṃ tesu yathārahām,
sikkhappāhānaṃ gambhirabhāvaṅ ² ca paridipaye;
iti ayaṁ gāthā vuttatthā hoti.

28. Pariyattiṃ bhedaṃ sampattīṃ vipattīṃ cāpi yaṁ yahim
pāpuṇāti yathā bhikkhu tam pi sabbam vibhāvaye;
iti ettha pana tisu piṭakesu tividho pariyaṭṭhado daṭṭhabbo.
Tisso hi pariyaṭṭhya: alaggaddāpamā nissaranatthā bhanḍågā-
rikapariyaṭṭhi. Tattha duggahitā upārambhadhihetu pariyaṃpūtta
alaggaddāpamā. Yam sandhāya vuttaṁ: seyyathāpi bhikkhave
puriso alaggioṭṭhiko alaggaddagavesi alaggaddapariyesanaṃ
caramāno, so paseyya mahantaṃ alaggaddam, tam enaṃ bhoge
va nāṅguṭṭhe va gāṇheyya, tassa so alaggado paṭiparivattitvā
hatthe vā bāhāya va aṇñatarasmiṃ vā aṅgapaccaṅge daseyya,
so tato nidānaṃ marāṇam vā nīgaccheyya marāṇamatāṃ vā
dukkhām. Tam kissa hetu. Duggahitattā bhikkhave alaggad-
daśa. Evam eva kho bhikkave idh’ ekace moghapurisā

¹ T. -desanā paṭivedhā.
² T. sikkhappāhāna-.
dhammam pariyāpunanti suttaṃ pe vedallaṃ. Te tam dhammaṃ pariyāpunitvā tesam dhammānaṃ paññāya atthaṃ na upaparikkhati, tesam te dhamma paññāya atthaṃ anupa­parikkhatam na nijjhānam khamanti; te upārambhānisaṃsā c'eva dhammaṃ pariyāpunanti itivādappamokkhānisaṃsā ca; yassa c'atthāya dhammaṃ pariyāpunanti, tam c'assa atthām nānubhonti; tesam te dhamma duggahīṭa dīgharattam ahitāya dukkhaṃa samvattanti. Tam kissa hetu. Duggahīṭatā bhikkhave dhammānaṃ ti.


Yaṃ pana pariṇātakkhandho pahīnakileso bhāvitaṃ pagati­viddhākuppo sacchikatanirodho khīnasavo kevalaṃ paveni­pālanatthāya vaṃsānurakkhaṇatthāya pariyāpunāti, ayaṃ bhanḍāgārikapariyattīti.


cittakkhepaṃ pāpuṇāti. Vuttaṃ h'etaṃ: cattā’ imāni bhikkhave acinteyyāni, na cintetabbāni, yāni cintento ummādassa vighātassa bhāgī assāti. Evam etesu duppaṭipanno yathāikkamena imāṃ dussilabhāvamicchādiṭṭhitācittakkhepa-bhedam vipattim pāpuṇātiti. Ettāvātā,

Pariyattibhedam sampattim vipattim cāpi yaṃ yahiṃ pāpuṇāti yathā bhikkhu tam pī sabbaṃ vibhāvaye ; iti, ayam pi gāthā vutatthā hoti. Evam pī nānappakārato piṭakāni āvatvā tesam vesan’ etam Buddhavacanam tividhan ti nātabbaṃ.


Tattha katamo Dīghanikāyō. Tivaggasaṅgahitāni 1 Brahma-jālādīni catuttāṃsasuttānī.

Catuttāṃs’ eva suttantā tivaggo yassa saṅgaho esa Dīghanikāyō ti paṭhamo anulomiko.


Katamo Majjhimanikāyō. Majjhimappamāṇāni pañcadasavaṅgasaṅgahāni Mūlapariyāyasuttādīni diyaḍḍhasataṃ dve ca suttāni.

Diyaḍḍhasatatasuttantā dve ca suttāni yattha so nikāyō Majjhimo pañcadasavaṅgaporiggaho.

Katamo Saṃyuttanikāyō. Devatāsamyuttādivasena ṯhitāni Oghataraṇasuttādīni satta suttasaḥassāni satta ca sutta satāni dvāsaṭṭhi ca suttāni.

Satta suttasaḥassāni satta suttasaṭṭhī ca dvāsaṭṭhi c’eva suttantā eso Saṃyuttasāṅgaho.

Katamo Aṅguttaranikāyō. Ek’eka-aṅgātirekavasena ṯhitāni

1 T. -saṅgahāṇī. 2 T.E. poniki-. 3 T. omits.
Cittapariyādānādīni nava suttasahassāni pañca suttasatāni sattapanṇāsā ca suttāni.

Nava suttasahassāni pañca suttasatāni ca sattapanṇāsasuttāni sānkhā Aṅguttare ayaṁ.

Katamo Khuddakanikāyo. Sakalāṁ Vinayapiṭakaṁ, Abhidhammapiṭakaṁ, Khuddakapāṭhādayo ca pubbe nidassitā pañcadasabheda ṭhapetvā cattāro nikāye avasesam Buddhavacanan ti.

[28] ṭhapetvā cattro p’ete nikāye Dīghādike
tad anām Buddhavacanam nikāyo Khuddako mato ti.
Evaṁ nikāyavasena pañcavidham.

3r. Kathāṃ anāgavasena navavidham. SABBAM eva h’idām suttām, geyyaṁ, veyyākarānaṃ, gāthā, udānaṁ, itivuttakaṁ, jātakaṁ, abhutadhammaṁ, vedallan ti navappabhedam hoti.


1 T. Therīgāthā. 2 T. no sutta-. 3 T. laddhāladdhā.
32. Kathām dhammakkhandhavasena caturāsītisahassavidham. Sabbam eva c'etaṃ Buddhavacanam:
Dvāsītīmaṃ Buddhato gāñhiṃ dve sahassāni bhikkhuto caturāsītisahassāni ye 'me dhammā pavattino ti;
evaṃ paridīpitadhammakkhandhavasena caturāsītisahassaṃpabhedaṃ hoti.

33. Evaṃ etamaṃ abhedato rasavasena ekavidham, bhedato dhammavinayādivasena duvidhādibhedamaṃ Buddhavacanamaṃ saṅgāyantena Mahākassapapamukhena vasīganena ayaṃ dhammo, ayaṃ vinayo, idamaṃ paṭhamabuddhavacanamaṃ, idamaṃ majjhimabuddhavacanamaṃ, idamaṃ pacchimabuddhavacanamaṃ, idamaṃ Vinayapiṭakaṃ, idamaṃ Suttapiṭakaṃ, idamaṃ Abhidhamma-piṭakaṃ, ayaṃ Dīghanikāyo pe ayaṃ Khuddakanikāyo, imaṃ suttādīni navāṅgāni, imaṃ caturāsīti dhammakkhandhasahasāniti,4 imaṃ pabhedaṃ vavatthapatetva 'va saṅgītam.

Saṅgītipariyosāne c'assa: idamaṃ Mahākassapattherena dasabalaṃ sasanāmaṃ pañcavassasahassaparimānaṃ kālaṃ pavattanasamathamaṃ katan ti saṅjātappamoda sādhukāraṃ viya dadamāna ayaṃ mahāpaṭṭhavi udakaparīyantaṃ katva anekappakāraṃ kampi7 saṅkampi sampakkampi sampavedhi. Anekāni

1 T. omits.
2 Sum. āpatti; Bp. adds aṭṭhī āpatti.
3 T. tikaccheto; P. pariccheto.
4 Imām.
5 T. sandhissamānaṃ.
6 P. E. V. omit.
7 O. resumes from here.
ca acchariyāni pātur ahesun ti. Ayam paṭhamamahāsaṅgiti nāma, yā loke:
Satehi pañcahi katā tena pañcasatāti ca,
there' eva katattā ca therikāti pavuccatīti.
Paṭhamamahāsaṅgiti niṭṭhitā.¹

DUTIYAMAHĀSAṅGĪTIVĀṆṆANĀ

34. Imissā pana paṭhamamahāsaṅgitiyā pavattamānāya vina-
yāṃ pucchantena āyasmāta Mahākassapena: paṭhamamāmāvuso Upāli pārājikam kattha paññattan ti evam ādivacana-
pariyosāne vatthum pi pucchi, nidānam pi pucchi, puggalam pi puchiti ettha nidāne pucchite tam nidānam āditoppabhuti
vīthāretvā yena ca paññattam yasmā ca paññattaṃ sabbam etam kathetukāmena āyasmāta Upālithera vuttaṃ: tena

Idāni: kasmā vuttaṃ ti ettha vuccate. Yasmā ayam āyasmā Mahākassapaththera āyasmātā paṭṭho tasmā pan’ etam²
nidānam āditoppabhuti vīthāretum vuttaṃ ti, evam idam āyasmātā Upālithera paṭhamamahāsaṅgitiyakale vadantenāpi
imīna karaṇena vuttaṃ ti veditabbaṃ. Ettāvatā ca: vuttaṃ yena yadā yasmati imesam mātikāpadānām attho pakāsito
hoti.

35. Idāni: dhāritam³ yena cābhataṃ, yatthappatiṭṭhitam
c’etam etam vatvā vidhiṃ tato ti⁴ etesam atthapakāsanat-
tham idam vuccati. Tam pan’etam: tena samayena Buddho bhagavāh Venājāyam viharatīti evam ādivacanapatimaṇḍita-
nidānam⁴Vinayapiṭakaṃ kena dhāritam kenābhatam kat-
thappatiṭṭhitan⁵ ti vuccate. Ādito tāva idam bhagavato

¹ T. omits this line.
² P.E.V. tena tam.
³⁴⁵ This is given by T. as a stanza with a lacuna in pāda a; cp. st. at Smp. 2
beginning: vuttaṃ yena yadā yasmā. All others have this sentence in prose.
⁶ T. -pataṃdhita-; O. -pati-.
⁷ T.O. kattha patiṭṭhitan ti.
sammukhā āyasmatā Upālittherena dhāritaṁ, tassa sammukhato aparinībbute Tathāgata chaḷabhīṁḍādibhedehi anekhe bhikkhusahashehi, parinībbute Tathāgata Mahākassa-papamukhehi dhammaṃsaṅgāḥakahatterhehi.

Kenābhataṃ ti, Jambudīpe āvāa Upālittheram ādiṃ katvā ācariyaparamparāya yāva tatiyasaṅgīti āvāa ābhatāṃ. [32] Tatrāyaṃ ācariyaparamparā:

Upāli Dāsako c’eva Sonako Siggavo tathā, Tisso Moggaliputto ca pañc’ete vijīvino, paramparāya vinayaṃ dīpe Jambusirivhaye acchijjamānaṃ ānesuṃ tatiyo yāva saṅgaho.


¹ P.E.V. omit and read : saḍdhivihāriko therassa santike...
² Vide T., p. 33, n. 1.
³ P.E.V. -samūho.
Jambudīpe tāva imāya ācariyaparamparāya yāva tatiyasaṅgīti tāva ābhatan ti veditabbaṃ.

38. Dutiyasaṅgītivijānanatthānaṃ pana ayam anukkamo vedītabbo. Yadā hi:
Saṅgīyītvāna saddhammam jotayitvā ca sabbadhi 1 yāvajīvitapariyantām ṭhatvā pañcasatā pi te, khīnāsavā jutīmanto therā Kassapa-ādayo khīnasnehā padīpā 2 va nibbāyīmsu anālayā; athānukkamena gacchantesu rattindivesu vassasatapariniibbutे bhagavati Vesālikā Vajjiputtakā bhikkhū Vesāliyaṃ: kappati singiloṇakappo, kappati dvaṅgulakappo, kappati gāmantara-kappo, kappati āvāsakappo, kappati anumati-kappo, kappati acinṇakappo, kappati amathitakappo, kappati jalogīṃ 3 pātuṃ, kappati adasakaṃ nisidanam, kappati jātārūparajajanāti ti imāni dasa vatthūni dīpesuṃ. Tesaṃ Susunāgaputto Kālāsoko 4 nāma rājā pakkho ahosi.


Tena kho pana samayena Vesālikā Vajjiputtakā bhikkhū tadah’ uposathe kaṃsappātīṃ udakena pūretvā majjhe bhikkhusaṅghassā ṭhapetvā āgate Vesālikhe upāsake evam vadenti 6: dethāvuso saṅghassa kahāpanam pi addhām pi pādam pi māsakarūpam pi, bhavissati saṅghassa parikkhārena karaṇīyan ti, sabbām tāva vattabbaṃ yāva: imāya pana vinayasaṅgītiya satta bhikkhusatāni anūnāni anadhikānī ahesum, tasmāyaṃ dutiyasaṅgīti suttasatikāti vuccatīti. Evam 7 tasmin 7 ca sannipāte dvādasabhiṅghusatasahassāni sannipatimśu āyasmata Yasaṇa samussāhitā. Tesaṃ majjhe āyasmata Revatena

---
1 T. sabbadhi.
2 T. khīnasnehapadīpā va.
3 T.E. jalogī; vide T., p. 33, n. 13.
4 P.E.V. Kālāsoka.
5 T. Vesāli.
6 P.E.V. vadanti.
7 P.E.V. Etasmin.
puṭṭhena Sabbakāmittherena vinayaṃ vissajjentena tāni dasa vatthūni vinicchitāni adhikaraṇāṃ vūpasāmitāṃ.

Atha therā puna dhammaṇ ca vinayaṇ ca saṅgāyissāmāti tipiṭakadhare pattapaṭisambhīde sattasate bhikkhū uccinitvā Vesāliyaṃ Vālukārame ¹ sannisiditvā Mahākassapaṭtherena saṅgāyitasadisam eva sabbaṃ sāsanamalaṃ sodhetvā puna piṭakavasena nikāyavasena aṅgavasena dhammakkhandhavasaṇa ca sabbāṃ dhammaṇ ca vinayaṇ ca saṅgāyimsu. Ayaṃ saṅgīti aṭṭhahi māsehi niṭṭhitā.

Yā loke :

Satehi sattahi katā tena sattasatāti ca pubbe kataṃ upādāya dutiyā ti ca vucaṭṭhī ;
sā panāyaṃ :

Yehi therehi saṅgītā saṅgīti tesu vissutā Sabbakāmi ca Sālho ca Revato Khujjasobhito


Atha nesaṃ etad ahosi : kin nu kho mayaṃ etasmiṃ abbude uppanne sammukhā bhavissāma na bhavissāmāti. Atha sabb' eva tadā attano asammukhabhāvaṃ nātvā : ko nu kho tam adhikaraṇāṃ vūpasametum samatto bhavissatī sakala-manussalokaṇi ca chakāmāvacaradevalokaṇi ca olokenā na

¹ T. Vālukā-
² P.E.V. Ānandatherassā.
³ E. idaṃ.
⁴ T. adds iti.


Dutyamahāsāṅgīthivānantā

kañci ¹ disvā Brahmaloke Tissam nāma mahābrahmānaṁ addasāmsu parittāyukaṁ uparibrahmalokūpapattiyā bhāvita-maggam.

Disvāna nesaṁ etad ahosi: sace mayaṁ etassa brahmuno manussaloke nibbattanatthāya uṣsāhaṁ kareyyāma, addha [36] esa Moggalibrahmaṇassassa gehe paṭisandhim gaheṣsati, tato ca mantehi palobhito nikkhamitvā pabbajissati, so evaṁ pabbajitvā sakalabuddhavacanan uggahetvā adhigatapaṭi-sambhido huttvā titthiye madditvā tam adhikaraṇaṁ vinicchitvā sāsanaṁ pagganhissatīti.

Te Brahmalokaṁ gantvā Tissam mahābrahmānaṁ etad avocum: ito vassasatassa upari aṭṭhārasame vasse sāsane mahantaṁ abbudam uppajjissati, māyaṁ ca ² sakalāṁ manus-salokaṁ chakāmāvacaradevalokaṁ ca olokaṃmayāna kañci sāsanaṁ paggaheetum ³ samattthaṁ adisvā Brahmalokaṁ vici-nanta bhavantaṁ addasāma. Sāduḥ sappurisa manussaloke nibbattitvā dasabalassa sāsanaṁ paggañhitum ⁴ paṭiṁṇaṁ ⁵ dehitī. Evāṁ vutte mahābrahmā: aham kira sāsane uppan-naṁ abbudam sodhetvā sāsanaṁ paggaheetum samaththo bhavissāmi haṭṭhapahaṭṭho udag’udaggo huttvā sādhūtī paṭiṣsunītva paṭiṁṇaṁ adāsi. Therā Brahmaloke taṁ karani-yam tīrtevā puna paccagamiṁsu.

40. Tena kho pana samayena Siggavatthero ca Caṇḍavajjitya-thero ⁶ ca dve pi navakaṁ honti daharabhikkhū tipiṭakadharā pattapaṭisambhidā khīnāsavā, te tam adhikaraṇaṁ na sampūṇiṁsu. ⁷ Therā: tumhe āvuso amhākaṁ imasim adhikaraṇe no sahāyakā ahuvattha, tena vo idam daṇḍakamaṁ hotu: Tisso nāma brahmā Moggalibrahmaṇassassace gehe paṭisandhim gaheṣsati, tam tumhākaṁ eko nihaṁtvā pabbājeto, eko Buddhavacanan ugganāḥpetūti vattvā sabbe pi yāvat āyukam ṭhatvā:

Sabbakāmippabhutayo te pi therā mahiddhikā aggikhandhā va lokamhi jalitvā parinibbutā.

Dutiyaṁ saṅghaham katvā visodhetvāna sāsanaṁ [37] anāgāte pi katvāna hetuṁ saddhammasuddhiyaḥ;

¹ E. kiñci.
² T. paggañhetum.
³ T. omits paṭiṁṇaṁ.
⁴ E. paggañhitvā dehitī.
⁵ T. paggañhitvā dehitī.
⁶ T. Canda.- throughout.
⁷ T. pāpuṣṇiṁsu.

---

Footnotes:

1. E. kiñci.
2. T. paggañhetum.
3. E. omits paṭiṁṇaṁ.
4. E. paggañhitvā dehitī.
5. T. āyukam ṭhatvā.
6. E. omits.
7. T. Canda.- throughout.
Khịṅṭasavā vasippattā pabhinnapāṭisambhidā aniccatāvāsām therā te pi nāma upāgatā.

Evam aniccatam jammim ūṇtvā durabhisambhavam tāṁ pattum vāyame dhīro yam niccām amatam padan ti. Ettāvatā sabbākārena dutiyasāṅgītivīvannānā niṭṭhitā hoti. 1

**Tatiyamahāsāṅgītīvīvannānā**


Brāhmaṇo cintesi: ime paṭīsanthāramattam pi labhitvā: labhimhāti pasāmsanti. Aṇṇaṁ kiṅci khādanīyaṁ 5 [38] bhōjaniyaṁ 6 labhitvā kasmā nappasāmsantiti pasiditvā attano atṭhāya paṭiyādītabhattato kaṭacchubhikkhaṁ tad upiyañ 7 ca vyaṇjanaṁ dāpetvā: imaṁ bhikkhaṁ sabbakālaṁ tumhe

---

1 P. omits.
2 P.E.V. geham agamatthāti.
3 T. khādanīyaṁ.
4 T. agamamihāti.
5 T. bhōjaniyaṁ.
6 T. tadūpiyañ.
7 T. -gahānato pabhuti.
labhissathāti āha. So punadivasatoppabhuti ¹ upasaṅka-
mantassa therassa upasamaṃ disvā bhiyososomattāya pasiditvā
teraṃ niccakālaṃ attano ghare bhattavissaggakaraṇatthāya
yāci. Thero adhivāsetvā divase divase bhattakiccaṁ katvā
gacchanto thokathokam Buddhavacanam kathetvā gacchati.

42. So pi kho mānavako solasavass'uddesiko yeva tiṇṇaṃ
vedānaṃ pāragū ² ahosi. Brahmalokato āgatasuddhasattassa
āsane vā sayane vā añño ko ci nisajjītā vā nipajjītā vā n'atthi.
So yadā ācariyagharam gacchati tadāssa mañcapiṭham setena
vatthena paṭicchādetvā laggetvā ṭhapenti.
Thero cintesi: samayo dāni mānavaṃ pabbājetum, cirañ
ca me idhāgacchantassa na ³ kāci mānavakena saddhiṃ kathā
uppajjati. Handa dāni iminā upāyena pallaṅkaṁ nissāya
upajjissatiti, gehām gantvā yathā tasmiṃ gehe ṭhapetvā
mānavakassa pallaṅkaṁ aṇñaṁ na kiṃci āsanaṁ dissati tathā
adhiṭṭhāsi. Brāhmaṇaṇa gehe jane theraṃ disvā aṇñaṁ
kiṃci āsanaṅ apassanto mānavakassa pallaṅkaṁ attharitvā
adāsi. Nisidi thero pallaṅke. Mānavako pi kho tām khaṇaṁ ⁴
yeva ācariyagharā āgamaṃ theram attano pallaṅke nisinnaṁ
disvā kupito anattamano: ko mama pallaṅkaṃ samānassa
paññaṇepeti āha. Thero bhattakiccaṁ katvā vūpasante
mānavakassa çaṇḍikkabhāve evam āha: kiṃ pana tvaṁ
mānavaka [39] kaṇci ⁵ mantam janāṣiti. Mānavo: bho
pabbajita mayi dāni mante ajānante aññe ke jānissantiti
vatvā theram pucchi: tumhe pana mantam jānāṭhāti. Puccha
mānava, pucchitvā sakkā jānitun ti.
Atha kho mānavo tisu vedesu sanighandaṅkeṭubhesu sākkha-
rappabhedesu ⁶ itihāsapaṅcamesu yāni yāni gaṇṭhiṭṭhānāni
yesaṁ nayaṁ n'eva attaṅnā passati nāpi’ssa ⁷ ācariyo addasa, tesu
tesu ⁸ theram pucchi. Thero pakatiyā pi tiṇṇaṃ vedānaṃ
pāragū,⁹ idāni pana paṭisambhidappatto, ten' assa n'atthi
tesam paññhānaṃ vissajjane bhāro ti tāvad eva te ¹⁰ pañhe
vissajjvetvā mānavaṁ āha: mānava ahaṁ tayā bahuṁ pucchito,

¹ T. -divasato pabhuti.
² P.E.V. na ca.
³ P. kiṃci.
⁴ T. pāragu.
⁵ T. tāṃkhaṇaṁ.
⁶ T. sa-akkhara.
⁷ T.E. tesu once only.
⁸ P.E. omit.
⁹ T. pāragu.
¹⁰ P.E. tesam.
aham pi dāni taṃ ekaṃ pañhaṃ puchchāmi, vyākarissasi me ti. Āma bho pabbajita pucca, vyākarissāmīti.


Evaṃ bhante ti kho Tisso sămaṇero theram abhivādetvā padakkhiṃṇam katvā anupubbena Cāṇḍavajjittherassa 2 santikaṃ gantuṃ vantiṇvā ekam antam aṭṭhāsi. Therō 4 : sămaṇera kuto 4 āgato ’sīti āha. Upajjhayo maṃ bhante tumhaṃkam

---

1 T. dvatimśa-. 2 T. Canda-. 3 T. konāmo. 4-4 T. Therō sāmaṇeraṃ pucchi : kuto...


Ācariy’upajjhāya Moggaliputtaṭissattherassa hatthe sakala-buddhavacanaṃ patiṭṭhāpetvā 6 yāvat āyukam ṭhatvā parinibbāyīmus. Moggaliputtaṭissatthero pi apareṇa samayena kammatthānaṃ vaḍḍhetvā arahattam patto bahunnaṃ dhammaṅvāyaṃ vācesi.

44. Tena kho pana samayena Bindusārassa rāṇīṇo ekasata-puttā ahesuṃ. Te sabbe Asoko attanā saddhiṃ ekamātikaṃ Tissakumāraṃ ṭhapetvā ghatessi. Ghātento cattāri vassāṇī anabhisitto ’va rajaṃ kāreṭvā catunnaṃ vassānaṃ accayena Tathāgatassa parinibbāhanato dvinnanāṃ vassasatānaṃ upari aṭṭhārasame vasse sakala-Jambudīpe ekarajjābhiṣekam [42] pāpunī. Abhisekānubhāvena c’assa ima rāj’iddhiyo āgata: mahāpaṭhāvīyā heṭṭhā yojanappamāṇe anā pavattati, tathā upari ākāse, Anotattadahato aṭṭhahi kājehi sōlasa pāṇīyaghaṭe 7 divase devata āvataḥ āharanti, yato sāsane uppansaddho huttvā aṭṭhaghaṭe bhikkhusaṅghassa adāsi, dve ghaṭe satṭhi-mattānaṃ 8 sahassānaṃ tipiṭakadharabhikkhūnaṃ, 8 dve ghaṭe

---

1 T. konāmo.
2 T. utthāpesi.
3 T. -divasato pabhuti.
4 T. pāniya.
5 P.E. omi ti.
6 P.E.V. sammajjitaṭṭhānaṃ.
7 T. patiṭṭhapetvā.
8-8 E. -mattānaṃ tipiṭkabhibhikkhūnaṃ.
aggamahesiya Asandhimittāya, cattāro ghaṭe attanā pari-bhunji. Devatā eva, Himavante nāgalatādantakaṭṭham nāma attih Siniddham mudukam rasavantam, taṃ divase divase āharanti, yena raṅno ca mahesiya ca solasannaḥ ca nāṭaka-sahassānam satṭhimattānaḥ ca bhikkhusahassānam devasikam dantapōṇakiccakaṃ nippajjati.


45. Imāhi iddhīhi samannāgato rājā ekadivasāṃ suvaṃṇasaṃkhaliķabandhanaṃ pesetvā catunnaṃ Buddhānaṃ adhi-gatarūpadassanaṃ kappāyukaṃ Kālaṃ nāma nāgarājanam ānayitvā setacchattassa heṭṭhā mahārahe pallaṅke nisidāpetvā anekasatavaṇṇehi jalajatahalaジャvuppehi suvaṃṇapuppehi ca pūjaṃ katvā sabbalankāraptapimanti[diṭṭhehi 8 ] solasahi nāṭakasaḥassehi samantato parikkhipitvā: anantaṇaṃsā tāva me saddhhammavarakakkavattissā sammāsamuddhassa rūpam imesaṃ akkhiṇaṃ āpāthama karohiti vatvā tena nimmitaṃ sakalasarire vippakiniṇṇapurūṇappabhhāvanibbattāsiti-anuvyaṇjanapatipamantitam 9 dvattimṣamarāpūsirakkhaṇassasirikātāya vikasitakamaḷ’uppalaṃparukapimantitam iva salilalaṃ tārāgaṇarasamijālavisadavishuritasobhāsamujjalam 10 iva

1 T. -haritakam. 2 T. adds: pi nāṇāgandhaṃ. 3 P.E. anulepana. 4 T. ca. 5 P.E. -nithusakane. 6 P.E. -sālu. 7 T. karavika-. 8 P.E. add ca. 9 P.E. -maṇḍitadvattimṣa-. 10 T. -rasmim jāla-; P.E.V. -jālu:-.
46. ராஜா கிரு மூலையான் புணித்வா தின் யெவா சாம்வச்சாரானி பாகியானி, கதுந்தே சாம்வச்சாரை போடுள்ளது. தாசா கிருப்பா ஜுதமான்பான்டு அகோசோ. 

அசோக்க பிடா பாவன்டுட்டம் தான்த வழக்கம் தான்தன் வாத்தரிக்கவே யுத்தாத்மை தாது வாத்ததிடி. எவன் சிறைந்தவா எமைா: 

 நதித்தை தான் தான் சாயியை காணல் தான் சசாய் காரணை 

 நகர்வா மான் ல்ளு பாரிக்குத்தவா இவா கானககிரின்சகா

மண்டு முதல்வா பாச்சு அத்ஸாத்யானா நியமகல்லு குழாயகசையாம்பாண்டு 

பாச்சு அத்ஸாத்யானா. 

47. எவன் சாக்சன்றை காலை எகாதிவசம் ராஜா 7 சிபானை 

சித்தோ திமீ தொடா நிகர்சத் சா 

நிகர்சத் சாப்பிடுவா 

நிகர்சத் சாப்பிடுவா 

நிகர்சத் சாப்பிடுவா. 

நிகர்சத் சாப்பிடுவா.


1 T. anupubbikathā.
2 P.E.V. add nāma.
3 P.E.V. add ca.
4 T. parigghahītattā.
5 T. divasato pabhuti.
6 T. satta vassiko.
7 P.E.V. omit.
8 T. mātu nivesana-.
bhantimagapatibhāgo, ayam pana dārako avikkhittacitto ¹ ativiya c'assa ² ālokitavilokitaṁ sammiñjanapasāraṇāṁ ca sobhati, addhā etassa abhantare lokuttaradhammo bhavisatī, rañño saha dassanen'eva sāmanere cittaṁ pasīdi. Pemaṁ saṇṭhahi.

Kasmā. Pubbe ³ kira puññakaranaṇakāle esa rañño jetṭhabhāṭā vāṇijako ahosi. Vuttam pi c'etaṁ :

[47] Pubbe va sannivāsena paccuppannahitena vā evam taṁ jāyate pemaṁ uppalaṁ va yathodake ti. 

Athā rājā saṇṭātapamo sabahumāno etam sāmaṇeram pakkosathāti amacce pesesi. Te aticirayantīti puna dve tayo pesesi, turītaṁ āgacchatūti.


¹ P.E.V. avikkhitto. ⁵ P.E.V. -mattakam eva. ⁶ P.E.V. jānāma.
² P.E.V. omit c'. ⁶ T. dinna-ovādaṁ.
³ P.E.V. omit.
⁴ T. dinna-ovādaṁ.
⁵ P.E.V. dhurabhāṭāni.
⁶ T. dinna-ovādaṁ.
⁷ P.E.V. dinna-ovādaṁ.
⁸ P.E.V. dhurabhāṭāni.

Rājā bhiyyosomattāya tuṭṭhacitto āha: aṇṇāni pi te tāta aṭṭha dammi. Sāmaṇero sādhūti sampaticchitvā punadivase dvattimśa bhikkhū gahetvā rāj’antepuram pavisitvā bhattakiccaṃ akāsi. Rājā: aṇñe pi dvattimśa bhikkhū tumhehi saddhiṃ sve 1 bhikkham gaṅhantūti eten’eva upāyena divase divase vaṭḍhāpento saṭṭhisahassānaṃ brāhmaṇaparībājakaṃ bhattam upacchinditvā antonivesane saṭṭhisahassānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ nīcabbhattam paṭṭhapesi Nigrodhatthere gaten’eva pasādaṃ.

Nigrodhatthere pi rājānaṃ saperisam tīsu saraṇesu paṅcasu ca sīlesu patiṭṭhāpetvā Buddhhasāsane pothujjanikena pasādaṃ acalappasādam katvā patiṭṭhāpesi.

Puna rājā Asokāramam nāma mahāviḥāram kārāpetvā saṭṭhisahassānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ nīcabbhattam paṭṭhapesi. Sakala-Jambudīpe caturāsitiyā nagarasahassesu 2 caturāsiti vihārasahassāni kārāpesi caturāsitisahassacetyapaṭimaṇḍitāni, dhammen’eva no adhammena.


Saṅgho Indaguttattheram nāma mahiddhikam mahānubhāvanāṃ khīṇāsavanāṃ navakammādhitthāyakaṃ adāsi. Thero yaṃ

1 P.E.V. yeva.
2 T.O. naṅgara.
3 P. omits -saṅkhassa.
4 T.O. catuhi.
5 P.E. navā aṅgāni.
yaṁ kammaṁ na niṭṭhāti taṁ taṁ attano anubbhāvena niṭṭhāpesi. Evam pi tihi sāṁvaccharehi vihārakammaṁ niṭṭhāpesi.

Ekadīvasam eva sabbanagarehi paññāni āgamiṁsu. Amaccā rañño ārocesuṁ: niṭṭhīta deva caturāṣīti vihārasahassāṇīti.

Rājā nagare 1 bherīṁ carāpesi: ito sattannam divasānaṁ accayena vihāramaho bhavissati, sabbe aṭṭha sil’aṅgāni samādiyitvā antonagare 1 ca bahingare 1 ca vihāramaham paṭiyyādentūti.

50. Tato sattannam divasānaṁ accayena sabbālaṅkāravi-bhūsitāya 2 anekasatasahassasaṅkhāya caturaṅginīya senāya 3 parivuto devaloke Amaravatiyā rājadhāniyā sirito adhikatara-sassirikam 4 viya nagaram 5 kātukāmena ussāhajātena mahājanena alaṅkata paṭipiyattām 6 nagaram 5 anuvicaranto vihāram gantvā bhikkhusaṅghassa majhe aṭṭhāsi.


1 T.O. naṅgare.
2 P.E.V. sabbālaṅkārabbhūsitāya.
3 T.O. caturaṅginīsenāya.
4 T.O. -sirikaṁ.
5 T.O. naṅgaram.
6 T.O. -paṭiyatta-.
7 T.O. add passati.
8 T.O. add pi.
9 T.O. add pi.
mahā, aham kira deyyadhammena sāsanam paggaṇhāmi.  
Kim panāhaṁ evaṁ sati sāsanassa dāyādo homi na homiṭi.

51. Tato bhikkhusaṅgham pucchi: bhavāmi nu kho aham bhante sāsanassa dāyādo ti. Tato Moggaliputtatissatthero rañño idam vacanam sutvā rājavuttassa Mahindassa upanis-
sayasampattim sampassamāno: sace ayam kumāro pabbajis-
sati sāsanassa ativyā vuddhi bhavissatiti cintetvā rājanāṁ 
etad avoca: na kho mahārāja ettāvāta sāsanassa 2 dāyādo 
hoti, api ca kho paccaypadāyako ti vā upaṭṭhāko 3 ti vā sankhām 
gacchati. Yo pi hi mahārāja paṭṭhavito yāva Brahmalokapari-
mānaṁ pacchāvarāsim dadeyya so pi sāsane dāyādo ti sankhām 
nacacchatīti. Atha kathām carahi bhante sāsanassa dāyādo 
hotiti. Yo hi koci mahārāja [51] adḍho vā daliddo 4 vā attano 
orasam puttam pabbājeti, ayam vuccati mahārāja dāyādo 
sāsanassāti. Evaṁ vutto Asoko rājā: aham kira evaṁ pārissagām 
katvā pi n eva sāsanassa dāyādabhāvam patto "sin 5 ti sāsane 
dāyādabhāvam patthayamāno ito c’ito ca viloketvā addasa Mahindaṁ kumāram 6 avidūre thitam. Disvā 
pan’assa etad ahosi: kiṁcāpi aham imām kumāraṁ Tissa-
kumārassa pabbajitakālatoppabhuti 7 oparajje patiṭṭhāpetu-
kāmo, 8 atha kho oparajjato pi pabbajjā va uttamāti.

Tato kumāraṁ āha: sakkhissasi tvaṁ tāta pabbajitun ti. 
Kumāro pana pakatiyā pi Tissakumārassa pabbajitakālatopp-
pabhuti 7 pabbajitukāmo va rañño vacanam sutvā ativiya 
pāmojjajāto 9 hutvā āha: pabbajāmi deva, maṁ pabbājetaṁ 
tumhe sāsane dāyādā 10 hothāti.

Tena ca samayena rājadhīta Saṅghamittā pi tasmīṁ yeva 
ṭhāne thīṭa hoti. Tassā ca sāmiko Aggibrahmaṁ nāma kumāro 
uparājena Tissakumārena saḍḍhīṁ pabbajito hoti. Rājā taṁ 11 
disvā āha: tvam pi amma pabbajitum sakkhissasītī. Sadhu 
tāta sakkomīti. Rājā puttānaṁ maṇaṁ labhitvā pahaṭṭhacitto 
bhikkhusaṅgham etad avoca: bhante ime dārake pabbājetvā 
maṁ sāsane dāyādaṁ karothāti.

1 T.O. add iti.  
2 T.O. omit.  
3 T.O. upaṭṭhāyako.  
4 T. daliddo.  
5 T.O. omit.  
6 T.O. Mahindakumāram.  
7 T.O. kālato pabhuti.  
8 E. patiṭṭhāpetukāmo.  
9 T.O. pāmujiya-.  
10 T.O.E. dāyādo.  
11 P.E.V. namī.

Atha Mahindatthero upasampannakālatoppabhuti āttano upajjhāyass'eva santike dhammaṃ ca vinayaṃ ca pariyaśaṃṣanto dve pi saṅgitiyo ārūlham tipiṭakasaṅgaḥītaṃ sāṭṭha-kathāṃ sabbaṃ theravādaṃ tīṇṇam vassānaṃ abbhantare uggahetvā attano upajjhāyassa antevāsikānaṃ sahassamat-tanānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ pāmokkho ahosi.


54. Tena kira samayena Pāṭaliputtassa catusu dvāresu cattāri satasaḥhassāni, sabhāyāṃ satasaḥhassan ti divase divase pañca satasaḥhassāni rañño uppajjantī; tato rājā Nigrodhattherassa devasikam satasaḥhassam vissajjesi, Buddhassa cetiye gamhamālādīhi pūjanaṭṭhāya satasaḥhassam, dhammassa satasaḥhassam, taṃ dhammadharānaṃ bahussutānaṃ catupaccayatthāya upaniyati, saṅghassa satasaḥhassam, catusu

---

1 E. pabbajjāpesi. 2 P.E.V. upasampadāmaṇḍale. 3 T.O. aṭṭhārasa vassāni. 4 T.O. -kālato pabhuti. 5 T.O. sattṭhakathām. 6 T.O. sabbattheravādaṃ. 7 P. Kuntaputta-; E. Kontaputta-. 8 T.O. naṅgarassa. 9 P.E. vissajeti.

55. Tadā Moggaliputtattissatthero: uppannam dāni idāṃ adhikaraṇāṃ, taṃ na cirass’eva kakhalaṃ bhavissati, na kho pan’etāṃ sakā imesam majjhe vasantane vūpasametun ti Mahindattherassa gaṇaṃ niyyādetvā 1 attano 2 phāsukavihārena viharitukāmo Ahogaṅgāpabbataṃ 3 agamāsi.

Te pi kho titthiyā bhikkhausaṅghena dhammena vinayena satthusāsanena niggayhamāṇā pi dhammavinayānulomāya paṭipattiya asaṅṭhahantā 4 anekarūpāṃ sāsanassa abbudan ca malaṅ ca kaṇṭakaṅ ca samuṭṭhāpesum. Keci aggim pari-caranti, keci pañcatāpe tappanti,5 keci ādiccaṃ anuparivattanti, keci dhammaṃ ca vinayaṅ ca vobhindissāmāti paggaṇhimsu.


1 P.E.V. niyyādetvā.
2 P.E.V. attanā.
3 P. Ahogaṅga.-
4 T.O. asaṇṭhahantā.
5 Bp. pañcatāpena tāpenti; E. tāpenti.
6 T.O. vūpasammatī.


Rājā anekappakāraṃ yācitvā pi 8 tam nivattetum asakkonto

---

1 P.E.V. cittakīlāya. 2 T.O. kīva nāma kīlikāṃ; E. kiṅca.
3 P.E.V. naṃ. 4 T.O. -passāsupa-.
5 T.O. tato pabhuti. 5 T.O. vijayamānaṃ.
7 P.E. tassāsayānaṃ. 8 T.O. omit.


Evam³ anupabbajito⁴ uḷāravibhavena khattiyaajanena⁵ raṇño kāñṭṭhabhātā Tissatthero ti viṅneyyo.


¹ T. bahubhikkhū. ² P.E. anupabbajitakānaṁ. ³ T.O. give st. in prose. ⁴ T.O. -pabbajita-ulāra-. Most texts agree on -pabbajito to conform to the Āryā metre. ⁵ T.O. khattiyaajanena. ⁶ P.E.V. mārāpetum. ⁷ P.E.V. omit assa.


1 T.O. nāgañchi. 2 T.O. add iti. 3 P.E.V.-ruhissati. 4 T.O. ca. 5 T.O. ayam. 6 P.E. add āha. 7 P.E.V. omit.


antsimâya thitapâdâ yeva 1 calîmsu upaḍḍh’upâḍḍham sarîraḥ ca, uttarâya disâya udakapâtiyâ pi antosimâya thitam upaḍḍhâbhaṭhagatam 2 eva udakâmaḥ cali, avasesam niccalam ahositi.


Ñâtako no nisinno ti bahû āgacchati 7 jano, paṭicca kammaṃ 8 phusati, tasmiṃ me saṅkatî mano ti.


Na paṭicca kammaṃ 8 phusati mano ce nappadussati, appossukkassa bhadrassa 10 na pâpaṃ upalipatîti.11

62. Evam the ro râjanaṃ saṅñâpetvâ tatth’eva râj’uyyâne satta divasâni vasanto râjanaṃ samayaṃ uggâphâpesi. Râjâ sattame divase Asokârâme bhikkhusanghami saṇnipâṭpetvâ saṇipâkâraṃ parikkhipâpetvâ saṇipâkârantare nisinno ekalad-dhike ekaladdhike bhikkhû ekato ekato kâretvâ ekam ekaṃ

1 T.O. eva.
2 T.O. -bhâgaṭhitam eva ; E. -bhâgamattam eva.
3 P.E.V. ekâm.
4 P.E.V. kârâpehitī.
5 P.E.V. vâcâya.
6 T.O. atthaṃ.
7 T.O. āgacchati (-ti metri causa).
8 T.O. paṭicca kammaṃ ; J. paṭicca kammaṃ na phusati.
9 T.O. paṇñâpesi.
10 P.E. bhaddassa.
11 T.O.E. upalimpati.


Katā bhikkhusahassena tasmā saḥassikāti 7 ca, purimā dve upādāya tatiyāti ca vuccatīti ; ayaṃ tatiyasaṅgiti.

### Ācariyaparamparāvanaṇanā

63. Ettāvatā ca : kenābhahan ti etassa pañhassa vissajjanathām yad avocumha : Jambudīpe tāva Upālittherām ādīn

1 T.O. omit -pe- throughout. 2 T.O. omit. 3 T.O. uggahītattā. 4 T.O. upapabbajesi. 5 T.O. saṅgaraṃ. 6 T.O. -saṅkheyesu. 7 T.O. sahassikā.
katvā [62] ācariyaparamparāya yāva tatiyasaṅgīti tāva ābhataṁ. Tatrāyaṁ ācariyaparamparā:

Upāli Dāsako c’eva Sōnako 1 Siggavo tathā, Tisso Moggaliputto ca pañc’ete vijitāvino, paramparāya vinayam dīpe Jambusirivhaye acchijjamānaṁ ānesum tatiyo yāva saṅghaḥo ti;

tass’attho ettavātā pakāsita 2 hoti. Tatiyasaṅghahato pana uddham imaṁ dīpaṁ Mahindādihi ābhataṁ. Mahindato uggahetvā kañci 3 kālaṁ Ariṭṭhattherādihi ābhataṁ, tato yāva ajjatanā tesam yeva antevāsikaparamparābhūtāya 4 ācariyaparamparāya ābhataṁ ti veditabbaṁ. Yathāhu porāṇā:

Tato Mahindo Iṭṭhiyo Uttiyo Sambaló pi ca . . . . . . 5 Bhaddanāmo ca paṇḍito;
Ete nāgā mahāpaṅḍita Jambudīpā idhāgataḥ;
vinayam te vācayīmsu pītakāṁ Tambapaṇṇīyā.
Nikāye pañca vācesum satta c’eva pakāraṇa. 6
Tato Ariṭṭho medhāvi Tissadatto ca paṇḍito visārada Kālasumano ther ca Dīghanāmako . . . . . . . . 5 Dīghasumano ca paṇḍito.

Punar eva 7 Kālasumano Nāgatthero ca Buddhharakkhito, Tissatthero ca medhāvi Devatthero ca paṇḍito.
Punar eva Sumano medhāvi vinaye ca visārado, bahussuto Cūlanago 8 gajo ’va duppadhamśīyū.

[63] Dhammapālitanāmo 9 ca Rohaṇo 10 sadhupūjita, tassa sissō mahāpaṅño Khemanāmo tipezāko. Dīpe tārakarājā 11 va paññāya atirocatha, Upatissō ca medhāvi Phussadevo mahākathi. 11
Punar eva 7 Sumano medhāvi Phussanāmo 12 bahussuto, mahākathi Mahāsīvo piṭake sabbattha kovido.
Punar eva 7 Upāli medhāvi vinaye ca visārado, Mahānāgo mahāpaṅño saddhāmvaṁsakovido.
Punar eva Abhayo 13 medhāvi piṭake sabbattha kovido,

1 T.O. Sonako. 2 P.E. add va. 3 E. kīnċi. 4 T. -parampara-. 5 Lacuna of a pāda. E.T.O. do not take this into account in the arrangement of the stanza.
Tissatthero ca medhāvi vinaye ca visārado.
Tassa siso mahāpañño Pupphanāmo bahussuto,
sāsanaṁ anurakkhanto Jambudīpe patiṭṭhito.
Cūlābhayo 1 ca medhāvi vinaye ca visārado,
Tissatthero ca medhāvi saddhammavāmsakovido.
Cūladevo 2 ca medhāvi vinaye ca visārado
Sivatthero ca medhāvi vinaye sabbattha kovido.
Ete nāgā mahāpañña vinayaṁñū 2 maggakovida, 
vinayam dipe pakāsesuṁ piṭakaṁ Tambapanṇiyāti.

64. Tatrāyam ānupubbikathā 3:
Moggaliputtatissatthero kra imaṁ tatiyadhammasaṅgītīṁ 4
katvā evam cintesi : kattha nu kho anāgate sāsanaṁ suppa-
tiṭṭhitaṁ bhaveyyāti. Ath'assa upaparikkhato etad ahosi : 
paccantimesu kho janapadesu sāsanaṁ suppatiṭṭhitaṁ bhavis-
satīti. So tesām tesāṁ bhikkhūnaṁ bhāraṁ katvā te te bhikkhū
tattha tattha pesesi. Majjhantikattheraṁ Kasmiragandhāra-
raṭṭham pesesi : tvam etam raṭṭham gantvā ettha sāsanaṁ
patiṭṭhāpethīti. Mahādevattheraṁ tath'eva vatvā Mahisaka-
manḍalaṁ 5 pesesi, Rakkhitattheraṁ Vanavāsim, [64] Yonaka-
dhammaraṅkhitattheraṁ Aparantakaṁ, Mahādhhammarakhi-
tattheraṁ Mahāraṭṭham, Mahārakkhitattheraṁ Yonakalokaṁ,
Majjhimattheraṁ Himavantapadesabhāgam, Sonakattheraṅ 6
ca Uttaratheraṅ ca Suvāṇabhūmiṁ, attano saddhivihārikaṁ
Mahindattheraṁ Itṭhiyattherena 7 Uttiyattherena Sambalat-
therena Bhaddasālattherena ca saddhiṁ Tambapaṇṇidipaṁ
pesesi : tumhe Tambapaṇṇidipaṁ gantvā ettha sāsanaṁ
patiṭṭhāpethāti. Sabbe pi täm täm disābhagam gachchā,
atappañcamā agamaṁsu : paccantimesu janapadesu paṅcavag-
go gaṇo alam upasampadakammāyāti mahānāmaṁ.

65. Tena kho pana samayena Kasmiragandhāraṛaṭṭhe sas-
apākasamaye Aravālo 8 nāma nāgarājā karakavassaṁ nāma
vassaṁ vassāpetvā sassam harāpetvā mahāsamuddaṁ pāpeti.9
Majjhantikatthero 10 Pāṭaliputtato vēhasaṁ abhhuggantvā

---

1 E. Cūla-
2 T. ānupubbī-; O. anupubbī-.
3 P.E.V. Mahīṃsaka-.
4 T.O. tatiyaṁ dhamma-.
5 T.O. ānupubbi-.
6 T.O. Sonaka-.
7 T.O. ānupubbi-throughout.
8 T.O. Aravālo.
9 T.O. pāpesi.
10 P.E. add pana.
Himavati Aravâla¹dahassa upari otaritvā Aravâla¹dahapitiṣṭhi-
yâṃ caṅkamati pi tiṭṭhati pi nisīdāti pi seyyam pi kappeti. Nāgamāṇavaṅkā ² taṃ disvā Aravâlāssâ¹ nāgarâjassa ārocesuṃ: mahārāja eko chinnabhinnapâṭṭadharo bhaṅḍukāsāvavasano amhākaṃ udakaṃ dūsetīti. Nāgarâjâ ² tāvad eva kodhābhī-
bhitō nikkhambhitvā therāṃ disvā makkhâṃ asahamāno antalik-
khe anekāni bhiṃsanakāni nimmini; tato tato bhusam vātā
vâyanti, rukkhā bhijjanti, pabbatakūṭāni patanti, meghā
gajjanti, vijjullatā niccharanti, asaniyo phalanti, bhinnâm
viya gaganam udakaṃ paggharati, bhayānakarâpā [65]
nāgakumārâ sannipatanti, sayam pi dhūmâyati ³ pâjjalati
paharanavutthiyo vissajjeti: ko ayaṃ munḍako chinnabhinn-
pâṭṭadharo ti âdihi pharusavacanehi therāṃ santajjesi, etha
ganhatha bandhatha niddhamatha imaṃ samaṇan ti nāg-
balâṃ ânāpesi. Thero sabban taṃ bhiṃsanakaṃ ⁴ attano
iddhibalena paṭibâhetvā ⁵ nāgarâjânaṃ âha:

Sadevako pi ce loko âgântvā täsayeyya maṃ
na me ⁶ paṭibalo assa janetuṃ ⁷ bhayabheravâṃ.
Sace pi taṃvâ maḥim sabbaṃ sasamuddâṃ sapabbatâṃ
ukkhipitvâ maḥânâga khipeyyâsi mamûpari,
n'eva me sakkujjeyyâsi janetuṃ bhayabheravâṃ;
aññadatthu tav-ev'assa ⁸ vighâto uragâdhipâti.

Evâm vutte nāgarâjâ vigatânubhâvo ⁹ niphhalavâyâmo
dukkhi dummano ahosi. Taṃ thero taṅkhaṇānurûpâya
dhammiyâ kathâya sandassetvâ samâdapetvâ samuttejvetvâ
sampahamsetvâ tīṣu ca saraṇesu ¹⁰ paṅcasu ca silesu paṭṭhâpesi
saddhiṃ caturāsityâ nāgasahashehi. Aññe pi bahū Him-
vantavâsino yakkhâ ca gandhabbakumbhâdâ ca therassa
dhammakathâm sutvâ saraṇesu ca silesu ca paṭṭhâhiṃsā.
Paṅcako ¹¹ pi yakkho saddhiṃ bhariyâya ¹² yakkhiṇiyâ
paṅcâhi ca puttasatehi paṭhamā phale paṭṭhâhiṃ. Athâyasâmā

¹ T.O. Aravâla-.
² T.O. dhūmâyati.
³ P.E.V. paṭibâhítvâ.
⁴ MVh. xii, 16, yaṃ ettha.
⁵ MVh. xii, 16, yaṃ ettha.
⁶ T. tav'assa (a syllable short for the Anuṣṭubh Śloka metre).
⁷ T.O. vâhata-.
⁸ MVh. xii, 21, Paṇḍako.
⁹ T.O. naṅga-, naṅga-.
¹⁰ P.E.V. vibhiṃsanakâṃ.
¹¹ E. ve.
¹² MVh. xii, 21, Pandako.
Majjhantikatthero sabbe pi nāgayakkharakkhase āmantetvā evam āha:
Mā dāni kodham janayittha 1 ito uddham yathā pure sassaghātaṁ ca mākattha 1 sukhamām hi pāñino; karotha mettaṁ sattesu, vasantu manujā sukhan ti.


Gantvā Kasmīragandhāram isi Majjhantiko tadā, ruṭṭham 11 nāgam paśādetvā mocesi bandhanā bahūti.


Gantvāna ruṭṭham Mahīṣam 12 Mahādevo mah'iddhiko, codetvā devadūtehi mocesi bandhanā bahūti.13


Gantvāna Rakkhitatthero Vanavāśim mah'iddhiko antalikkhe ṭhito tattha desesi Anamataggīyani ti.

---

Aparantaṃ vigāhitvā Yonako Dhammamarakkito, Aggikkhandhūpamen'etthā pasādesi jane bahūti.

69. Mahādhammamarakkhitatthero pana Mahāraṭṭham gantvā Mahānāradakassapajātakakathāya Mahāraṭṭhake pasādetvā caturāśītipāṇasahassāni maggaphalesu patiṭṭhāpesi, terasa sahassāni pabbajimṣu. Evaṃ so tattha sāsanaṃ patiṭṭhāpesi.

Mahāraṭṭham isī ¹ gantvā so Mahādhammamarakkito, jātakaṃ kathayitvāna pasādesi mahājanan ti.

70. Mahārakkhitatthero pi Yonakaraṭṭham gantvā Kālakārāmasuttantakathāya Yonakalokam gantvā pasādetvā satatimsasadassadhikassa pānasatasahassassa maggaphalālāṅkāram adāsi, santike c'assa dasasahassāni ² pabbajimṣu. Evaṃ so pi tattha sāsanaṃ patiṭṭhāpesi.

Yonaraṭṭham ³ tadā gantvā so Mahārakkhito isī, Kālakārāmasuttena te pasādesi Yonake ti.


Gantarvāna Majjhimatthero Himavantaṃ pasādayi, yakkhasenaṃ pakāsento Dhammacakkappavattanān ti.

72. Soṇakatthero ⁶ pi saddhiṃ Uttaraththerena Suvaṇṇabhūmīṃ agamāsi. Tena ca samayena tattha ekā rakkhasi samuddato nikkhamitvā rājakule jāte jāte dārake khādati.

¹ E. isi.
² T.O. dasasahassā.
³ T.O. Yonaka-.
⁴ T.O. Sahadeva-.
⁵ P.E.V. pañca pi ca te.
⁶ T.O. Sonaka-; P.E. Soṇatthero.

Suvaṇṇabhūmiṃ gantvāna Soṇ’uttara 11 mahiddhiṃ, pisāce nidhamitvāna Brahmajālaṃ adesayun ti.


1 T.O. āvudhāni.  2 T.O. pariharitukāmā.  3 T.O. gacchanti.  4 T.O. āvudhā-.  5 T.O. diguṇe.  6 P.E.V. idaṃ.  7 T.O. omit.  8 T.O. vegena.  9 T.O. rakkhāmp.  10 T.O. tato pabbuti.  11 T.O. Sonuttara-.  " P.E.V. idam."


Mahindo nāma nāmena saṅghatthero tadā ahū, Iṭṭhiyo 10 Uttiyo 11 thero Bhaddasālo ca Sambalo;

[71] Sāmanero ca Sumano chaḷabhiṁño mah’iddhiko, Bhanḍuko sattamo tesāṁ diṭṭhasacco upāsako: iti ete mahānāgā mantayiṁsu rahogatāti.

---

1 T.O. Iddhiya-. 2 T.O. catūhi. 3 E. Vediya-. 4 P.V. Vedisaseṭṭhisā ; E. Vediya-. 5 P.E.V. athānupubbena. 6 T.O. pāde. 7 T.O. attano. 8 E. adds pi. 9 T.O. saṅkappesi. 10 T.O. Iddhiyo. 11 T.O. Vuttiyo.

Vedisagirimhi 3 Rājagahe vāsitvā tiṃsaratτṭiya kālo 'va 4 gamanassāti gacchāma 5 dipam uttamaṁ. Palinā 6 Jambudīpāto haṃsārājā va ambare evam uppatitā therā nipatiṣmu nag'uttame.

Purato puraseṭṭhassa pabbate meghasannibhe, patiṭṭhahimṣu 7 kūtamhi 7 haṃsā va nagamuddhaniti.


Udayabhadrassa 10 pañcadasame vasse Paṇḍuvāsadevo 11 nāma imasmim dīpe rajjam pāpuṇi. Tattha Nāgadāsakaṇaṁ 12 visatime vasse idha Paṇḍuvāsadevo tiṃsavassāni rajjam kāretvā 13 kālam akāsi. Tasmāṁ yeva ca 14 vasse Abhayo nāma rājakumāro imasmim dīpe rajjam pāpuṇi. Tattha Susunāgaraṇṇo sattarasame vasse idha Abhayaraṇṇo vīsati 15

---

1 E. Vediyaka-; T.O. Vedisaka-.
2 P.E. -disāyam.
3 E. Vediy.-
4 T.O. ca.
5 T.O. gacchāmi.
6 P. palitā; E. phalinnā.
7 P.E.V. patiṃsu silakūtamhi.
8 T.O. Iddhiyā.-
9 P.E.V. veditabbo.
10 P.E.-bhaddassa.
11 P.E.V. -vāsudevo.
12 T.O. Nāgadassaka.
13 See T., p. 72, n. 11.
14 T.O. omit yeva ca.
15 T.O. vīsām.

Parinibbute ca pana¹ sambuddhe Ajātasattu catuviṣati vassāni rajjaṁ kāresi, Udayabhadr ² [73] ca sōlasa, Anuruddho ca Muṇḍo ca aṭṭha,³ Nāgadāsako ⁴ catuviṣati, Susunāgo aṭṭhārasa, tass’e’va putto Asoko ⁵ aṭṭhāvīsati, Asokassa puttā ⁶ dasabhātukarājāno dveviṣati vassāni rajjaṁ kāresuṁ. Tesaṁ pacchato nava Nāndā dveviṣatim eva, Candaṭgutto ca ⁷ catuviṣati, Bindusāro aṭṭhāvīsati.⁸ Tassāvasāne Asoko rajjaṁ pāpuṇi.⁹ Tassa pure abhisekā cattāri, abhisekato aṭṭhārāsake vasse imasmim дипе Mahindatthero paṭiṭṭhit.</p>


cintesi: imasmim dipe játo màm Tissáti ¹ nàma mı [74] gahetvā álāpitum samattho náma n'atthi. Ayaṁ pana chinna-
bhinnapāṭhādharo bhanḍukāsāvavasano màm nāmena álāpati.
Ko nu kho ayaṁ bhavissati manusso vā amanusso vātī. Thero áhā:

Samanā mayaṁ mahārāja dhammarājassa sāvakā,
tav'eva ² anukampāya Jambūdīpā idhāgatāti.

78. Tena ca samayena Devānampiyatissamahārājā ³ ca Asoka-
dhammarājā ca adīṭhasahāyakā honti. Devānampiyatissa-
mahārājassā ca puṇṇānumbhāvena Chātakapabbatapāde ekamhi
veṇugumbe ⁴ tisso veṇuyaṭṭhiyo ⁵ rathayaṭṭhippamānā uppaj-
jiṃsu: ekā latāyaṭṭhi nāma, ekā pupphayaṭṭhi nāma, ekā
sakuṇayaṭṭhi nāma. Tāsu latāyaṭṭhi sayami ⁶ rajatavanā
hoti, taṁ alāṅkarītvā uppannalatā kaṅcanavaṇṇā khāyati.
Pupphayaṭṭhiyām pana nilapitalohitavadātakālavaṇṇāni ⁶ pup-
phāni suvibhattavaṇṭappattakīkakkhāni hutfā khāyanti. Saku-
naṭṭhiyām hamsakukkuṭajīvijīvakādayo ⁷ sakunā nānap-
pakārāni ca ⁸ catuppaddāni ⁹ sajīvāni viya khāyanti. Vuttam
pi c'etām Dipavamśe ¹⁰:

Chātapabbatapādamhi veṇuyaṭṭhi ⁴ tayo auh,
setā rajatayaṭṭhi ca ¹¹ latā kaṅcanasannabhā.

Nilādi yādisām pupphaṁ pupphayaṭṭhimhi tādisām,
sakunā sakunayaṭṭhimhi sarūpē' eva saṅhitātī.

[75] Samuddato pi 'ssa muttamanīveḷuriyādi-anekavihitā-
ratanām ¹² uppajji. Tambapamṇiyām pana ¹³ aṭṭha muttā
uppajjimṣu: hayamuttā, gajamuttā, rathamuttā, āmalakamut,
valayamuttā, anguliveṭṭhamuttā, kakudhaphalamut,
pākatikamuttā. So tā ¹⁴ yatṭhiyo tā ca muttāyo ¹⁵
ānāṇā ca bahum ratanaṁ Asoκassa dhammarāṇṇo paṇṇā-
kārathṭaya pesesi. Asoko pasidivā tassa paṅcarājakakudha-
bhanḍāni pahini: chattām, cāmaraṁ, khaggam, molim, 
ratanapādukāṁ, ¹⁶ aṇāṇā ca abhisekathṭaya bahuvidham

¹ E. adds Tissa again.
² T.O. tam eva.
³ T.O. -tisso mahārājā.
⁴ P.E.V. omit; T.O. (latāyaṭṭhi) yām.
⁵ T.O. -jīvijīvakādayo.
⁶ E. adds Tissa again.
⁷ E. adds Tissa again.
⁸ P.E.V. -lohit 'odāta.
⁹ See references in Trsl.
¹⁰ E. va.
¹¹ P.E.V. add ca.
¹² P.E.V. -vihitam ratanaṁ.
¹³ T.O. omit.
¹⁴ P.E.V. add ca.
¹⁵ P. muttā.
¹⁶ T.O. ratanaṁ pādukaṁ.
paññākāram, seyyathidām: saṅkham, Gangodakaṁ, vadḍhamānaṁ vaṭaṁsakaṁ, bhīnkāram, nandiyāvaṭṭaṁ, sivikaṁ, kaññaṁ, kaṭacchuṁ,1 adhovimaṁ dussayugaṁ, hatthapuṅchanam,2 haricandanam, arunavaṇṇamatikakām, aṅjanaṁ, hariṭakaṁ 3 āmalakaṁ ti. Vuttam pi c'etaṁ Dipavamse:

Vālavijānimī 4 uṁhīsaṁ chattam khaggāṇ ca pādukaṁ veṭhanaṁ sārapāmaṅgaṁ bhīnkāram nandivaṭṭakaṁ, sivikaṁ saṅkham vaṭaṁsaṇā ca adhoviṁ 5 vaṭṭhakoṭikaṁ sovaṇṇapātiṁ kaṭacchuṁ 6 mahagghaṁ hatthapuṅchanam,7

Anotattodakaṁ kañṇaṁ 8 uttamaṁ haricandanam [76] arunavaṇṇamatikakān 9 ca aṅjanaṁ nāga-m-āhaṭaṁ, hariṭakaṁ 3 āmalakaṁ mahagghaṁ amatodesaṁ saṭṭhivāhasataṁ sālim sugandhaṁ suvakāhaṭaṁ 10 puṇṇakammābhinibbatam pāhesi Asokasavhayo 11 ti.

Na kevalaṇ ca etam 12 āmisapaṇṇākāraṇ, imaṁ kira dhamma- paṇṇākāram pi pesesi:

Aham Buddhaṁ ca dhammaṁ ca saṅghaṁ ca saraṇaṁ gato upāsaṅkāttaṁ vedesiṁ 13 Sakyaputtassa sāsane.

Imesu tisu vatthüsü uttamesu naruttama,14 tvam pi cittaṁ pasādehi saddhā 15 saraṇaṁ upehisiti.16

79. Sv'ayāṇaḥ rājā tāṁ divasaṁ Asokaraṇīṇa 17 pesitena abhisekena ekamāsabhisitto 18 hoti. Visākhapaṇṇamāyaṁ 19 hi'ssa abhisekam akaṁsu. So acirasutaṁ tāṁ sāsanapavattim anussaramaṇo tāṁ therassa: samaṇaṁ mayaṁ mahāraja dhammarājassa sāvakāti vacanam sutvā: ayyā nu kho

---

 agosto tāvad eva āvudhaṃ nikkhipitvā ekam antaṃ nisīdi sammodaniyam kathaṃ kathayamāno. Yathāha:

Āvudhaṃ nikkhipitvāna ekam antaṃ upāvisi, nisajja rājā sammodi bahuṃ atthupasaṃhītan ti.


82. Thero acirappakkantassa rañño Sumanasāmañeraṁ āman-
tesi : ehi tvam Sumana dhammasavanassa kālam ghosehihi.
Bhante kittakaṁ ṭhānaṁ sāvento ghosemiti. Sakalaṁ Tam-
baṇṇidipan ti. Sadhu bhante ti sāmañero abhiṅnāpādakam
catutthajjhānaṁ samāpajjitvā vuṭṭhāya adhiṭṭhahitvā samā-
hitena cittena sakalaṁ Tambapaṇṇidipan sāvento tikkhaṁ
Dhammasavanassa kālam ghosei. Rājā taṁ saddan sutiṁ
therānaṁ santikaṁ pesesi : kim bhante athi koci upaddavo
ti. N'atth' amhaṁkaṁ koci upaddavo dhammasavanassa
kālam ghosāyimha, Buddhavacanam kathetukāma 'mhati.
Taṁ ca pana sāmañerassa saddan sutiṁ bhummā devata
saddan anussāvesum, eten' upāyena yāva Brahmalokā saddo
abhuggaṇci. Tena saddena mahā-devatāsannipāto ahosi.
Thero mahantaṁ devatāsannipātaṁ disvā Samacittasutta-
tamaṁ kathesi. Kathāparyisosāne asaṅkheyyaṁ devatānaṁ
dhammabhīsayaṁ ahosi, bahū [79] nāgā ca supanṇā ca
saranesa pattiṭṭhahimsu. Yaḍiso va Sāriputtattherassa
imam suttantaṁ kathayato devatāsannipāto ahosi taḍiso
Mahindattherassāpi jāto.

83. Atha tassā rattiyā accayena rājā therānaṁ therāṇaṁ pesesi.
Sārathi raṁthām ekam ante ṭhapetvā therānaṁ ārocesi:


1 E. abhiruh-. 2 T.O. Paṭhamacetiya.
3 P.E. addassā.
4 E. adds mahāsayaṇaṁ; P. adds uccāsayanamahāsayaṇaṁ.
5 T.O. taddhiḳaṁ.
7 P. uppāta-
8 T.O. paṭṭhataṁ.
9 T.O. khaḍaniyena bhojanīyena.
10 T.O. karontūti.
vassento ¹ Petavatthuṃ Vimānavatthuṃ Saccasamūyuttaṅ ca kathesi. Tam therasa dhammadesanaṃ sutvā tāni pañca pi itthisatāni sotāpattipalaṃ sacchikarimsu.²


Sp. nivāsana.

P.E. Amaccā.

Sp. nivāsana.


Therā Cetiyaṁ ājirimhi eva agamaṁsu. Tatrāyasmā Mahindathero Sumanasāmaneraṁ āha: gaccha tvāṁ sāmanera, Jambudīpe tava ayyaṁ Asokaṁ ⁸ dhammarājānaṁ upasaṅ-kaṁitvā mama vacanena evaṁ vadehi: sahāyo te mahāraja

₁ E.Bp. dvāsaṭṭhiyā ; Mhv. xvi, 10, aṭṭhasaṭṭhi-. ² T.O. anāthavassaṁ.
₃ T.O. omit. ⁴ P.E.V. 'mhe.
₅ P.E.V. kārāpetvā. ⁵ P.E.V. tasmīṁ.
⁶ T.O. Sa rājā. ⁶ P.E.V. tasmīṁ.
⁷ T.O. Sa rājā. ⁸ E. Asokadhamma-. 
Devānampiyatissa Buddhāsānena pasanno thūpam patiṭṭhāpe-tukāmo, tumhākaṃ kira hatthe dhātuyo atthi, tam me dethāti. Tam gahetvā Sakkaṃ devarājanāṃ upasaṅkamitvā evaṃ vadehi: tumhākaṃ kira mahārāja hatthe dve dhātuyo atthi, dakkhiṇadāṭhā ¹ dakkhiṇ’akkhakaṇ ca, tato tumhe dakkhiṇadāṭhaṃ pūjetha, dakkhiṇ’akkhakaṃ pana mayhaṃ dethāti. Evaṃ ca nam vadehi: kasmā tvam mahārāja amhe Tambapannidīpam pahinīvā pañamaṃjīthāti. Sāduh bhante ti kha Sumana therassa vacanam sampāṭicchitvā tāvad eva pattacīvaram ādāya vehāsaṃ abhuggantvā Pāṭaliputtadvāre oruyha raṅṇo santikaṃ gantvā tam ² attham ārocesi.


89. Rāja pi kho sāmaṇerena ⁷ vuttappakāraṃ pūjāsakkāraṃ katvā haṭṭhikhandhavaragato sayam maṅgalahatthimaththake setacchattam dhārayamāno Mahānāgavanaṃ sampāpuṇi. Ath’ assa etad ahosi: sace sayam saṃmāsambuddhassa dhātu, chattam apanamatu,⁸ maṅgalahaththi jannukehi bhūmiyaṃ patiṭṭhahatu, dhātaucāṅgoṭakam mayhaṃ mahāmathake patiṭṭhātuti.⁹ Saha raṅṇo citt’uppādena chattam apanami, hatthi

jannukehi patiţţhahi, dhātucaṅgoṭakaṁ rañño matthake patiţţhahi. Rājā amateneva abhisītagatto paramena pītipāmojjena samannāgato hutvā pucchi : dhātuṁ bhante kim karomāti. Hatthikumbhamhi yeva tāva mahārāja ṭhapehiti. Rājā dhātucaṅgoṭakaṁ gahetvā hatthikumbhe ṭhapesi. Pamudito nāgo kuņcanādaṁ 1 nadi ; mahāmegho uţṭhahitvā pokkhara-vassam vassi, udakapariyantam katvā mahābhūmicālo ahosi : paccante pi nāma sammāsambuddhassa dhātu patiţţhahasatīti. 2 Devamanussā pamudimśu. 2 Evam iddhānubhāvāsirīyā devamanussānam pītim janayanto :

Puṇṇamāyam mahāviro cūtumāsiniyā idha āgantvā devalokamāhā hatthikumbhe patiţţhito ti.

Athā 3 so hatthināgo anekatālāvacara-parivārito ativiya uḷārāya pūjāya sakkarīyamāno 4 pacchimadisabhīmukho hutvā apasakkanto yāva nagarassa puratthimadvāraṁ tāva gantvā puratthimadvāraṇa nagaram pavisītvā [86] sakalanagarena 5 uḷārāya pūjāya kayiramānāya 6 dakkhinadvāreṇa nikkhamitvā Thūpārāmassa pacchimadisābāhāge Mahejāvatthu 7 nāma kira attthi, tattha gantvā puna Thūpārāmabhīmukho eva paṭiṇivatti.


1 T.O. końca.-  
2-2 -hissatīti devamanussā pamodimśu ; E. sampamodimśu.  
3 T.O.Bp. ath'assa.  
4 P. sakkarīya.-  
5 P.E.V. -nāgarena.  
6 P. kayiramānāya.  
7 T.O. Pahecivatthu ; E. Pabhejavatthu ; Mhv. xvii, 30, Mahejjāvatthu.  
8 P. omits.  
9 E. adds nāma.  
10 T.O. omit.  
11 T.O. -vyasanam.
Disvā cattārisāya bhikkhusahassehi parivuto agamāsi. Tas-sānubhāvena tāvad eva pajjarako vūpasanto. Roge vūpasante bhagavā dhammadhām desesi; caturāsātipañasahassānaṁ 1 dhammabhismayoh ahosi. Bhagavā dhammadhakaraṁ 2 datvā pakkāmi. Tam anto pakkhipitvā Paṭiyārāme cetiyaṁ akāmsu. Mahādeo dīpaṁ anusāsanena 3 pālayanto vīhāsi. 3


Evaṁ Thūpārāme purimakānaṁ tinnaṁ Buddhānaṁ cetiyāni patiṭṭhahiṁsu. Tāni sāsanantaradhāne 9 nassanti, ḍhāna-mattam avasissati. Tasmā vuttaṁ: tena ca samayena Thūpā-
rāme purimakānaṁ tiṅṇaṁ sammāsambuddhānaṁ paribhogacetiyaṭṭhānaṁ hotiti.\(^1\) Tad etāṁ vinaṭṭhesu [88] cetiyānubhörena kaṅṭakasamākīṁnasākhehi nānā gacchehi parivutaṁ tiṭṭhati: mā naṁ koci uciṭṭhāsucimalakacavarehi sandūsesi.


\(^{1}\) Bp. ahositi.
\(^{2}\) Bp.Sp. sīghaṁ sīghaṁ.
\(^{3}\) P. mahadassanatthāṁ.
\(^{4}\) E. tehi once only.
\(^{5}\) E. Gaṇḍambarukkhamule.

95. Tasmiṁ kho pana samaye Anulādevī pabbajitukāma āvatvā raṇīṇo ārocesi. Rājā tassā vacanaṁ sutvā theram etad


devi pañcahi ca kaññāsatehi pañcahi ca antepurikāsathe
saddhiṁ pabbajitukāmā mayham āgamanam udikkhati, gac-
chām’ aham mahārāja Tambapanṇidīpan ti. Rājā aha : amma
putto pi me Mahindaṭṭhero naṭṭa ca Sumanasaṁaṇero maṃ
cinnahatthām viya karaṇā Tambapanṇidīpam [92] gata. Tassa
mayham te pi apassantassa uppanno soko tava mukhaṃ
passantassa vūpasammati. Aḥam amma mā agamāṣīti. Bhariyaṃ me
cāmārāja bhātuno vacanā. Anulā pi khattiyā
itthisahassaparivutā pabbajjāpurekkhāma maṃ patimāneti.
Gacchām’ aham mahārājāti. Tena hi amma mahābodhiṃ
gahetvā yāhīti.1

97. Kuto rañño mahābodhi. Rājā kira tato pubbe eva
dhātugahaṇatthāya anāgate Sumane, Laṅkādīpaṃ mahā-
bodhim pesetuṅkāmo : kathāna nu kho asatṭhaghatārahaṃ
mahābodhiṃ pesessāmiti upāyaṃ apassanto Mahādevam nāma
amaccam puccdī. So āha : santi deva bahū paṇḍita bhikkhūti.
Tāṃ sutvā rājā bhikkhusaṅghassa bhattāma paṭiyādettvā
bhattakiccavāsāne saṅgham puccdī : gantabbaṃ nu kho
bhante bhagavato bodhinā Laṅkādīpaṃ no ti. Saṅgho Moggali-
puttatissattherassa bhāraṃ akāsi. Thero : gantabbaṃ mahā-
rāja mahābodhinā Laṅkādīpan ti vatvā bhagavato paṇcā
cmaḥ-adihitthānāni kathesi. Katamāni paṇcā.

Bhagavā kira mahāparinibbānāmace nipanno : Laṅkādīpe
mahābodhipatiṭṭhāpanatthāya Asokamahārājā mahābodi-
gahaṇatthāṃ 2 gamissati, tadā mahābodhissa dakkhiṇasākā
sayam eva chijjitvā suvaṇṇakaṭāhe patiṭṭhātūti adhiṭṭhāi.
Idam ekam 3 adhiṭṭhānam. Tattha patiṭṭhānakāle ca 4 mahā-
bodhi himavalāhakagabbhāṃ pavisitvā tiṭṭhatūti adhiṭṭhāi.
Idam dutiyaṃ adhiṭṭhānam. Sattame divase himavalāhaka-
gabbhato oruyha suvaṇṇakaṭāhe patiṭṭhahanto pattehi ca
phalehi ca chabbaṇṇaramsiyo municatūti 5 adhiṭṭhāi. Idam
inatiyaṃ adhiṭṭhānam. Thūpārāme dakkhiṅ’akkhakadhātu
cetiyanhi patiṭṭhānadiivase yamakapāṭhihāriyam karotūti adhi-
thāi. Idam 6 catuttham 7 adhiṭṭhānam. Laṅkādīpamhi yeva

1 T.O. gacchāhīti.
2 T.O. ekam.
3 P.E.V. muticantūti.
4 T.O. va.
5 P.E.V. catutthaṃ.
6 T.O. imaṃ.
7 P.E.V. catuttham.
98. Atha rājā satayojanāyāmāya 6 tiyojanavitthārāya maha-
tiyya senāya Pāṭalipputtato nikkhamitvā ariyasaṅgham ādāya
dahāvahosi amīpam agamaśi. Senā samussitadhaipatākaṃ 7
nānāratanavicitto amākālāṅkārapatimanditaṃ nānāvidhakusum-
asamākiniṃ amākātasya saṅghottām 8 mahābodhiṃ parikkhipi.
Rājā sahassamatte gaṇāpāmokkhe mahāthere
ghaṭetya ṣakalā-Jambudīpe pattābhisēkanāṃ rājūnaṃ 9 sahas-
sena attānaṃ ca mahābodhiṃ ca parivāraperavataṃ mahābodhimule
ṭhatvā mahābodhiṃ ullokesi. Mahābodhiṃ hkhandaṇa ca
dakkhiṇāmahāsākhāya 10 catuhaṭṭhapattamānaṃ padesañ ca
ṭhapetvā avasesam adassanam agamaśi. Rājā taṃ pāṭihāriyaṃ
divvā uppannopitipāmojoj : abhiṃ bhante iṃmaṇ pāṭihāriyaṃ
divvā tuṭṭho mahābodhiṃ ṣakala-Jambudīpe rajjena 12 pujemiti
bhikkhuṣaṅghassa vaṭṭvā abhisēkaṃ adāsi. [94] Tato pu-
phagandhādīhi pujetvā tikkhattum padakkhiṇaṃ katvā aṭṭhasu-
ṭhēnus vanditvā uṭṭhāyā añjaliṃ paggayha ṭhatvā sacc-
vacanakiriyāṃ bodhiṃ gathitukāmo bhūmito yāva mahā-
bodhiṃ dakkhiṇāsākhā tāva uccam katvā ṭhapiṭassa
sabbaratanamayapiṭhassa upari saṃvaṭṭhākāṭhaṃ ṭhāpatevā

1 P.E. abhuggantvā.  2 P.E.V. taṃ.  
3 T.O. jānāthaṭī.  4 T.O. omit ti.  
5 T.O. -sonḍapamāṇa-.  6 T.O. -āyāmāni.  
7 P.E.V. -pāṭākaṃ.  8 T.O. -saṅghatāṃ.  
11 T.O. omit.  12 P.E.V. -dīparajjena.
ratanapiṭham āruyha suvaṇṇatulikam gahetvā manośilāyam lekham katvā: yadi mahābodhinā Laṅkādipe patiṭṭhātabbām,1 yadi cāham Buddhasāsane nibbematiiko bhaveyyam, mahābodhi sayam eva imasmiṃ suvaṇṇakaṭṭāhe patiṭṭhātūti saccavacanakiriyam akāsi. Saha saccakirīyāya bodhisākā manośilāyam paricchinaṭṭhānē chijjitvā gandhakalalapūrassa suvaṇṇakaṭṭāhassa upari aṭṭhāsi.


99. Evaṃ suvaṇṇakaṭṭāhe patiṭṭhitamatte mahābodhimhi mahāputhvū 11 cali, ākaṃ śe devadudbhiyo phaliṃṣu, pabbaṭāṇaṃ nacche devatānaṃ sādhukārehi yakkhānaṃ bhīnkārehi 12 asurānaṃ thutijappehi brahmānaṃ appoṭhanēhi meghānaṃ gajjihehi catuppadānaṃ ravehi pakkhiṃ virutehi sabbatālāvacarānaṃ sakasaṣaṣaṭṭihānēhi puthuvitalato yāva

1 E. adds ca.
2 T. O. tassa.
3 T. O. eva.
4 T. O. mule lekhāya.
5 E. paricchijji; T. O. -chinditvā tato.
6 T. O. cel‘ukkhepa-.
7 T. O. omit.
8 T. O. -vaddhana.
9 P. -paṭhāvi; T. O. -puthuvī.
10 T. O. -vaḍḍhanā.
11 P. -paṭhāvi; T. O. -puthuvī.
12 T. O. himkārehi.


100. Evaṁ mahābodhimandaṁ 9 ānetvā Pāṭaliputte ṭhapitaṁ mahābodhiṁ sandhāya āha: tena hi amma mahābodhiṁ gahetvā yāḥiṁ. Sa, sādhūti sampaticci.

Rājā mahābodhirakkhaṇatthāya atṭhārasa devakulāni aṭṭha amaccaṅkulaṁ aṭṭha brāhmaṇaṅkulaṁ aṭṭha kuṭumbikakulāni aṭṭha gopakulāni aṭṭha Taracchakulāni aṭṭha ca Kālingakulāni datvā udakāsīṁcanaṭṭhaya ca aṭṭha svānṇaghaṭe


102. Devaṅampiyatisso mahārajjā pi kho Sumanasāmaṇerassā vacanena māgasiramāsassa 9 paṭhamapāṭipadadivasatoppabhuti 10 uttaradvārato paṭṭhāya yāva Jambukolapattanāṁ
tāva ¹ maggam sodhāpetvā ālaṅkārāpetvā nagarato nik-khamanadivase uttaradvārasamāpe Samuddasālavatthusmiṃ ² thito yeva tāya vibhūtiyā mahāsamudde āgacchantām yeva mahābodhiṃ therassa ānubhāvena disvā tuṭṭhamānaso nik-khamitvā sabbam maggam pañcavaṇṇehe pupphehi okirāpento antar'antarā ³ puppha-agghiyāṇi ṭhapento ekāhen'eva Jam-bukolapaṭṭanam gantvā sabbatālavacaraparivuto puppha-dhūpagandhādhihi pūjayamāno galappamāṇaṃ udakaṃ oruyha: āgato vata 're dasabalassa sarasaramsiyālavissajjanako mahābodhirukkho ⁴ ti pasannacitto mahābodhiṃ ukkhipitvā utta-maṅge sirsāmiṃ paṭiṭṭhapetvā mahābodhiṃ parivāretvā āgatehi solasaḥi jātisampannakulehi saddhiṃ samuddato paccuttaritvā samuddatire mahābodhiṃ ṭhapetvā tīni divisāni sakala-Tambapannaṃdipe rajjena pūjesi, solasaṃmā jātisampannakulānaṃ rajjaṃ vicāresi.


Evam puttanattuparamparāya 11 samantā dipavāsīnaṃ hitāya sukhāya patīṭṭhite dasabalassa 12 dhammadhajabhūte 12 [101] mahābodhimhi Anulādevī pañcahi kaññaśatehi pañcahi ca

---

1 P.E. atthamite.
2 T.O.E. rohini-.
3 P.E. dassimsu.
4 T.O. -paṃsu.
5 P.E.-āsannaṭṭhāne; Sp. maḥā-āsannaṭṭhāne.
6 Mhv. Tivakka-.
7 T.O. -nimmāna-.
8 T.O. Kātaragāme; Bp. Gocaragāme.
9 T.O. omit.
10 P. yojanīyayojanīyesu; Sp. yojanīyārāmesu.
11 T.O. -natta-.
12 P.E. omit.
anteipurikāsatēhi mātugāmasahassena saddhiṃ Saṅghamittattheriyā santike pabbajitvā na cirass’ eva saparivārā arahatte patiṭṭhāsi. Ariṭṭho pi kho raṅīno bhāgineyyo paṅcahi purisatehi saddhiṃ therassa santike pabbajitvā na cirass’ eva saparivāro arahatte patiṭṭhāsi.


1 T.O. Tattha.
2 E. bhūmiṃ; T.O. bhūmiyā.
3 Sp. calittha.
4 P.E. omit -rāsa-.
5 P.E.V. ropāpehiti.
6 T.O. vanditvā tāvad eva.
7 T.O. kampi.
8 T.O. kampīthāti.
9 E. kiccam.
10 P.E. omit.


1 T.O.E. -gāminī.  
3 T.O. omit.  
5 T.O. omit.  
7 T.O. -maṇḍapākāraṃ.  
9 P.E. paṅcabhikkhu-.  
2 P.E. add akkharāni.  
4 T.O. omit Mahā.  
6 P.E.V. Mayā ettha bhante kim.  
8 P.E. kāretvā.
panāyasmatā Ariṇṭhattherena vinayanidāne ākāsāṁ mahā-viravaṁ ā viravi, akālavijjullatā nicchariṁsu, devatā sāduh-
kāram adāmsu, mahāpāthavā udakapariyantām katvā sañ-
kampi. Evam anekesu pāṭihāriyesu vattamānesu āyasām
Ariṇṭhatthero Mahāmahindappamukhehi aṭṭhasaṭṭhiyā pac-
cekaganāthi khīnāsavahātherethi tad aṇṇehi ca aṭṭhasaṭṭhis-
hassehi bhikkhūhi parivuto pāṭhamakattikapavāranadive
Thūpārāmavihāramajjhe satthu karuṇāgnaparidīpaṁ bha-
gavato anuṣīṭṭhikarānaṁ kayakammavacikammanvipphandi-
tavinyanānaṁ Vinayapiṭakam pakāsesi. Pakāsetvā ca yavat
āyukam tiṭṭhamāno bhunnaṁ vācetvā bhunnaṁ hadaye
patiṭṭhāpetvā anupādisaya nibbānadhatuyā parinabbāyi.
Te pi kho Mahāmahindappamukhā tasmīṁ samāgame:

[104] Aṭṭhasaṭṭhi mahātherā dhuraggāhā samāgataṁ
pacecekaganāno sabbhe dhammarājassa sāvakāṁ.
Khīnāsavaṁ vasippattā tevijjā iddhikovidaṁ
uttamattathā abhiṁṇāya anuṣāsinīṁ sājino.
Ālokaṁ dassayitvāna obhāsetvā mahīṁ imaṁ
jalitvā aggikkhandhā va parinibbīṁsu mahesaya.

Tesam parinibbānato aparabhāge aṇṇhe pi tesam therānaṁ
antevāsikā Tissadatta-Kālasumana-Dīghasumanādayo ca
Mahā-ariṇṭhattherassa antevāsikā antevāśikānaṁ antevāsikā
cāti evam pubbe vuttappakārā acariyaparamparā imaṁ
Vinayapiṭakam yāva ajjatanā ānesum. Tena vuttam : tatiya-
saṅghahato pana uddham imaṁ dīpaṁ Mahīndādiḥ ābhataṁ.
Mahindato uggahetvā kači kāłaṁ Ariṇṭhattherādiḥi ābhataṁ,
tato yāva ajjatanā tesam antevāsikaparaparabhūtāya acari-
yaparaparāya ābhataṁ ti. 5

107. Katthappatiṭṭhitan ti. Yesam pālito 6 ca atthato ca
anūnaṁ vattati maniṁghate pakkhittatelam iva īsakam pi na
paggharati, evarūpesu adhimattasatigatidhitimantesu lajjī-
kukkuccakesu 7 sikkhaṁkāmesu puggalesu patiṭṭhitam ti veditab-
baṁ. Tasmā vinayapaṭṭhāpanattham vinayapariyattiya
ānisaṁsāṁ sallakkhetvā sikkhaṁkāmena bhikkhunā vinayo

1 T.O. -viravitam.
2 T.O. Mahindattherapamukhehi.
3 T.O. Mahamahindattherapamukhā.
4 E. nibbāyinsu ; T.O. parinibbāyinsu.
5 O. ends here.
6 T. pālito.
7 P. lajjisu kukkuccakesu.

Ettāvatā ca yā sa vinayasamvaṇṭanatthāṃ mātikā ṭhapitā, tattha:

Vuttaṃ yena yadaṃ yasāṃ dhāritaṃ yena cābhataṃ, yatthappatiṭṭhītaṃ c’etam etam vatvā vidhiṃ tato ti, imissā tāva gāthāya attho pakāsito. Vinayassa ca bāhiranidānaṁvaṇṇanā yathādhippāyaṃ saṃvaṇṇitā hotīti.

Bāhiranidānaṁvaṇṇanā niṭṭhitā.

¹ P.E.V. māṭāpiṭu-.
² T.O.E. mantanā.
INDEX TO PALI TEXT

The numbers refer to paragraphs. For proper names see the Index of Proper Names.

A
akkhaka, see dakkhin'akkhaka
akharappabheda, 42
akkhipūjā, 45
aggim paricarati, 55
aṅkūra, 99
aṅga, 30, 49
aṅga (as in navāngasatthusāsana), 16, 31, 38, 49
aṭṭhakathā, 1, 2, 43; sa-āṭṭha-, 52
attha, att'attha, 22; -pañcama, 64; -bhāva, 72; -sattama, 75
aṭṭhā, 26, 27, 107; -paṭisambhidā, 27; -pañṇanā, 2
adhasakinisdadana (kappa), 38
adīṭṭhasāhāyaka, 78
adhama, 4; -vāḍī, 4, 38
adhikaraṇa, 38-40, 55, 60, 61
adhikaranasamatha, 14
adhikārika, 50
adhikārana, 38-40, 55, 60, 61
adhikārana, 38-40, 55, 60, 61
adhikaraṇasamatha, 14
adhikārika, 50
adhiccasamuppanika, 62
adhitthana, 95, 97; pafiça-maha, 97; adhitthasi, 42, 60, 77, 82
anayavyasana, 90-2
anavajjasanfil, 29
anagami, 36, 37
anāṭhavasa (v.l., -vassa), 87
ananti, 14
anātapihāsa, 62
anāsava, 11, 38; see khīnāsava
aniccata, 8
aniyata, 14
anuttara dhammā, 23
anupaññatti, 14, 21
anupādā, 11, 107
anupādīsesa, 3, 17, 106
anupubbavipassanā, 103
anupubbavihāra, 3
anumati, 5
anumatti, 38
animodana, 48
anuvayajana, 45
anussadhi, 32
anussaya, 26
anussāsanta, 17
anussāsanta, 17
anussāsanta, 17
anussāsanta, 17
anussāsanta, 17
anussāsanta, 17
antaraśīla, 23
antāryikā dhammā, 29
antānantika, 62
antevāsi, 52; -ika, 59, 106; -ika paramparā, 63
appamāda, 11, 19, 48, 53
abbuda, 39, 55
abhūtadhamma, the aṅga, 28, 31
abhīñā, 3, 29; -pādaka, 60, 82
abhīdhamma, 23, 24, 29, 32; see Abhidhammapiṭaka, Proper Names
abhīvādana, 87
abhīvinaya, 23
abhīsanda, 1
abhīsama, 27; see also dhammā-bhīsama
abhiseka, 44, 52, 53, 56, 74, 76, 79, 98, 99, 103; -athāya pañnakārā, 78; -sattāha, 99; pattābhiseka-rajano, 98; rajābhiseka, 74; anabhisitta, 44, 89
amaccā, 48, 49, 55-8, 61, 77, 83-6, 95, 97, 101
amata, 89; -pada, 40, 48; see dhammāmata
amathitakappa, 38
amanussa, 77
amarāvikkhepi, 62
amba, -pakka, 104; -rakkha, 80
arahatta, 11, 12, 43, 47, 52, 86, 103
arahanta, 4, 37, 46, 47, 79, 86
ariyasaṅgha, 1, 98
alagadda, 28; alagaddūpamā pari-yatti, 28
avijjā, 1
avivata, 3; -vāḍī, 4
avippatiṣāra, 107
asaṅhīvāda, 62
asatthagātāraha, 97
asadisa mahāthūpa, 104
asiggaha, 59
asura, 99
asekhā dhammā, 23
asekhapatiṣambhidā, 5
A
āgataphala, 81
ācariya, 42, 43, 47, 48, 52
ācariyaparamparā, 35, 37, 63, 106
215
Samantapāsādikāyā Bāhiranidānam

I

itivāda, 28
itivuttaka, the anga, 28, 31
ithāsa, 42
iddhi, 44, 49; iddhikovida, 106; iddhanubhāva, 65, 89; iddhipatta, 79; iddhibala, 79; mahiddhi, 66, 67, 72, 74; -tara, 65
indriya, 48
iriyāpatha, 11, 46–8
isi, 69, 70, 106; isivātaparivāta, 65, 79

U

uccāsayanamahāsayaṇa, 83
uccedavāda, 62
uttarasaṅgā, 56
udakapāta, 84
udakasaṭṭikā, 92
udāna, the anga, 28, 31
udānagāthā, 19, 23
uddāna, 23
uddhacca, 11
upajjihāya, 36, 37, 43, 47, 48, 52, 73
upanissayasampatti, 51
upanissā, 107
uparājā, 51, 56; oparajja, 51, 56
upasama, 41, 46
upasampadā, 48, 107; -kamma, 64; -simā, 52; upasampanna, 52
upassaya, 95
upādinnaphassa, 29
upārāmpa, 28
upāsaka, 38, 73, 74
upāsikā, 47
uposatha, 38, 54, 55, 57, 61, 62, 74, 87; -āgāra, 104; -divasa, 87, 99
uppādapāthaka (v.1., uppāta-), 83
uppābājjeti, 62
ummāda, 29

E

ekaccasassatika, 62
ekabhāttika, 72
ekamātika, 44, 55
ekānusandhika, 32
etadagga, 4, 13

O

oparajja, see uparājja
ovāda, 48, 85

K

kaṁkhā, 60
kaṭāha, 97; see suvaṁнакaṭāha
kaṇṭaka, 55
katā, 67, 69, 81–3; -bheda, 25
kappa, 1, 45; kappa (dasa), 38; kappiya, 10
kammaṭṭhāna, 43
karakavassa, 65
karunāgūtra, 106
kalahaviggaha, 92
kalvādpamīla, 72
kahāpapa, 38
kāmāvacaradevaloka, 39
kāyakamma, 21, 106
kāyagatāsati, 11
kāyabhikṣaṇa, 83, 91
kalapakkha, 99
kāsāyana vaṭṭhāni, 54, 94
kāśvapajjota, 65, 79
kilesa, 1, 26, 28
kukkucca, 61; -pakata, 107; kukkuccha, 56
kutumbikakula, 100
kumbhāṇa, 65
kusalaṭṭhika, 1
kusālahippā, 57
kusalaśambhāra, 27
kutubha, 42
ketumāla, 45
kojavaka, 83
Kh
khandaphullaṭisaṅkharaṇa, 8, 9
khattiya, -yā, 96; -kula, 68; -jana, 56
khandha, 19; see pariṇāṭakkhandha and silakkhandha
khaya, 19
khīṇāsavā, 4, 28, 36–8, 40, 49, 50, 79, 106; -mahāthera, 106
khuraggā, 47, 86

G
gaṇa, 33, 55; -kamma, 54; -pāmok-kha, 98; -sajjhaya, 14; see also pañcavagga gaṇa and paccekagñī
gandhakalāla, 98, 103
gandhakuti, 8
gandhabba, 65
gabbha, 74; see paripunnaṃgabbhā
gambhirabhava, 24, 26, 27
gahakāraka, 19
gahakūta, 19
gāthā, the ānga, 28, 31
gāmantarēkappa, 38
geyya, the ānga, 28, 31
gocara, 6
gopakula, 100

Gh
ghāsacchādana, 54

C
cakkavāla, 99; -gabbha, 99
cākkaśa, 11
cāṇḍāla, jetṭhaka-, 47; -gāma, 47
cammakhanda, 58
cātumāśni punnāmā, 89
cittā, 9, 42, 57, 61; -kkhepa, 29; -vārabhājana, 32; cittassā vimok-kha, 107; samāhita-, 82
civara, 43, 56, 83
cetiya, 48, 54, 83, 90–3; paribhoga
cetiya, 90, 93
cetopariyakovida, 79
cel'ukkhepa, 98

Ch
chāna, 56, 74, 77
chanda, 5
chalabhiññā, 35, 74
chātakaroga, 91
chinnabhinnapaṭadhara, 65, 77

J
janapada, 64, 73, 74
jalogi (kappa), 38
jātaka, 69
jātaka, the ānga, 28, 31
jātarāparajata (kappa), 38
jāti, 19
junāhapakkha, 99

N
ñatti, 6
ñāna, 1; -dassana, 107
ñātaka, 61, 73, 80

T
taṭṭikā, 83
tañhā, 26
tathāgata, see Proper Names
tantiikkama, 1
taruṇabodhirukkha, 103
tikapariccheda, 32
tikabhājana, 32
tittira, 61
titthiya, 9, 39, 54, 55, 62; -vāda, 9
tiḷṭikā, 4, 62; -dhara, 38, 40, 43, 44; -pariyattidhara, 62; -saṅgha-hita, 52; tipetaka, 63
tejodhātu, 53
tevijja, 4, 62, 106

Th
thera, 1–12, 13, 15, 15, 33–5, 37–43, 47–87, 90–5, 103–7; see Elder, General Index; theravāda, 1, 52; therā-sana, 10, 14, 55; therikā, 33; therī, 51, 73, 95, 96, 101, 103
thūpa, 87, 88, 93, 94, 104, 105; -patiṭṭhāna, 87; see also mañi-thūpa
dakkhin'akkhaka, 87, 88, 93, 97
dakkhinadāṭhā, 87, 88
Dh

dhamma (the Dhamma), 1, 3–6, 9, 13, 15, 18, 26, 28, 29, 32, 33, 35, 38, 49, 52, 55, 62, 78, 81, 90–2, 107; -abhimalsaya, 65, 67, 72, 82-4, 90–2; -amata, 68; -āsana, 10, 13–15, 106; -kathā, 65; -kathika, 58; -karaka, 90; -kkhandha, 16, 32, 33, 38, 49; -cakka, 10; -cakkhu, 66; -citta, 29; -desanā, 83; -dha, 103; -dha, 54; -paṭisambhidā, 27; -paññākara, 78; -puñja, 25; -ratana-vassā, 83; -rāja (Asoka), 78, 87, 88, 101; -Buddha, 77, 79, 106; -vara, 1; -vādf, 4; -vinaya, 3, 16, 18, 33, 43, 55; -vinaya-sāṅgha, 10; -sāṅgha, 10; -sāṅghāka, 35; -saṅgiti, 5, 64; -sabbhā, 12; -savaṇa, 82

dhamma (phenomena), 23, 27

N

nakkhutta, 77
navakamma, 49
navaṅga, 33, 49; -sattthusāsana, 4
nāga, 17, 45, 65, 78, 82, 94, 100, 101; -kula, 101; -bala, 65; bhavana, 44, 101; -rāja, 44, 45, 65, 94; -rajja, 101
nāga (elephant), 93
nāga (sage), 63, 74, 88; see also mahānāga, samaṇaṇāga
nāgalatā, 44
nātha, 1
nāmarūpa, 25; -paricchedakathā, 25
nikāya, 15, 16, 30, 38, 63
nigantha, 46
nigrodharukkha, 47
nighandu, 42
nijjhāna, 28
nīdāna, 2, 14, 15, 34
nipāta, 33
nibbāna, 3, 7–9 passim; -dhātu, 3, 17, 106
nibbidā, 107
niruddha, 28; -samāpatti, 94, 102
nissagga, 49
nissaranajjā (sage), 28
evaṇnāṇāṅnapāṇivāda, 62

P

pakataṅñutā, 36, 37
pakaraṇa, 63
paccanta, 55, 89; -imajanapada, 64
paccaya, 28, 51, 53, 87; -dīvāka, 50, 51; catupaccaya, 49, 54
paccayākāra, 19
paccuttāhāna, 87
pacceka, 106
pacchāsāmaṇa, 8
pajjāra, 90
pañcatappa, 55
pañcavagga gāna, 64
pañcavaṇṇāñi pupphāni, 83, 102
pañcasata, 33
pañcasila, 48
paññatti, 14, 27
paññā, 1, 26; -sampādā, 29
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>patipatti</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pativedha, patividdhākuppa</td>
<td>26, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patisannhāra</td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patisambhidā, pabhinnapatisambhidā</td>
<td>1, 4, 27, 29, 38-40, 42, 52; -ppattā, 42; 60, 82</td>
<td>40, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patha, pathi, pathavi</td>
<td>51, 52, 83, 84; -kampa, 84; -kampāna, 60; padesapathavi-kampāna, 60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pānḍaraṅga, pāndita</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāna, -ākāra</td>
<td>78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pānīsaka</td>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patta, pātā, pattā</td>
<td>48, 83, 88; -cīvara, 8, 9, 12, 43, 47, 56, 87</td>
<td>43, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>padakkhiṇā, 43, 98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>padabhājaniya</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>padhāna, 11; -ghara, 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pabbajati, 39, 51, 54, 56, 65-72, 81, 86-96, 103, 105</td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pabbajā, 42, 43, 48, 51, 54, 107; -apekkha, 81; -purekkhiṇā, 96</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pabbājita, 41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pabbājeti, 42, 43, 51, 52, 86, 95, 96</td>
<td>43, 95</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pamāḍalekha</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>par'attha</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parappavāda</td>
<td>62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paramatthadesana, 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parikkhama, parikkhāra</td>
<td>43, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parikkhāra, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pariccaga, 9, 35, 38, 40, 76, 87, 93, 94; katapunfi, 48.</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paramatthadhesanā</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parināṇātakkhandha, 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parinibbhāna, 3, 7, 8, 9, 19, 44, 76, 97, 107; -nibbāyati, 53, 76, 106; nibbuta, 3, 9, 35, 38, 40, 76, 87, 93, 94</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papā, 57, 61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāmokkha</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāmujja</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parajika, 14, 21, 34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāli, 13, 26, 107; -nayānurūpa, 1</td>
<td>13, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porana, 63, 74, 75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāsānā, 46; bāhira-, 46; brāhmaṇa, 46</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāsānathambha, 105</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pītaka, 16, 20-9, 33, 38, 63</td>
<td>16, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pīsāca, 72</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pittī, 48, 51, 54, 56, 65-72, 81, 86-96, 103, 105</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puggala, 14, 15, 34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punna, 11; -anubhāva; see ānubhāva; katapunña, 48.</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puthujjana, 4, 36, 37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pujapadadi, 19, 24, 26, 27</td>
<td>19, 24, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punna, 1, 11; -anubhāva</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puthujjana</td>
<td>4, 36, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pabbājita</td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pabbājī, 42, 43, 51, 52, 86, 95, 96</td>
<td>43, 95</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pamāḍalekha</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>par'attha</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parappavāda</td>
<td>62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paramatthadesanā, 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parikkhama, parikkhāra</td>
<td>43, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parikkhāra, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pariccaga, 50, 51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parināṇātakkhandha, 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parinibbhāna, 3, 7, 8, 9, 19, 44, 76, 97, 107; -nibbāyati, 53, 76, 106; nibbuta, 3, 9, 35, 38, 40, 76, 87, 93, 94; katapunfi, 48.</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phassa, 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phāsukā, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phāsuvihāra, 55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phala, pathama-, magga-, 65; 70, 71; sotāpatti-, 43, 83; (mahā-bodhiṣa), 99, 103</td>
<td>43, 83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bandhana, 65, 66</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bahussuta, 54, 63</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddha, see Proper Names; ānubhāva, 91; -kicca, 3; -cakkhu, 75, 90-2; -dhamma, 93; -manta, 42; -vacana, 15, 16, 18, 19, 29-33; 39-41, 43, 82; -vesa, 97; -sāsana, 13, 39, 46, 48, 50, 87, 98; see sambuddha and sammāsambuddha</td>
<td>82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhā, purimakā tayo, 93; see sammāsambuddhā</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodhi, see Proper Names</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Brahma, see Proper Names; -kāyikā devā, 98; -loka, 39, 41, 42, 51, 82, 99, 102; -vimāna, 10
brāhmaṇa, 41–3, 46, 48; -kula, 100; -bhāta, 46

Bh

Bhagavā, see Proper Names; s.v. Exalted One
bhūndāgārikapariyatti, 28
bhanḍukāsāvavasana, 65, 77
bhāta, 81, 97; -kicca, 41, 48, 83, 97; -vissagga, 41; -duhvabhatta, 48
bhadra, 61
bhaya (agati), 5
bhayabherava, 61
bhavābhava, 1
bhavabhava, 1
bhavitamagga, 28
bāhṣaṇaka, 65
bhikkha, 74
bhikkhācāravatta, 53
bhikkhū, 1, 4–10, 13–15, 38, 40, 48, 50, 54, 56, 57, 59, 61, 62, 64, 65, 72, 75, 78, 79, 90–2, 94, 97;
-sāṅgha, 7, 8, 10, 11, 15, 38, 44, 48, 49–51, 53, 55, 62, 73, 84, 90, 97, 98
bhummatṭhakā devā, 98
bhūmīcāla, see mahābhūmīcāla

M

magga, -kōvida, 63; -phala, 69–72; see also bhāvītamaṅga
maṅgalahathṭi, 83, 87–9
maccu, 48
mājappāna, 72
maṇīṭhappa, 88
maṇḍapa, 10, 83, 105
maṇḍala, Mahisaka-, 64, 66
madhurapaṁsu, 103
manussavasa, 76
manta, 39, 42
mantana, 107
marana, paričinna-, 56; assāpasasāṁputanipaddhā-, 56
mala, 1, 55
mahākathā, 63
mahātherā, aṭṭhasaṭṭhi, 106
mahānāga, 74, 88
mahāpāṇiṇā, 63
mahāpāṭhavi, 103, 104, 106; mahā-puthuvī, 99
mahāpārinnibbānāmaṇīca, 97
mahāpurisaḷakkaṇhaṇa, 45

Mahābodhi, see Proper Names, s.v. Bodhi ff.; -gahaṇa, 97; -ṭhāna, 99, 103; -patīṭhāpana, 97; -patīṭ-
thītattṭhāṇa, 94; -pāṭihārīya, 103; -pūjā, 99; -manda, 100; -rakkhaṇa, 100; -rukkanṭhāṇa, 93;
taranamahābodhi, 99
mahābhūmīcāla, 89, 94, 104
mahāvīvāda, 92
mahāvīra (dhatu), 89
mahāsamaṇa, 3
māttikā, 2, 21, 32, 34, 107
māṭugāma, 98, 103
mahālābhīgineyyā (nāgarājāno), 94
māṅgavaka, 15, 42
māsaka, 38
mīgava, 56, 77
micchādiṭṭhītā, 29
mūndaka, 65
munḍeti, 54
mutta (aṭṭha), 78
mētā, 23, 65
methunadhamma, 14
medhāvī, 63
mohā (agati), 5

Y

yakkha, 17, 45, 65, 94, 99; -damana, 94; -senā, 71; yakkhinī, 65
yathādhammaiṇusāsana, 25
yathānulomasiṇasana, 25
yathāparādiḥasāsana, 25
yathābuḍḍham, 12
yathābhūtaṇājanadassana, 107
yamakapāṭihārīya, 93, 97
yāva aṭṭhatanā, 63, 65, 106
yuvarājā, 56
yojana, 44, 60, 88, 98, 101

R

ramśi, chabbanna-, 97, 99, 102, 103; sarasa-, 101, 102
rakkhaṇa, 65, 72; rakkhaśi, 72
rakkha, 94
rajjhasampadāṇa, 100
ratanattaya, 1, 74
rāsa, 16, 17, 33
rājakakudhabhūṇḍa, 75
rājavamsa, 76
rājavattthu, 102
rūpa, 61; -uṭpatti, 23
rohitamīga, 77

L

laṭṭikukkuccaka, 107
laddhi, 62; -ika, 62
lābhāsakkāra, 39, 54
lena, 86
lōka, -nātha, 50; -vivaraṇa, 50; lokuttarā dharmā, 23, 48

V
vagga, 30, 33
vacikamma, 21, 106
vajja-vajja, 48
vāddhamanakacchaya, 88, 102
vattā, 8; -anuvattapatipatti, 107; see also bhikkhācara
vatthu (Vinaya), 14, 15, 32, 34, 38
vatthu (general), 61, 78
vatthu (site), 93, 102
vata, 8; -anuvattapatipatti, 107; see also bhikkhacara
vatthu (Vinaya), 14, 15, 32, 34, 38
vatthu (general), 61, 78
vatthu (site), 93, 102
vāha, 44
vikkhittacitta, 48
vijāṭa, 29

V
vijitāvī, 63
vijjā, 1, 29
vīṇātāsāsana, 81
vitakka, 56
vīthārāmaggā, 1
vinaya, 1-6, 9, 13-15, 18, 20, 23, 24, 29, 32-8, 52, 54, 55, 62, 63, 105-7; -nīṇa, 63; -tanti, 36; -dharā, 13, 107; -dhare āṇīsamśā, 107; -nīdāna, 106; -patiṭṭhāpana, 107; pariyatti, 13, 107; -pariyyattiya āṇīsamso, 107; -paveni, 36; -vāmśa, 36; -vādi, 4; -saṅgha, 14; -saṅgīti, 38; vinaye visārada, 63; avinaya, avinayavādī, 4; see also Vinayapitaka, Proper Names.
vinnicchaya, 1
vipatti, 24, 28, 29
vipāṭipanna, 56, 57
vipphandita, 106
vībhājāyāvāda, 62
vimuttī, 1, 107; -rasa, 17; -nāṇadasana, 107
virāga, 107
viriya, 11
vivāda, 92
visākhāragata, 19
visārada, 63
vīsesa, 11
vīhāra, 8-11, 48-51, 54-7, 61, 67, 74; -tīhāna, 84; -maha, 49, 50

vijanī, 10, 13-15
vīhārasadisa, 93
venuyatthi, 78
Veda, 42
veda (tūṭhi), 31
vedalla, the aṅga, 28, 31
veyyākarana, the aṅga, 23, 31
vohāra, 49; -desanā, 49

S
saṃvaṇṇanā, 1, 2
saṃvara, 25, 107; -mūlaka, 107; saṃvarā-saṃvarakathā, 25
saṃsāra, 19
sakadāgāni, 4, 36, 37
sakarāniya, 5, 11
saṅkaravirahita, 23
saṅkhāra, 19
saṅgaha, 14, 20, 30, 33, 35, 38, 40, 63; tatiya-, 63, 106
saṅgāyana, 3
saṅgīti, 5, 33, 38, 52, 62; tatiya-, 35, 37, 62-4; dutiya-, 38, 39; pathama-, 20
saṅgha, 1-6, 13, 15, 38, 49, 52, 54, 62, 78, 97, 98, 104; -kamma, 54; -thera, 3, 74; -majiha, 107; see also Ariyasangha and bhikkhu-sangha
saṅghadisesa, 14
saccakiriya, 98; saccavacanakiriya, 98
sacchikatanirodha, 28
saffinivada, 62
sattha, 3, 4, 7-9, 48, 106
satthusasana, 55; see also navanga-satthusasana, sāsana and Buddha-sāsana
saddhamma, 1, 3, 38, 40, 107; vamsakovida, 63; -varacakka-vatti, 45
saddhā, 78
saddhivihārika, 36-8, 64
sannipāta, 11; -tīhāna, 104
sannivāsa, 48
sabbāññubhāva, 19
sabbhā, adhikaraṇa, 54
samaṇa, 42, 56, 72, 77, 78; -nāga, 59; -brāhmaṇa, 46
samaya, 62
samādi, 1, 26, 29, 107; -sampada, 29
samāpatti, 102
sambuddha, 1, 76
sampatti, 24, 28, 29
sammāsambuddha, 13, 45, 62, 75, 76, 87, 89, 94, 102; purimakā tayo
sammāsambuddhā, 90, 92, 95, 102
sammāsambodhi, 17
sammiñjana, 48
saraṇa, 48, 65, 72, 78, 81, 82, 87
sassa, -ghāta, -pāka, 65
sassatavāda, 62
sānīpākāra, 62
sādhukījana, 7
sāmaṇera, 43, 47, 48, 73, 74, 82, 87-9
sāmīcikamma, 87
sarīradhātu, 87, 94
śāvaka, 13, 77-9, 90, 106
śāsana (the Dispensation), 1, 3, 11, 13, 25, 30, 33, 38-40, 43, 48, 50, 51, 54, 56, 58, 60-4, 67-73, 78, 81, 84, 94, 105, 107; -pavatti, 79;
-mala, 62; śāsanassa dāyāda, 50, 51; śāsanassa mūlāni, 105; see also Buddhahāsāsana and Satthu-
sāsana
śāsana (admonition), 24, 27
śāsana (message), 58, 83, 95, 96, 101
śīkhā, 1, 24, 26, 27; kāma, 107;
adhipani-, adhipani-, adhisa-, 26
śingūlonakaṇa, 38
śivikā, 58, 78
śimā, 38, 52
śīla, 1, 48, 65, 72, 95; -āṅga, 49;
-khānta, 28, 83, 107; -vanta, 72; -sampatti, 29
śhapaṇjara, 46-8
sukkhavipassaka, 4
sukha, 107
śutta, the āṅga, 5, 28, 31
śutta, 1, 20, 22, 24, 28-33, 65, 66, 81;
-nta, 30, 31, 82; -ntika, 1; see also
Suttapitaka, Proper Names.
supaṇṇa, 82, 101
supiṇa, 59; -ajjhāyaka, 59
suppaṭipanna, 29
subhikkha, 91
suvaṇṇakaṭṭāha, 97-9, 103
suvaṇṇabhiṭṭāra, 84
sekha, 5, 11; -paṭisambhidā, 5;
sekha dhammā, 23
sekhiya, 14
setakāni vatṭāni, 62
setacchatta, 45, 48, 87-9, 103
senāsana, 6
sotāpattiṃaha, 43, 83
sotāpanna, 4, 36, 37
soḷasajātisampannakula, 102

H

hatthikumbha, 89, 93
hatthināga, 56, 59, 89, 93
hatthisālā, 83, 93
himagabbha, 103; -sattāha, 99
himavalāhaka, 99; -gabbha, 97, 99
hetu, 27; -phala, 27
Sacred books of the Buddhists